



**DELHI UNIVERSITY**  
**LIBRARY**

---

## DELHI UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Cl. No. O:2J64:1k

Ac. No. 62712

**Date of release for loan**

**This book should be returned on or before the date last stamped below. An overdue charge of 5 Paise will be collected for each day the book is kept overtime.**

[illegible]



*Painted by R. Westall, R..A*

*Engraved by I. P. Simon*

*First part of*  
**KING HENRY THE FOURTH**

ACT III, SCENE I

c

HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, MORTIMER AND OWEN GLENDOWER

# SHAKESPEARE'S CHARACTERS :

## A HISTORICAL DICTIONARY

*By*

W. H. THOMSON, B.A.

*late History Master*

*William Hulme's Grammar School, Manchester*

ALTRINCHAM

JOHN • SHERRATT AND. SON



*First published 1951*

*Reprinted 1951*

*Made in Great Britain. Printed at the St Ann's Press  
Park Road, Altrincham*

## PREFACE

THIS volume gives an account of all the historical personages appearing as characters, or referred to, in the English Historical Plays and Macbeth. Where the reference gives Act and Scene only it indicates that the character is present on the stage; the addition of the number of a line indicates that he is referred to only.

One difficulty in a work of this kind is the varied spelling of names, uniformity being unknown in Shakespeare's day. The spelling of the Globe Edition of 1865 has been followed throughout, but where a quotation is made the modern spelling has been retained. Lewis, the names of the Kings of France as used by Shakespeare, is due to the importation into English of the French word at an earlier stage in its development than the modern form Louis. The only English spelling that appears strange at first sight is that of Henry VIII's second queen, Anne Bullen, which is used in nearly all editions of the dramatist's works, being based on the 1623 folio.

The history of the Mortimers, Scropes and the Earls of Murray has been entirely rewritten and, it is hoped, corrected and made clearer. Most of the titles of the first Earl of Shrewsbury have been traced to their source. Thirty-two genealogical tables will, it is hoped, serve to elucidate the text.

I am indebted to my friends, Mr. C. J. Lowe and Mr. S. T. Patrick, for their help in correcting the proofs.

The publication of a second edition has allowed a few minor corrections, for most of which I have to thank Mr. K. P. Thompson.

W.H.T.

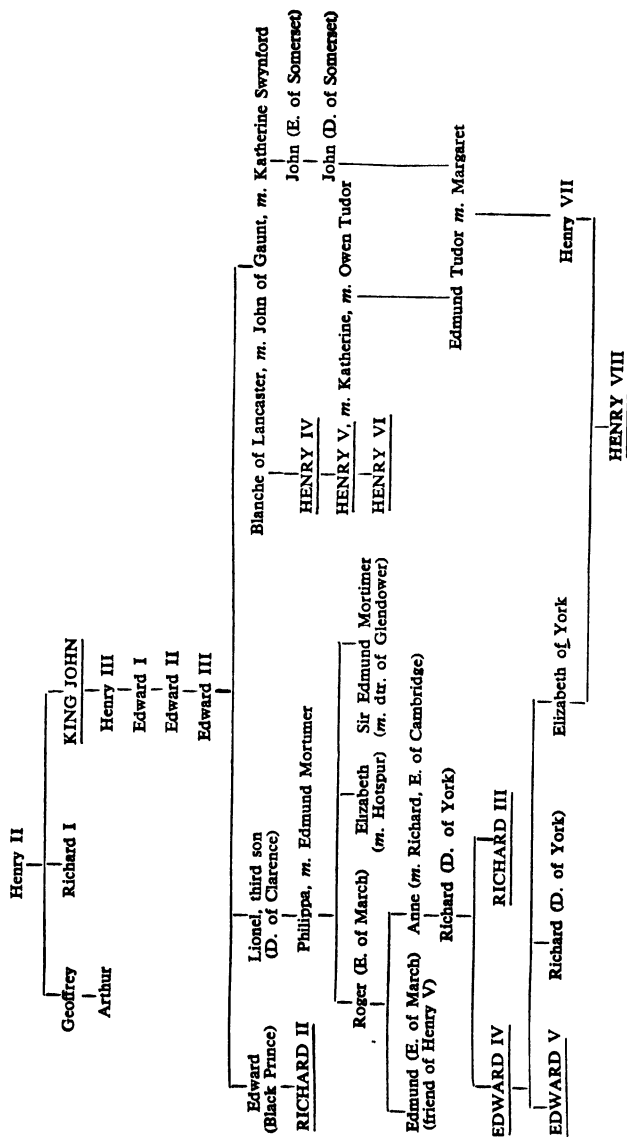


## GENEALOGICAL TABLES

	PAGE
1. Shakespeare's English Kings	8
2. Shakespeare's French Kings and Dauphins	9
3. House of Arundel	21
4. House of Beaufort	28
5. House of Blunt or Blount	38
6. House of Buckingham	46
7. The Howards and the Bullens	48
8. House of Burgundy	51
9. Merovingian Dynasty	60
10. Carolingian Dynasty	61
11. Capetian Dynasty	61
12. Descendants of Louis the Emperor	67
13. Empire of Charles V	110
14. House of Valois—Orleans	128
15. Claim of Henry IV to the English Throne	152
16. Claim of Henry V to the French Crown	157
17. Claim of Henry VII to the English Throne	162
18. House of Lancaster	182
19. Genealogies of Duncan, Macbeth, and Lady Macbeth	196
20. House of Mortimer	211
21. Earls of Murray	214
22. House of Nevil	215
23. House of Norfolk	223
24. House of Percy	239
25. House of Plantagenet	241
26. House of Salisbury	262
27. House of Scroop or Scropè	269
28. House of Stanley	281
29. House of Talbot	292
30. House of Westmoreland	305
31. Genealogy of the Greys and Woodvilles	313
32. House of York	315

# SHAKESPEARE'S ENGLISH KINGS

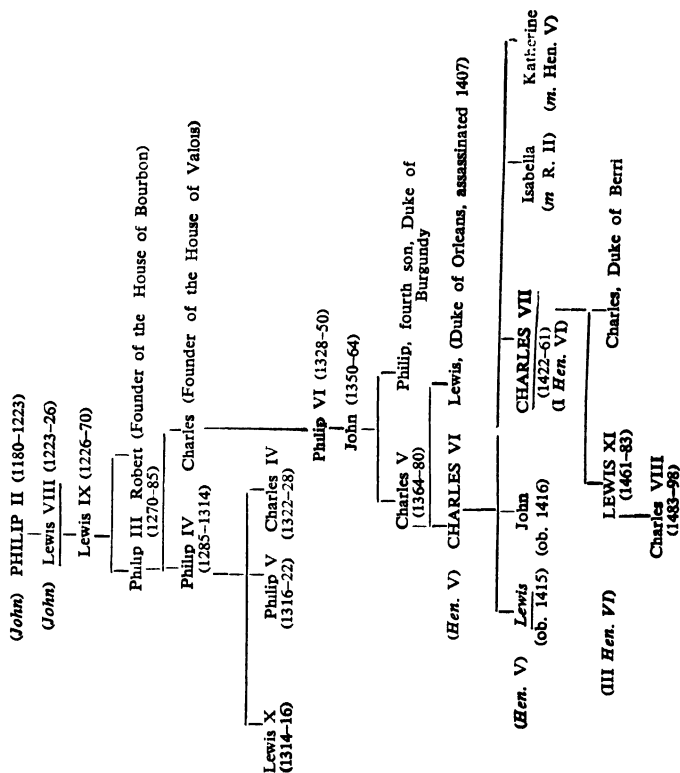
## HOUSE OF PLANTAGENET



# SHAKESPEARE'S FRENCH KINGS AND DAUPHINS

The names of those kings who appear as characters in the plays are printed in capitals, while those of the dauphins are underlined>. Charles VII, who appears as both king and dauphin, is marked both ways.

The name of the play in which each appears is indicated before the name.





**ABBOT OF WESTMINSTER.** See Westminster.

*Rich. II*, iv, i; v, vi, 19.

**ABERGAVERNNY, LORD.** This was George Neville, born c. 1471, the eldest son of George, second baron Abergavenny, and grandson of Edward Neville, sixth and youngest son of the first Earl of Westmorland. Sir Edward had married Elizabeth, only child and heiress of Richard Beauchamp, Lord Abergavenny, and succeeded to the title in 1450, inheriting also the castle and lands of Bergavenny or Abergavenny on the Usk. The latter name was a form that first appeared in the sixteenth century and was not definitely adopted until 1730. George Neville succeeded to the title in 1492 and was also appointed Constable of Dover Castle and Warden of the Cinque Ports. He was a favourite with Henry VII and fought against the Cornish rebels at Blackheath in 1497. At the coronation of Henry VIII he exercised his hereditary office as chief larderer of England, taking part also in the ceremony of the reception of Wolsey's cardinal's hat in 1515. He married, as his third wife, Mary Stafford, the daughter of the Duke of Buckingham and was present at the Field of the Cloth of Gold. He was "one of the very few noblemen of his time who was neither beheaded himself, nor the son of a beheaded father, nor the father of a beheaded son. His brother, Sir Thomas, however, was compelled to follow the fashion" (White). Like his brother he was involved in the troubles which overtook Buckingham, his father-in-law. He seems really to have been opposed to the schemes of that nobleman, but his knowledge of the secrets of his party gave his enemies an opportunity to accuse him and he was accordingly arrested in 1521. After being kept in prison for a year he received his pardon but was never again thoroughly trusted, though he accompanied the king on his meeting with the Emperor Charles V in 1522 and ten years later performed his office of larderer at the coronation of Anne Bullen. Abergavenny died in 1585 and was buried at Birling in Kent.

*Hen. VIII*, i, i, ii, 138.

**ALENCON (1).** The third house of Alencon sprang from Charles, second son of the Count of Valois, who was killed at



## ALENCON]

Crecy in 1346. The countship of Alencon was elevated into a peerage in 1367 and into a dukedom in 1414. John, the first Duke of Alencon, was slain at Agincourt in 1415, after having with his own hand slain the Duke of York. Alencon, with eighteen French knights, had made a vow either to slay Henry or to bring down his crown. Monstrellet embellishes the account of his death with the story of how he struck down the Duke of Gloucester and gave Henry's crown. But the king fought like Achilles over the body of his brother. Being speedily surrounded, Alencon yielded and Henry held out his hand to him. But before the king could prevent it he was slain by the royal guards. Alencon had married Margaret de Bretagne, the daughter of Joan of Navarre by her first husband.

*Hen. V*, III, v, 42; IV, vii, 160-8, viii, 19f.

ALENCON (2). This was John II, eldest son of the above. He was released on parole after having been captured by Fastolfe at Verneuil in 1424; and commanded the French forces at Jargeau in 1429 when the Earl of Suffolk was taken prisoner. He was dispossessed of his duchy by the English but reconquered it in 1449. Alencon was present at the coronation of Charles VII at Rheims but, near the end of his reign, joined the faction of the dauphin against the royal authority. In 1456 Alencon was arrested on a charge of intriguing with the English, tried, found guilty of treason, and condemned to die in 1458. But his life was spared and he was kept in close confinement until the accession of his friend the dauphin as Louis XI in 1461. Once more he rebelled and, being again arrested, this turbulent prince ended his days in prison. Hall says that he was executed in the 86th year of Henry VI.

I *Hen. VI*, I, i, 95, ii, vi; II, i; III, ii, iii; IV, i, 178,  
iv, 27, vi, 14, vii; v, ii, iv.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, 7.

ALENCON (8), DUCHESS OF, to whom Wolsey desired to see his master united, was Margaret of Valois, daughter of Charles of Orleans, and sister of the French king, Francis I. In 1509, she had married Charles Duke of Alencon, the grandson of Charles II, the Duke of Alencon in I *Hen. VI* [see Alencon (2)], but he died in 1525. Two years later she married Henry d'Albret, king of Navarre, and thus became the grandmother

of the famous Henry of Navarre. Shakespeare was indebted to Holinshed for the hint of this proposed alliance.

*Hen. VIII*, II, ii, 45 ; III, ii, 85.

ALEXANDER IDEN. See Iden.

II *Hen. VI*, IV, x ; v, i.

ALPHONSO IX OF SPAIN. See Spain.

*John*, II, i, 423.

ANGUS, FIRST EARL OF. This was George Douglas, only son of William, first Earl of Douglas, and Margaret Stuart, who became Countess of Angus in her own right on the death of her uncle, the third Earl of Angus of the Stuart line. Some writers say she was the third wife of Douglas but Mackay suggests that George was illegitimate, as the earl's first wife, the Countess of Mar, survived him, while there is no record of her divorce nor of the marriage of Margaret Stuart. On the resignation of his mother in 1389, the lands and earldom of Angus were granted to George Douglas by Robert III. Eight years later Angus married Mary Stuart, the daughter of the king. Angus followed his kinsman Archibald, fourth Earl of Douglas (who had also married a daughter of Robert III), to the English war and was taken prisoner at Homildon in 1402. In the following year he died in England of the plague.

I *Hen. IV*, I, i, 73.

ANNE (1), elder daughter of Roger Mortimer, fourth Earl of March and Ulster, by Eleanor Holland, eldest daughter of the Earl of Kent, was born in 1388. She married Richard Earl of Cambridge and thus became the mother of Richard Duke of York and the grandmother of Edward IV. To her son and grandson she transmitted, after the death of her two brothers without issue, the rich estates of the Mortimers and the claim to the throne of Lionel of Clarence, the eldest surviving son of Edward III.

II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 38 and 43.

ANNE (2), LADY. The popular name given by Shakespeare will always cling to this unhappy lady though she had been a Princess of Wales and Queen Consort. Anne Neville, younger daughter of the great Earl Warwick, was born at Warwick Castle in 1452. At the age of seventeen she was present at the court of Louis XI with her sister Isabel, who was the wife of the Duke of Clarence. While at Angers in 1470 she was

## ANNE]

betrothed to Edward Prince of Wales, son of Henry VI. Some authorities say that she was married to him at Amboise in the same year ; others that the marriage did not actually take place owing to the death of her father at Barnet and of Prince Edward at Tewkesbury. The introduction of " Lady Anne " as chief mourner in the funeral procession of Henry VI in 1471 is a dramatic fiction, as at that time she was in hiding, where she had been placed by Clarence out of the way of his brother. At length Gloucester discovered her in the disguise of a kitchen-maid and took her to the sanctuary of St. Martin's. Richard was early attached to Anne, his cousin and playmate, who was born in the same year as himself. They were married in 1473 and she was crowned with him at Westminster in 1483. Their only child, Edward Prince of Wales, was born in 1476 at Middleham Castle where Richard chiefly resided before he became king, being Governor of the North Marches towards Scotland. Here their only son died in 1484 and the mother's grief over his death brought on consumption to which she succumbed in the following year. Some authors attribute her death to poison administered by Richard, but there is good reason to believe that he was sincerely attached to her. Shakespeare does not adopt this sinister suggestion and merely enjoins Catesby to rumour it abroad that she is ill.

In *III Hen. VI*, iv, i, 118, there is a misconception as to the seniority of the sisters. The eldest daughter, Isabel, married Clarence ; in this place their ages are reversed, but in *Richard III* the reference to them is historically correct.

*Rich. III*, i, ii ; iv, ii, 52, iii, 89, iv, 283 ; v, iii, 159.

ANNE (3) BULLEN. See Bullen (2).

*Hen. VIII*, i, iv ; iii, ii, 36ff. ; iv, i.

ANOTHER LORD. If we are to find a name for this individual at the stormy scene in Westminster Hall in 1399, where the peers fiercely dare each other to combat, that of Thomas, fourth Lord Morley, will be most appropriate, for it was he who accused Surrey of double treason. " Forty gauntlets, the pledges of furious battle, were thrown on the floor of the house by noblemen who gave mutual challenges and ' liar ' and ' traitor ' resounded from all quarters " (Hume). Shakespeare, therefore, has not overdrawn the language used in this scene of violent recrimination.

*Rich. II*, iv, i.

**ANTHONY.**

- (1) Duke of Brabant. See Brabant.  
*Hen. V*, III, v, 42; IV, viii, 101.
- (2) Woodville. See Woodville (2).  
*Rich. III*, I, i, 67.

**ARCHBISHOP.**

- (1) Stephen Langton. See Langton.  
*John*, III, i, 143.
- (2) Thomas Arundel. See Arundel.  
*Rich. II*, II, i, 282.
- (3) Richard le Scroop, or Scrope. See Scroop (2).  
 I *Hen. IV*, I, iii, 268; III, ii, 119.  
 II *Hen. IV*, I, i, 189, iii; II, i, 187, iii, 42f.;  
 IV, i, 41, ii, 2f.
- (4) Henry Chichele. See Canterbury (3).  
*Hen. V*, I, i, ii.
- (5) Thomas Rotherham. See York (8).  
*Rich. III*, II, iv.
- (6) Thomas Bourchier. See Canterbury (4).  
*Rich. III*, III, i.
- (7) William Warham. See Canterbury (5).  
*Hen. VIII*, II, iv.
- (8) Thomas Wolsey. See Wolsey.  
*Hen. VIII*, III, i, 63.
- (9) Thomas Cranmer. See Cranmer.  
*Hen. VIII*, III, ii, 401; IV, i, 104; V, i, 37f., ii, v.

**ARCHDEACON.** Glendower's rebellion gained renewed strength by the alliance of the Percies and Sir Edmund Mortimer. To ratify this alliance and to prepare a plan of campaign a meeting of the allies was arranged at Bangor which took place in "The Archdeacon's House". Shakespeare here follows Hall, but archdeacon's house is a misnomer for "Deanery" and archdeacon for "Dean". The deanery was then occupied by Dean Daron, who was an ardent supporter of Glendower. For the part which he took in the rebellion Dean Daron was outlawed by Henry IV and William Pollard thrust upon the Canons by the royal authority; but the latter was never installed, as Glendower burnt Bangor Cathedral to the ground in 1404.

Dean Daron's share in the rebellion was probably with the connivance of his bishop, for on the translation of Young to

ARCHIBALD]

Rochester in 1407, Glendower nominated Llewelyn Bifort to the see. His name appears in a book of fines for the previous year as one of the inhabitants of the county of Anglesey taking part with Glendower. Wallingham says that the Bishop of Bangor was among the prisoners taken at Bramham Moor in 1408, where Northumberland was slain and Lord Bardolph taken prisoner and executed. The bishop's life was spared as he bore no weapon. Godwin says this was Bifort and that the pope, to please Henry, removed him to some shadow of a bishopric.

*I Hen. IV, III, i, 72.*

ARCHIBALD. See Douglas.

*I Hen. IV, I, i, 58.*

ARMAGNAC, COUNT D'. This was John IV, son of Bernard VII. Having become friendly with the English in 1437, he was encouraged by Gloucester to take up arms against Charles VII. Gloucester proposed a match between his daughter and Henry VI. But Charles made his way over swollen rivers and snow and defeated him. Armagnac died in 1451.

*I Hen. VI, v, i, 2f., v, 44.*

ARTHUR (1), Plantagenet. Count of Brittany; was the posthumous son of Geoffrey, third son of Henry II of England, by Constance, daughter and heiress of Conan le Petit, Count of Brittany. Arthur was born in 1167 and three years later was declared heir to the English throne by his uncle Richard I. From that time John, who was plotting to succeed Richard or to supplant him if possible, looked upon Arthur as his most dangerous enemy. On the accession of John to the English throne, the nobles of Anjou, Maine, and Touraine acknowledged Arthur as their lawful duke, while Constance sent the boy to Paris, committing him to the care of Philip II. Philip was very glad of the opportunity of attacking the English possessions in France, and hostilities at once broke out. At first the French forces were driven out of Maine, while, after Philip's breach with the Bretons, a reconciliation was arranged between John and his nephew. But the English monarch is said to have imprisoned Arthur and to have so ill-used both him and his mother that they fled to Angers. However, peace was maintained for a time and Arthur was present at the tournament held to celebrate the betrothal of Prince Lewis of

France to Blanche of Castile. Arthur's mother died in 1201 and the next year war broke out again. At the head of the army of Poitou, Arthur marched to besiege the castle of Mirabeau, where Eleanor, his grandmother, who had persistently supported John, was residing at that time. John surprised the attacking force by night, captured Arthur, and carried him a prisoner to Rouen. According to the *Annales Margam*, in a fit of frenzy, John struck Arthur dead with a huge stone and then flung his body into the Seine. According to Ralph, Abbot of Coggeshall, Hubert de Burgh received orders from the cruel king to put out the boy's eyes in order to incapacitate him from succeeding to the throne. Hubert, however, yielding to the pleading of the prince, spared his life, though he announced his death and burial to his master. Malone remarks: "King John, after he had taken Arthur prisoner, sent him to the town of Falaise in Normandy, under the care of Hubert his chamberlain; from whence he was afterwards removed to Rouen, and delivered to the custody of Robert de Veypont. Here he was secretly put to death."

Act iv, scene i, is evidently laid in England. The old play places it at Northampton, but different editors place it also at Canterbury and Dover. There is no particular locality assigned in the old copies.

Shakespeare has followed Holinshed, whose groundwork is the Abbot of Coggeshall, with a few unhistorical variations derived from the older drama. "It should be noted that Shakespeare erroneously represents Arthur at the time of his death as a very young child, although he was actually in his seventeenth year, and makes him claim of John, not only the English dominions in France, but the crown of England itself, to which Arthur himself never asserted his right" (Lee).

*John*, I, i, 9f.; II, i; III, i, iii, iv, 7ff.; IV, i, ii, 52ff.,  
iii; v, i, 38, ii, 94.

ARTHUR (2), PRINCE; the eldest son of Henry VII and Elizabeth of York, was named after the famous legendary British king. He was carefully educated to fit him for his future position and in his tenth year was placed under the tuition of the blind poet laureate, Bernard André, who gives a glowing account of his youthful proficiency. On 14th November, 1501, he was married to the Princess Katherine of Arragon but as Arthur was weak and sickly the English council objected to

ARUNDEL]

the cohabitation of the young couple and the marriage was never consummated. In less than five months after his marriage the young prince died at Ludlow Castle, before his father, to the great grief of the whole nation. Katherine was now betrothed to Arthur's younger brother Henry, afterwards Henry VIII, and remained his faithful wife and queen until divorced, after which she was styled "princess dowager and widow to prince Arthur".

*Hen. VIII*, III, ii, 71.

ARUNDEL. Dyce has the following note on the Arundels in *Rich. II*, Act II, scene i, line 280;

"Here a line had evidently dropped out; and Malone introduced within brackets,

(the son of Richard, Earl of Arundel)

with the following note: 'The passage in Holinshed relative to this matter runs thus; aboute the same time the Earl of Arundels sonne, named Thomas, which was kept in the Duke of Exeter's house, escaped out of the realme, by means of one William Scot. Duke Henry—chiefly through the earnest persuasion of Thomas Arundel, late Archbishoppe of Canterburie (who, as before you have heard, had been removed from his see, and banished the realme by King Richardes means), got him down to Britaine and when all his provision was made ready, he tooke the sea, together with the said Archbishoppe of Canterburie and his nephew Thomas Arundel, sonne and heyre of the late Earle of Arundelle, beheaded on Tower Hill.'

"There cannot, therefore, I think, be the smallest doubt that a line was omitted in the copy of 1597 by the negligence of the transcriber or compositor in which not only Thomas Arundel, but also his father was mentioned, for 'his brother', line 288, must refer to the old Earl of Arundel. Ritson proposed filling up the lacuna with

(The son and heir of the late Earl of Arundel)

which is nearly word for word from Holinshed."

ARUNDEL (1), EARL OF. This was Richard, third Earl of Arundel and Surrey, who was born in 1346. At the age of thirty he succeeded to his father's title and estates and in the next year was appointed Admiral of the West. But he was

negligent in the performance of his duties and even failed to protect his own tenants when the French ravaged the coasts of Sussex. He was appointed, in 1380, a member of the Council of Regency during the minority of Richard II and joined the reforming party under the lead of Gloucester. In 1386 Arundel took a prominent part in attacking the royal favourites. In the spring of the next year he and Nottingham won a naval victory over the combined fleets of the French, Spanish, and Flemings off Margate, capturing a hundred ships laden with wine. This brilliant victory rendered Arundel exceedingly popular, and his popularity was greatly enhanced when, immediately afterwards, he relieved Brest, plundered Sluys, capturing the ships gathered at the latter port, and thus put an end to all danger of a French invasion. Soon after his return, Richard II attempted to arrest him at Reigate but he escaped, joined Gloucester, and took up arms. Arundel strongly urged the capture and deposition of the king. From this time he became one of Richard's fiercest enemies and was one of the Lords Appellant in 1388. Next year he was removed from the Council of Regency and the Admiralty and, after a quarrel with John of Gaunt, was imprisoned. In 1397 he joined with his brother (the archbishop) and Gloucester in a conspiracy against the king but was betrayed by his son-in-law, Nottingham. Arundel was now arrested and thrown into the Tower, whence he was brought forth and executed on Tower Hill amid the lamentations of a sympathising multitude. His tomb in the Augustinian church was for many years an object of pilgrimage.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 280.

ARUNDEL (2), EARL OF. This was Thomas Earl of Arundel and Surrey, second son of the above. He was born in 1381 and was, therefore, only sixteen when his father was executed. He was handed over to the custody of the king's half-brother, the Duke of Exeter. He escaped from his captivity with the aid of a mercer named William Scot and joined his uncle, the deposed archbishop, at Utrecht. Arundel embarked with Henry Bolingbroke on his voyage to England and landed with him at Ravenspur. On Henry's accession to the throne Arundel was knighted and restored to his father's title and estates. He defeated and captured the Duke of Exeter and other insurgent nobles in 1405, procuring the execution of his



## ARUNDEL]

former gaoler in spite of the royal order for his committal to the Tower. On the revolt of Archbishop Scrope and the Earl Marshal, Arundel took the field against them and procured their execution. He now joined the party of the Beauforts, and in 1411 was appointed one of the commanders of the English expedition sent to the help of the Duke of Burgundy. On the accession of Henry V, Arundel was appointed Lord Treasurer and Warden of the Cinque Ports. He joined the French expedition of the new king, taking a leading part in the siege and capture of Harfleur. But he was now compelled to return home, sick of dysentery, and died in the autumn of 1415.

“ Earl Thomas was in character hot, impulsive, and brave. He was a good soldier and faithful to his friends but he showed a vindictive thirst for revenge on the enemies of his house, and a recklessness which subordinated personal to political aims ” (Tout).

Arundel appears as Earl of Surrey in II *Hen. IV*, III, i.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 280-1.

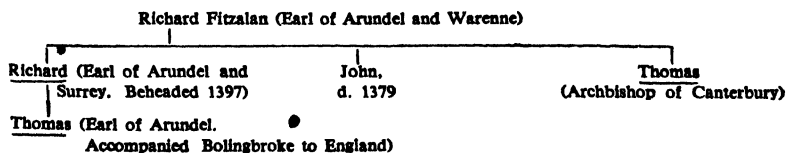
ARUNDEL (8), Thomas, Archbishop of Canterbury ; was the third son of Richard Fitzalan Earl of Arundel, the title of his father being, according to a very common custom, used as a family surname. He became bishop of Ely in 1374 when only 22 years of age but took no part in public affairs until twelve years later. He then went to Richard II at Eltham and persuaded him to come to Westminster, where he was compelled by parliament to dismiss Suffolk and make Arundel Chancellor in his place. In 1388 he was appointed Archbishop of York and next year Richard demanded that he should give up the Great Seal ; but in 1391 he was re-appointed and remained as Chancellor for the next five years, when he was promoted to the see of Canterbury. He at once took action against the Wycliffites and formally condemned many of their opinions. In 1397 he was impeached by the House of Commons, having probably been implicated in the conspiracy of his brother, the Earl of Arundel, and the Earls of Gloucester and Warwick, though the formal charge was that of assisting the Commission of Regency eleven years before, in derogation of the king's authority. He now went to Rome, where Pope Boniface IX, at the request of Richard, translated him to the see of St.

Andrews, by which he was effectively deprived of his see of Ely, as Scotland adhered to the schismatic pope. Arundel joined Henry of Lancaster in exile and landed with him at Ravenspur in 1399. Froissart's story that he had returned and was sent back by the Londoners, complaining of Richard's misgovernment and urging Bolingbroke to claim the throne, is probably a mistake for the itineracy of his nephew and namesake, Thomas, now Earl of Arundel, who had escaped from the custody of Exeter and ultimately joined his uncle at Utrecht. The archbishop accompanied Henry to the siege of Bristol, and afterwards into Wales, to intercept Richard's return from Ireland; and it was alleged that Richard's first offer to resign the crown was made to him and Northumberland at Conway, though this is certainly a political fiction. Soon after his return, Arundel retook possession of his see of Canterbury and was one of the lords who witnessed Richard's abdication in the Tower. Next day, Henry having claimed the crown of England as his right, Arundel took the new king by the hand and led him to the throne in the presence of the assembled peers, subsequently officiating at his coronation. He was Lord Chancellor for a short time in 1399 and again in 1407 and 1412; but for the most part he kept himself aloof from affairs of state. His preoccupation now became active resistance to the Lollards, several of whom he committed to the stake, the last adherent of Wycliffe that he tried being Sir John Oldcastle just before his own death in 1414.

"We may well believe that Arundel's conduct throughout life was governed by a standard of duty which, though we may not always approve it, was in accordance with the general feeling and principles of his own day. He was a man of princely tastes, built fine edifices for himself at Ely and Canterbury, and was a munificent benefactor of many churches" (Gairdner).

*Rich. II, II, i, 282.*

### HOUSE OF ARUNDEL



## ATHOL]

**ATHOL, EARL OF.** At the date of the battle of Homildon (1402) there was virtually no "Earl of Athol", that dignity having returned to the crown in 1341. The character intended is Walter Stewart, second son of Robert II, king of Scotland, by his second wife. Stewart became Lord of Brechin in 1378 by his marriage with Margaret, only daughter and heiress of David de Barclay. On the resignation of his niece, the Countess of Strathearn, he became Earl of Strathearn, while in a safe conduct dated 8th June, 1404 (to enable him to visit the shrine of Thomas à Becket), preserved in Rymer's *Foedera*, he is designated Earl of Athol and Caithness. He took a leading part in the movement for the return of James I to Scotland in 1424, signing the truce with England. In 1437 he joined in a plot for the assassination of James I, that his own grandson, Sir Robert Stewart, chamberlain to the king, might succeed. The assassination was successful but Athol was arrested and, after being cruelly tortured, was executed.

I *Hen. IV*, I, i, 72.

**ATTORNEY.** This was Sir John Fitzjames, born c. 1470, son of John Fitzjames of Redlynch, Somersetshire. He was a member of the Middle Temple, and in 1519 was appointed the Recorder of Bristol, which office he held till 1533, when he was succeeded by Thomas Cromwell. Early in 1519 he was appointed attorney-general and in this office conducted the prosecution of the Duke of Buckingham in 1521. He was advanced to the judgeship of the King's Bench in the same year, and two days later was created chief baron of the exchequer and knighted. In the autumn of 1523 he successfully negotiated a marriage between Lord Henry Percy (supposed to have been engaged to Anne Boleyn) and Lady Mary Talbot, daughter of the Earl of Shrewsbury. In 1526 he became chief justice of the King's Bench, signing the articles of impeachment against Wolsey in December of that year. He was present at the coronation of Anne Boleyn in 1533 and two years later helped to try both More and Fisher, though he probably sympathised with them, as indicated by his silence during the trial. He had been for some time in feeble health when he retired in 1538. The exact date of his death is uncertain, though his will was proved in 1542. He was buried in the parish church of Bruton, Somerset.

*Hen. VIII*, II, i, 15.

AUBREY VERE. See Vere.

III *Hen. VI*, III, iii, 102.

AUMERLE, DUKE OF. This was Edward of Norwich, afterwards second Duke of York, eldest son of Edmund of Langley, first duke [See York (2).] He was probably born in 1373 and was knighted by his cousin Richard II at his coronation. In 1390 that king created him Earl of Rutland and a year later, notwithstanding his youth, he was made Admiral of the Fleet, while early in the following year he became Constable of the Tower of London. As Richard's relations with Gloucester and Arundel grew more strained, Rutland rose higher in his favour. He accompanied the king on his first expedition to Ireland in 1394, being rewarded for his services with the earldom of Cork. Later he acted as chief ambassador in the negotiations for Richard's marriage with Isabella of France. Further offices, including the Wardenship of the Cinque Ports, were heaped upon him, while he was one of the king's most active supporters in the proceedings against the Lords Appellant. He arrested Gloucester, Arundel, and Warwick, and was rewarded with Gloucester's lands in Holderness, his title of Aumerle or Albermarle, and his office of Constable of England, besides other grants of lands. He acted as constable at the abortive duel between Hereford and Mowbray at Coventry. Aumerle accompanied the king on his fatal journey to Ireland and returned with him to England on hearing of Bolingbroke's landing. He tried to persuade Richard to return to Waterford, where he had left his fleet, and to bring over his whole army. But the king refused and Aumerle accompanied him to Flint Castle, proceeding with him to London after his surrender to Bolingbroke. He appears to have deserted Richard in 1399, but only at the last moment.

In the first parliament of Henry IV, Aumerle was accused (Shakespeare says by Bagot) of the murder of his uncle Gloucester. After declaring that his part in the proceedings of 1397 had been performed under constraint, his life was spared and he had to thank the king for the mildness of his punishment. He was deprived of the dignity of duke and of the lands bestowed upon him in the last two years of Richard's reign, though these were afterwards restored. The story of his complicity in the conspiracy of Christmas 1399, at least in the form to which Shakespeare has given such wide currency, is

## AUSTRIA]

not supported by trustworthy evidence. The dramatic episode of York's accidental discovery of his son's treason, and the hasty ride to Windsor by which Aumerle anticipated his father in disclosing the plot to the king, was taken by the Tudor historians from the contemporary but untrustworthy and prejudiced *Chronique de la Traison et Mort du Roy Richard*. There is no mention of Aumerle's treason in any English authority written near the time, though it is possible that he received the confidence of the conspirators in order to betray them. Henry pardoned him and in 1401 gave him a proof of his confidence by appointing him Lieutenant of Aquitaine, a post which he still held when, on his father's death in the next year, he became Duke of York. Shortly afterwards he returned home and received the difficult post of Lieutenant of South Wales. But he was kept so ill-provided with money that he was unable to pay the garrisons, although he disposed of his own plate for that purpose, while the king still owed him large sums for his services in Aquitaine. This proved too much for his loyalty and in 1405 he joined in the abortive attempt to carry off young Mortimer from Windsor. York was again arrested but was released after a few weeks' confinement in Pevensey Castle. On the accession of Henry V, he was appointed Warden of the Eastern Marches towards Scotland and in 1415 accompanied the king to France. York commanded the right wing at Agincourt, where he was killed during the course of the battle. Shakespeare gives a glowing account of his death in *Henry V*, iv, vi. Aumerle married Philippa, second daughter of Lord Mohun, but as he left no issue the title passed to his nephew Richard, the son of his younger brother, Richard Earl of Cambridge.

*Rich. II*, i, iii, iv ; ii, i, iii, 125 ; iii, ii, iii ; iv, i ; v, ii, iii.

AUSTRIA, ARCHDUKE OF. Following his immediate authority, *The Troublesome Raigne of King John*, Shakespeare has confused the two enemies of Coeur-de-Lion, uniting them under one character. Lymoges Duke of Austria is entered among the *dramatis personae* thus confounding :

(a) Vidomar or Guidomar, Viscount of Lymoges, a vassal of his own, besieging whose castle Richard met his death in 1199. (See *sub* Lymoges.)

(b) Leopold, second Duke and first Archduke of Austria, by whom Richard was imprisoned in the Castle of Tiernstein,

1192. On the day of the surrender of Acre, Richard I committed a gross outrage upon Leopold by ordering the standard of that prince, which he had planted on one of the towers, to be torn down and cast into the ditch. Sir Walter Scott has made much of this affront in his *Talisman*. Leopold dissembled his resentment but swore to revenge the insult whenever he should find opportunity. Penetrating the disguise of the English king, Leopold arrested him at Erdburg, in the neighbourhood of Vienna, and committed him to the care of a baron named Hadmar, afterwards selling him to the Emperor Henry VI, who imprisoned him in the castle of Worms. The pretty story, still so often repeated, of Richard being discovered by his faithful minstrel, Blondel, singing beneath the window of his prison one verse of a song to which the royal captive answered by singing the succeeding one is, alas for the lovers of romance, only a pleasing fiction. The Archduke Leopold died in 1195. He had crushed his foot in a fall from his horse and mortification ensued. On his death-bed, in order to obtain the benefits of absolution, he consented to release the hostages left by Coeur-de-Lion and to order the restitution of the money which he had extorted from the English monarch. The assertion of Arthur, "God shall forgive you Coeur-de-Lion's death," therefore is false to history, as Leopold had died five years before his enemy. The Archduke at the time of Richard's death was the son of the above, Leopold, second Archduke (1194-1230).

*John*, II, i; III, i, ii, 8.

AUVERGNE, Countess of. The countship of Auvergne, which had been constituted from the eighth century, passed into the house of La Tour in 1422. This character may be intended for Mary, the wife of Bertrand III, Lord de la Tour and Count of Auvergne.

*I Hen. VI*, II, ii, 88.

BAGOT, Sir William. A minister of Richard II, he was Sheriff of Leicester and appears early in the reign as a member of the council, taking his seat in the parliament of 1397 when he headed, with Bushy and Green, the demand for the repeal of the pardons to the lords appellant. Richard took up his abode at Bagot's house at Baginton, near Coventry, for the great

combat between Hereford and Mowbray in 1398, though French states that it was Hereford who lodged there the night before the battle. Probably both statements are true as Hereford was a prince of the blood royal. On Richard's departure for Ireland, Bagot, with Bushy, Green, and Wiltshire, was placed in charge of the kingdom. When Bolinbroke landed, Bagot accompanied the Duke of York's forces to Bristol and thence fled by way of Chester to Ireland, returning with the king. Richard resigned in 1399 and Bagot, who had been lodged in Newgate, was brought up for trial and at once charged by Aumerle with instigating Richard's crimes. Shakespeare represents Bagot as charging Aumerle with the murder of the Duke of Gloucester. Bagot was instantly challenged to combat by Aumerle, Surrey, and Exeter. After his examination he was committed to the Tower, where he is last heard of in 1400. French says he was released in the same year, taken into favour, served again in parliament, and died in 1407.

*Rich. II.* I, iii, iv; II, i, ii, iii; III, i, ii, 122f., iv, 53; IV, i.

BANISTER, Ralph; was a retainer of Henry Stafford, Buckingham (2). After his abortive rising against Richard III, Buckingham fled to Banister's house, Lacon Park, near Wem, where he was sheltered for a time in a miserable hut. But in order to obtain the reward of £1,000 offered by the king Banister betrayed his master, for which service he was rewarded with the manor of Yalding in Kent out of Buckingham's estate. The name is also spelled Banaster, the chronicle giving it as Raufe Banastre.

*Hen. VIII.* II, i, 109.

BAR, Duke of. This was Edward III, who succeeded Robert, Count of Bar, in 1354. He was made Marquis of Pont-a-Mousson by the Emperor Charles IV and later created Duke of Bar. In company with Alencon, he took command of the second division at Agincourt, where he was slain in 1415.

*Hen. V.* III, v, 42; IV, viii, 103.

BARDOLPH, LORD. This was Thomas, born 1368, son and heir of William, fourth baron Bardolph. He was a member of a family of long residence at Normegay in Norfolk and succeeded his father as fifth baron in 1386. He married Amicia, daughter of Ralph, second baron Cromwell, and his daughter Anne married Sir William Clifford, Northumberland's right-hand man. Bardolph, therefore, naturally followed the political

lead of the Percies and there can be little doubt that he joined Henry Bolingbroke when he landed at Ravenspur. He accompanied Henry IV on his invasion of Scotland in 1400 and was implicated in the Hotspur rebellion of 1403, but seems to have been pardoned and fully restored to the royal favour. However, in 1405, he failed to answer Henry's summons to Worcester to serve against the Welsh, and joined the Earl of Northumberland in his flight to Scotland. His property was now declared confiscated. Soon afterwards the Scots proposed to exchange Northumberland and Bardolph for the Earl of Douglas, captured by the English at Homildon Hill, but they both escaped to Wales, where they rendered some assistance to Owen Glendower, whence they fled to Flanders and thence returned to Scotland. In 1408 they crossed the Tweed, but their following was small and they were defeated by Sir Thomas Rokesby at Bramham Moor in Yorkshire, between Leeds and Tadcaster. Northumberland was killed and Bardolph was taken prisoner, "but sore wounded, so that he died shortly after of his hurts," as Holinshed says. His body was quartered as that of a traitor, parts of it being sent to London, Lynn, Shrewsbury, and York, while the head was exhibited at Lincoln.

II *Hen. IV*, I, i, iii; iv, iv, 97.

BASSET, of the Red Rose faction, came of a family descended from the early Norman settlers of England, members of which intermarried with prominent Cornish families. They were frequently sheriffs of Cornwall and were staunch Lancastrians during the civil war. French says this character was one of the heroes of Agincourt, being either Robert Basset, one of the lances in the retinue of the Earl Marshal, or Philip Basset, a lance in the train of Lord Botreaux.

I *Hen. VI*, III, iv; iv, i.

BAYONNE, Bishop of; had come on an embassy to arrange a marriage between Mary Tudor, daughter of Henry VIII, and the Duke of Orleans. He first raised doubts as to the legitimacy of Henry's marriage by requesting delay that he might allow his sovereign an opportunity to decide whether Mary were legitimate. This prelate was not Jean du Bellay, bishop of Bayonne, but Grammont, bishop of Tarbes. The error was made by Cavendish and copied by Holinshed.

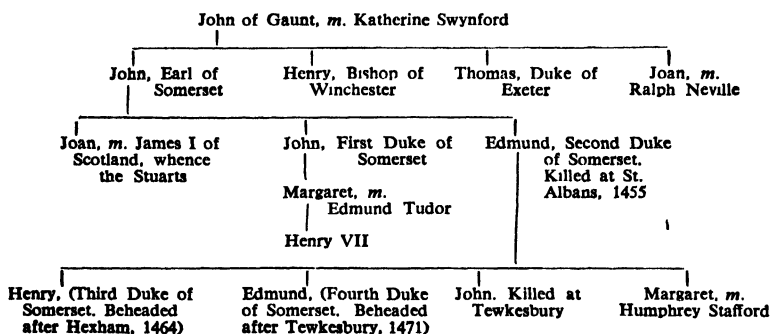
*Hen. VIII*, II, iv, 172.



## BEAUFORT]

**BEAUFORT (1) House of.** The name of this family, decended from the union of John of Gaunt with Katherine the wife of Sir Hugh Swynford, was taken from a castle in Anjou belonging to their father. There were four children of this union : John, created Earl of Somerset ; Henry, afterwards bishop of Winchester ; Thomas, created Duke of Exeter ; and Joan, who married Ralph Neville, first Earl of Westmorland. In 1396, some years after the birth of these children, John of Gaunt and Katherine were married, and in 1397 the Beauforts were declared legitimate by Richard II. In 1407 this action was confirmed by their half-brother, Henry IV, but on this occasion they were expressly excluded from the right of succession to the throne.

### HOUSE OF BEAUFORT



**BEAUFORT (2), Cardinal.** See Winchester.

*I Hen. VI*, i, iii, 60 ; *III*, i, 127.

*II Hen. VI*, i, i, 88 ; *III*, 71 ; *II*, ii, 71, iv, 58 ; *III*, 154, ii, 124ff., *III*, 1.

**For :** Thomas, Duke of Exeter, see Exeter.

John, first Duke of Somerset

Edmund, second Duke of Somerset

Henry, third Duke of Somerset

Edmund, fourth Duke of Somerset

} see Somerset.

**BEAUMOND, Lord of ;** one of Bolingbroke's adherents, was Henry, fifth baron Beaumont, who married Alianor Plan-

tagenet, great-grand-daughter of Henry III. He succeeded his father, who was Constable of Dover Castle, in 1396 and died in 1413.

*Rich. II.*, II, ii, 54.

BEAUMONT, Duke of. A French noble, slain at Agincourt in 1415.

*Hen. V.*, III, v, 44; IV, viii, 105.

BEDFORD, Duke of. This was Prince John of Lancaster, third son of Henry IV by his queen Mary, daughter of Humphrey Bohun Earl of Hereford. He was born in 1389 and ten years later was knighted by his father. In 1403 he was made Constable of England, Governor of Berwick and Warden of the East Marches towards Scotland. On the accession of his brother as Henry V, Prince John was created Duke of Bedford in 1414. He was handsome and well built, was reckoned learned, and took a foremost place in his brother's council. Here he upheld the alliance with the Duke of Burgundy and was appointed Lieutenant of the Realm during the king's absence in France. Therefore, his presence before Harfleur and at Agincourt, as in the play, is inaccurate, as his office necessitated his remaining in England. It would be more in accordance with history if the Duke of Clarence had been substituted for his brother Bedford, since it was he who directed the mining operations against Harfleur. After the king's return, Bedford took command, in 1416, of an expedition to relieve Harfleur, captured several French vessels, landed stores in the city, and then returned home with his prizes. In the next year he was again appointed Lieutenant of the Kingdom on the king's departure for France. During this time he repelled the "Foul Raid" of the Scots; instituted proceedings against Sir John Oldcastle, and presided at his execution. In 1419 he resigned his office as Lieutenant and joined the king in France, carrying over large reinforcements. He was present at the siege and capture of Melun. Though he returned to England for a short time he was back in France by the death-bed of his brother, who appointed him guardian of the kingdom and his heir. He charged him never to give up the conquest of France and, if the Duke of Burgundy declined the offer of the regency of that kingdom, to assume it himself, and this he did.

Bedford was the ablest man in England during the early part of Henry VI's reign. His brother, the Duke of Gloucester, was

in 1422 appointed protector during his absence in France. He now negotiated an alliance between Burgundy and Brittany against Charles VII, Bedford himself marrying Anne, the sister of Philip of Burgundy, in order to counteract the ill-will caused by Gloucester's marriage with Jacqueline of Hainault. As Regent of France, he took up his residence in Paris, occupying himself in reforming the coinage, encouraging trade, and promoting just and settled government. In 1424 he gained a magnificent victory over the combined French and Scots at Verneuil. He forbade his brother Humphrey to proceed with his challenge to Philip of Burgundy and, after a visit to England in 1427 to settle a quarrel between Humphrey and Cardinal Beaufort, returned to France, where he conducted the war with success, until the raising of the siege of Orleans, when the advent of Joan of Arc brought all his hopes of settled peace to nought. In 1429 he wrote a letter to Charles reproaching him for deceiving the people with the help of a woman of disorderly life dressed in man's clothes and so seducing them from their lawful allegiance; at the same time he challenged him to single combat. While Bedford was absent at Rouen, Charles and the Maid took St. Denis and unsuccessfully assaulted Paris, the Regent's difficulties being greatly increased by the vacillating policy of Burgundy. In 1430 Bedford took up his residence at Rouen, whence he retook some of the towns that had fallen into French hands. He now purchased Joan of Arc from John of Luxemburg, into whose hands she had fallen at Compiègne, brought her to Rouen, had her tried as a sorceress and burnt at the stake in the market-place. Meanwhile the war continued in Normandy, and in order to strengthen the loyalty of his French subjects Bedford brought over the young king and caused him to be crowned in Paris in 1431. The French troops continued to gain fresh successes while Philip of Burgundy, wearying of the war, entered into negotiations with Charles VII. The death of Philip's sister Anne, the wife of Bedford, at the early age of 28 weakened the ties that bound him to the English alliance, while Bedford's marriage with Jacquetta, or Jacqueline, of Luxemburg, daughter of Pierre, Count of St. Pol, severed all friendly relations between them. During a visit to England in 1433 Bedford successfully defended himself against Gloucester's charges of neglect and careless administration of French affairs but was forced to send delegates to the peace conference at

Arras in 1435. The English ambassadors declared themselves unable to accept the terms offered. When Duke Philip deserted his ancient allies and entered into an alliance with France, Bedford saw that the cause for which he had struggled so long and so tenaciously was ruined. He died at Rouen in 1435 and was buried there in the cathedral of Notre Dame, leaving no children by either of his wives.

"A portrait of Bedford gives him a fleshy face and highly coloured complexion, retreating forehead, prominent and arched nose, and well-marked chin. . . . He was clear sighted and full of resource. In war he was brave and prudent, and in peace a wise counsellor. In his administration in France . . . he laboured to make the people contented. . . . His temper was hasty. . . . Above all the men of his time he is conspicuous for his fidelity and unselfishness, and he stands in marked contrast to his brother, the Duke of Gloucester, in that he never allowed his interests to hinder the performance of his duty. . . . With never-failing courage he supported a long and disheartening conflict, and the failure of the cause to which he devoted himself was due to no fault of his" (Hunt).

"A brave soldier, a skilful general, a prudent and far-sighted politician and, taken altogether, a just and merciful governor, Bedford had in him many of the elements of greatness. . . . His misfortune was that he was the champion of a cause which was radically unjust, and which was destined from the beginning to ultimate failure. The greatest blot on Bedford's memory is his treatment of Joan of Arc, which it is difficult to palliate; it was equally unjust and impolitic. But, if we except this episode, Bedford was seldom guilty of harshness or impolicy" (Pulling).

Stevenson says, "He was certainly equal, possibly superior to Henry V. But for the treacherous friendship of Burgundy, he would probably have overrun France and expelled Charles VII."

*Hen. V*, I, ii; II, ii; III, i; IV, i, iii; V, ii.

*I Hen. VI*, I, i, iv, 27; II, i, ii; III, ii.

*II Hen. VI*, I, i, 83 and 96.

BENNET SEELY, Sir. See Seely.

• *Rich. II*, v, vi, 14.

BERKELEY (1), LORD. This was Thomas, fifth Baron Berkeley, who was descended from the feudal lords of Berkeley

## BERKELEY]

Castle, county Gloucester. He was sent by the Duke of York as ambassador to Bolingbroke to demand the reason that he entered the realm in arms. Later he was appointed by parliament as one of the commissioners to pronounce the sentence of deposition upon Richard II. Berkeley was appointed by the new king as Warden of the Welsh Marches, and did good service by sea against Owen Glendower and his French allies. He married Margaret, daughter and heiress of Warine, Lord L'Isle, and by her left an only child, Elizabeth, who married Richard Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick. Berkeley died in 1417.

*Rich. II, II, iii.*

BERKELEY (2). A gentleman attending on Lady Anne; was one of the noble family of that name, and may be intended for one of the sons of James, sixth Lord Berkeley, who was summoned to parliament in 1421-61 in right of his possession of Berkeley Castle, and whose family were Lancastrians.

*Rich. III, I, ii.*

BERRI, the old Duke of. This was John, the son of the French king John II, under whom the province was made a duchy in 1360. He encouraged the arts and beautified the province with money wrung from Languedoc, over which he had been appointed Governor. In 1407 he tried to make peace between Burgundy and Orleans and thus to prevent the outbreak of civil war, but in vain. The aged duke had fought at Poitiers fifty years before Agincourt and urged the acceptance of an offer of 6,000 well-armed men made by the citizens of Paris. But the Duke of Alencon and the young chivalry would have nothing to do with "these shopkeepers" as they already outnumbered the English by three to one. Berri died in 1416.

*Hen. V, II, iv; III, v, 41.*

BIGOT, LORD. In all probability this was Roger Bigot or Bigod, often mistakenly called Robert, the second Earl of Norfolk, the son of Hugh, first earl. On the death of his father in 1176, Henry II seized his treasure and lands; but Richard I, with whom he was a great favourite, restored them on his accession and made him Steward of the Royal Household. Bigot supported the king's authority against the designs of Prince John, but on the latter's accession gained his favour. Subsequently he seems to have fallen into disgrace, for he was

imprisoned in 1213. Two years later Bigot joined the barons in the movement which resulted in the signing of the Great Charter and was one of the twenty-five trustees of its provisions. As a result of this, he was included in the list of John's opponents excommunicated by Pope Innocent III. On the landing of Lewis of France, Bigot joined him. The news of the death of John and the accession of Henry III in 1221 brought Bigot back to his native allegiance, but he died in the same year. He married Isabel, daughter of Hamelyn Plantagenet, Earl of Warren and Surrey.

*John*, iv, ii, 162, iii; v, ii, iv, vii.

#### BISHOP OF :

- (1) Carlisle; Thomas Merke. See Carlisle.

*Rich. II*, iii, iii; iv, i; v, v, vi.

- (2) York; Archbishop Scrope. See Scrope.

*I Hen. IV*, iii, 268; iii, ii, 119; iv, iv; v, v, 37.

*II Hen. IV*, i, i, 200; iii, i, 95ff.; iv, ii, 15.

- (3) Ely; John Fordham. See Ely (1).

*Hen. V*, i, i, ii.

- (4) Winchester; Henry Beaufort. See Winchester.

*I Hen. VI*, i, iii; iii, i; iv, i; v, i, iv.

(5) York. This was George Neville, fourth son of Richard, Earl of Salisbury, and brother of Warwick the Kingmaker. He was born in 1433 and when barely fourteen was appointed Prebend of Masham in York cathedral. He was educated at Oxford and consecrated to the see of Exeter in 1458. He accompanied his brother and the Earl of March, afterwards Edward IV, to the battle of Northampton in 1460, and in the same year was appointed Chancellor. He was present at the council of Yorkist peers at Baynard's Castle in 1461, which declared Edward of York as king, and preached a sermon in support of his title at St. Paul's Cross. In 1465 he was installed as Archbishop of York. Two years later he was deprived of the Great Seal by Edward IV, but was apparently reconciled with the king in the following year. In 1469 he performed the marriage between the Duke of Clarence and Isabel, elder daughter of Warwick, when the king had been drawn north-

ward by the rebellion of Robin of Redesdale. After Edward was defeated at Edgecote, he was committed to the custody of the archbishop at Middleham Castle. Probably with the connivance of his gaoler, Edward was allowed to escape to Flanders in 1470. The archbishop was appointed as Chancellor to Henry VI on his restoration by Warwick in that year. When Edward entered London in triumph in 1471, Neville surrendered both Henry VI and himself to the victor and was committed to prison for two months only. He thought himself completely restored to favour but in the next year he was seized and imprisoned in France, his lands and see being forfeited. In 1475 he was released and returned to Northumberland, but his health was ruined and he died at Blyth in 1476. Neville was reported to be more learned than the majority of the prelates of his age.

III *Hen. VI*, iv, v, 5ff., vi, 78.

(6) London. This was Thomas Kemp, the nephew of archbishop John of York, formerly of London. He was appointed in 1450. Though he was a member of the Duke of Somerset's party, he lived peaceably under the Yorkist kings. He built the pulpit at St. Paul's Cross and contributed liberally to the Divinity School at Oxford. He died in 1489. Shakespeare represents Henry VI as being left in his charge in London but Courtenay says: "This is wrong. Henry was now, at large and in possession of the government; but had this scene been put before that which precedes it, the history would have been, with this exception, tolerably accurate."

III *Hen. VI*, v, i, 45.

(7) Ely; John Morton. See Ely (2).

*Rich. III*, iii, iv; iv, iii, 46 and 49; iv, iv, 168.

(8) Exeter; Peter Courtenay. See Exeter.

*Rich. III*, iv, iv, 503.

(9) Lincoln; John Longland. See Lincoln.

*Hen. VIII*, ii, iv.

(10) Ely; Nicholas West. See Ely (8).

*Hen. VIII*, ii, iv.

(11) Rochester; John Fisher. See Rochester.

*Hen. VIII*, ii, iv. "

- (12) St. Asaph; Henry Standish. See St. Asaph.  
*Hen. VIII*, II, iv.

- (18) London; John Stokesley. See London.  
*Hen. VIII*, IV, i.

- (14) Winchester; Stephen Gardiner. See Gardiner.  
*Hen. VIII*, II, ii, 109; III, ii, 281; IV, i; V, i, iii, 58f.

- (15) Bayonne. See Bayonne.  
*Hen. VIII*, II, iv, 172 and 177.

- BLACK PRINCE. See Edward (3)  
*Rich. II*, II, iii, 101.  
*Hen. V*, I, ii, 105; II, iv, 56; IV, vii, 97.  
 II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 18.

BLANCH of Castile, wife of Lewis VIII of France, was the third daughter of Alphonso IX of Castile by Eleanor of England, daughter of Henry II. She was born at Valencia and, in consequence of a treaty between King John and Philip Augustus, she was betrothed to Lewis, being brought to France by her grandmother in the spring of 1200. John ceded to the French certain fiefs as dowry for his niece and the couple were married at Portmort on the right bank of the Seine, in John's domains, as those of Philip were under an interdict.

Blanch first displayed her great qualities in 1216 when Lewis, on the invitation of the discontented nobles, invaded England and claimed the crown in right of his wife. Philip refused to help his son and Blanch was his sole support. She established herself at Calais and organized two fleets, one of which was commanded by Eustace the Monk, and also an army under Robert de Courtenay. But all her resolution was in vain. The death of John and the accession of his infant son caused the return of the English barons to their native allegiance and Lewis was compelled to make peace and return home. Although it would seem that her masterful temper exercised a sensible influence upon her husband's gentler character, her role during his reign (1223-26) is not well known. Upon his death he left Blanch regent and guardian of his children, of whom the eldest surviving son—afterwards the sainted Lewis IX—was but twelve years old. The situation was critical and



it seemed as though the dominions of the Capets would fall in pieces. Blanch had to bear the whole burden of the affairs of state alone; to break up a formidable league of barons (1226), and to repel an attack of the English monarch (1230). But her energy and firmness overcame all dangers at home and from abroad. The nobles were subdued by her warlike preparations or won over by her astute statesmanship, and their league dissolved. St. Lewis owed his realm to his mother, remaining under the influence of her commanding personality during the whole of her life, even after he came of age in 1236. In 1248, Blanch again became regent on the departure of Lewis IX on the crusade, though she had always opposed the project. After the disaster which followed, she maintained peace at home, while draining the land of men and money to send to her son in the east. But at length her strength failed her. She fell ill at Melun in November 1252, and was taken to Paris, but she lived only a few days after her arrival. She was buried at Maubuisson.

*John*, II, i; III, i, iv, 142.

BLOMER, Sir William. Holinshed says: "The king specially rebuked Sir William Bulmer, Knight, because he, being his servant sworn, refused the king's service and became servant to the Duke of Buckingham. Yet at length upon his humble craving for mercy, still kneeling before his grace, the king pardoned him his offence." The Duke's surveyor accused his master of saying, after the king had reproved him at Greenwich for receiving this knight into his service, that if he, the Duke, had been committed to the Tower he would have emulated his father, who, before his execution, had craved an audience of Richard III, and would have killed him with a knife had it been granted.

*Hen. VIII*, I, ii, 190.

BLUNT (1), Sir Thomas; was probably the son of Sir John Blunt or Blount of Belton. He was present at Richard II's coronation and remained in close attendance upon him throughout the whole of his reign, declining to recognize the claim of Henry IV to supersede Richard. After Henry's coronation, Blunt, who is described by contemporary chroniclers as a noble and wise knight, met Huntingdon, Kent, Salisbury, and Rutland at dinner with the Abbot of West-

minster in 1399, and during the course of this meal it was agreed to surprise and capture the new king while he was attending a tournament at Windsor. But Rutland revealed the plot to Henry and the rebels were compelled to retreat to Cirencester, whence Blunt, with a few friends, escaped to Oxford. Here he was arrested and executed under circumstances of extreme barbarity. While enduring intense suffering, which he bore with great heroism, he was cruelly taunted by Sir Thomas Erpingham.

*Rich. II.*, v, vi, 8.

BLUNT (2). Sir Walter; was a famous soldier supporter of John of Gaunt, accompanying him and the Black Prince, in 1367, on their expedition to restore Pedro the Cruel to the throne of Leon and Castile. On his return he married Donna Sancha Ayala. This Spanish lady had come to England in the train of Constance, daughter of Pedro, whom John of Gaunt had married in 1372. Blunt probably went with John of Gaunt to Castile in 1386, when he went to assert his right to his father-in-law's throne. He was an executor of John of Gaunt, who died in 1399, and afterwards transferred his support to his son, remaining one of his most faithful adherents on his accession to the throne. At the battle of Shrewsbury, 1403, Blunt was the king's standard-bearer and, being dressed in armour resembling that of Henry IV, was mistaken by Archibald, fourth Earl of Douglas, and slain by him in mistake for the king. Shakespeare represents both Hotspur and Henry IV as eulogising his military prowess and manly character.

*I Hen. IV.*, I, i, 8; III, ii; IV, iii, iv, 30; VI, i, iii, iv, 41.

*II Hen. IV.*, I, i, 16.

BLUNTS (3), Both the. Misled by false reports from "rumour's tongue", Lord Bardolph reports to the Earl of Northumberland that "both the Blunts killed by the hand of Douglas". These were probably intended for Blunt (2) above and Blunt (4) below.

*II Hen. IV.*, I, i, 16.

BLUNT (4); an officer. This was probably Sir John Blunt, the elder son of Sir Walter Blunt. He was at one time the governor of Calais. In 1482 he was besieged in a castle of Aquitaine by a great French army, but he gallantly defended

## BLUNT]

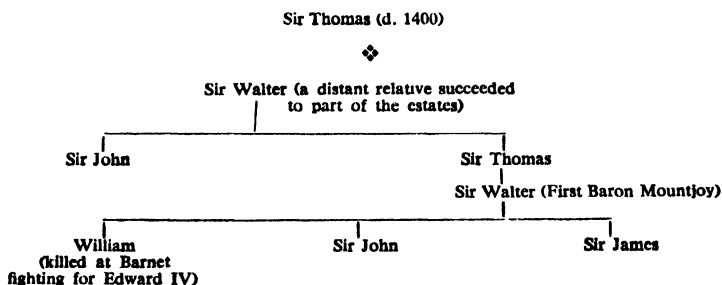
himself and finally defeated the enemy, though possessed of very inferior forces. He was created a K.G. in 1418 and served under Henry V at the siege of Harfleur. In 1418 he took part in the siege of Rouen, during which he died. The stage direction in *II Hen. IV*, III, i, reads in some quartos, "Enter Warwick, Surrey, and Sir John Blunt," thus confirming the above suggestion.

*II Hen. IV*, I, i, 16; IV, III, 81.

BLUNT (5), Sir James; the friend of William, Lord Hastings, was the third son of Sir Walter Blunt, first Baron Mountjoy, and grandson of Blunt (2). He was Lieutenant of Hammes Castle in Picardy in 1476 and joined the Governor, the Earl of Oxford, in offering the castle to Henry Earl of Richmond in 1484-85. He followed Henry, landing with him at Milford Haven in 1485, was knighted there and fought against Richard III at Bosworth. The new king, Henry VII, created Blunt a knight-banneret in 1487 and, on the attainder of William Catesby, gave him the manor of Ashby St. Leger. Blunt died unmarried in 1498.

*Rich. III*, IV, v, ii; v, ii, iii, 30ff.

## HOUSE OF BLUNT OR BLOUNT



BOHUN, Edward. Buckingham's family name was Bagot, but he was better known as Stafford. He affected the surname of Bohun because he was Lord High Constable of England by inheritance from the Bohuns, earls of Hereford. The poet here follows Hall but the name Bohun expired in 1372 with Humphrey, last Earl of Hereford. See Buckingham (8).

*Hen. VIII*, II, i, 108.

BOLINGBROKE (1), i.e. Henry Duke of Hereford; after the death of his father, Duke of Lancaster; and after the deposition of Richard II, king as Henry IV.

He received the name of Bolingbroke from the name of his father's castle at Bolingbroke in Lincolnshire, where he was born in 1366. He was the same age as Richard II and the cousins seem to have been rivals in childhood and throughout life. Shakespeare frequently refers to him by his title of Hereford, which came to him through his marriage with Mary de Bohun, second daughter of Humphrey, last Earl of Hereford. Bolingbroke, hitherto Earl of Derby, was created Duke of Hereford by Richard II in 1397.

*Rich II*, I, i, 124; II, i, 167, ii, 49ff.; III, i, 32, ii, 34ff., iii, 35ff., iv, 52ff.; IV, i, 180ff.; v, i, 27ff., ii, 7ff., v, 37ff.

*I Hen. IV*, I, iii, 137ff.; III, i, 64, ii, 49.

*II Hen. IV*, I, i, 208, iii, 92f.; III, i, 71; IV, i, 117ff.

*I Hen. VI*, II, v, 83.

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 21f.

BOLINGBROKE (2), "that was a great and cunning man in astronomy," was a conjuror and necromancer who encouraged Eleanor Duchess of Gloucester to believe that her husband would become king. He exposed a wax doll, modelled like king Henry VI, to a slow fire in the belief that, as the wax gradually melted, the health of the king would dwindle away. But the intrigue was betrayed, Bolingbroke was arrested in 1441, and "abjured his black art on a high stage at St. Paul's Cross during sermon time, and accused the lady of Gloucester of being his instigator to treason, and magic." He was afterwards hung, drawn, and quartered at Tyburn, protesting his innocence to the last. Sir E. Bulwer Lytton calls him "the greatest clerk of his age," and William of Wycestre, a contemporary writer, highly commends his learning.

*II Hen. VI*, I, ii, 76, iv; II, iii.

BONA, of Savoy. This princess was the third daughter of Louis, first Duke of Savoy. Her eldest sister, Charlotte, was the queen of Louis XI. With one exception of doubtful authority, there is no historical evidence for the projected marriage between this lady and Edward IV of England, and Lingard rejects it. Shakespeare would find the hint of Warwick's

## BONVILLE]

mission in Grafton. Bona married the Duke of Milan in 1468 and died in 1485. Her daughter Mary became the second wife of the Emperor Maximilian I.

III *Hen. VI*, II, vi, 90 ; III, iii ; IV, i, 31 and 97, iii, 56.

BONVILLE, LORD. This was William Lord Harrington and Bonville, whose daughter and heiress, Cicely, became the second wife of Richard Grey, first Marquis of Dorset. [See Dorset (1).] He fought in the Yorkist cause at the second battle of St. Albans, where he fell into the hands of the victorious Margaret and was executed after the battle, 1461. His widow, Catherine Neville, afterwards married Lord Hastings.

III *Hen. VI*, IV, i, 57.

BOUCIQUALT, or Boucicaut, Jean le Meingre ; the son of a marshal of France of the same name, was born about 1366. At a very early age he became a soldier and distinguished himself in many battles. After a campaign in Spain he journeyed to the Holy Land. As his great desire was to fight the Turks he was one of the French soldiers who marched to the defence of Hungary and shared the defeat of the Christians at Nicopolis, where he narrowly escaped death. After some months captivity in the hands of the Sultan, he obtained his ransom and returned to France. In 1399 he was sent at the head of an army to aid the eastern emperor, Manuel II, who was harassed by the Turks. Bouciqualt drove the enemy from their positions before Constantinople and returned to France for fresh troops ; but, instead of returning, in 1401 he was dispatched to Genoa, which five years previously had placed herself under the protection of France. Here he succeeded in restoring order. But in 1409 Genoa threw off the French yoke and Bouciqualt, unable to reduce them to submission, returned to Languedoc. He fought at Agincourt in 1415, where he was taken prisoner, and died in England in 1421.

*Hen. V*, III, v ; IV, viii, 82.

BOURBON (1), John Duke of ; succeeded his father, Louis the Good, in 1410. At Agincourt he served in the van under Constable De la Bret, was taken prisoner, and died in England, being buried at Christ Church, Newgate Street.

*Hen. V*, III, v, 41 ; IV, v, 12, viii, 82,

**BOURBON (2)**, Admiral of France ; was Louis Count of Rousillon, a natural son of Charles Duke of Bourbon, whose father was the above. Louis married Joan, a natural daughter of Louis XI.

*III Hen. VI, III, 252.*

**BRABANT**, Duke of. This was Anthony, the second son of Philip the Bold of Burgundy. He succeeded to the duchy on the death of his mother's aunt, Joanna, the daughter of Duke John, in 1406. As the brother of the then Duke of Burgundy, he seems to have sought the field of Agincourt in order to clear the honour of his family. He arrived in haste during the second engagement but that was time enough in which to die. The brave prince had hurried on and left his men behind him. He had not even put on his coat of arms. Instead of this he took his banner, made a hole in it, passed his head through it, and thus charged the English, who slew him instantly.

*Hen. V, II, iv, 5 ; III, v ; IV, viii, 101.*

**BRACY**, Sir John ; a messenger sent by king Henry IV to summon his eldest son, Prince Henry, to court on the news of Hotspur's rising. There was a family of this name seated at Madresfield, Worcestershire from the time of King John and several members of the family are buried in Great Malvern church.

*I Hen. IV, II, iv, 367.*

**BRACKENBURY**, Sir Robert. Descended from one of the companions of the Conqueror, he was the second son of Thomas Brackenbury of Denton, Co. Durham, in the neighbourhood of Barnard Castle, where Richard III's cognizance still remains carved on a bay-window and buttress, so that it is easy to see how Brackenbury entered his service. He became Constable of the Tower in 1484 and served against the rebels under Henry Stafford, the second Duke of Buckingham, being knighted in the following year. Refusing to obey the command of Richard to make away with the princes in the Tower, the keys were for one night handed over to the less scrupulous Tyrrel. Yet Brackenbury adhered faithfully to Richard and perished at Bosworth, where he held command of the rearguard of 1,500 men.

In the play he is addressed as " Lieutenant " and Shake-

## BRANDON]

speare was probably led to give him this rank only from the fact that for the greater part of Elizabeth's reign the office of "Constable" was not filled up and consequently in the poet's time the chief guardian of the Tower would be styled "Lieutenant".

*Rich. III*, I, i, iv; v, v, 14.

BRANDON (1), Sir William. This brave soldier, whose name is not usually placed among the *dramatis personae*, came over with the Earl of Richmond out of Brittany and was his standard-bearer at Bosworth Field. He was on that account singled out by Richard III and killed by him in personal encounter. His son Charles became the Duke of Suffolk, who appears in *Henry VIII*.

"He does not appear to have been a knight, though called Sir William by Hall the chronicler, and thus some confusion has arisen between him and his father, Sir William Brandon, who survived him" (Gairdner).

*Rich. III*, v, iii, 22, v, 14.

BRANDON (2). The name of an officer sent to arrest the Duke of Buckingham. This name does not appear in the *Chronicles*. Sir Henry Marne or Marney, captain of the king's guard, really made the arrest and, on the attainder of the duke, obtained a grant of some of his forfeited estates. Marney came of a knightly family of Essex and was one of the chief royalist commanders at Stoke. Capel suggests the substitution of his name for that of Brandon in the text.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 197.

BRETAGNE (1), Duke of; Arthur, son of Geoffrey, and nephew of King John, was so called from his mother Constance, Duchess of Bretagne, or Brittany.

*John*, II, i, 156ff.

BRETAGNE (2), Duke of. This was John IV de Montfort who became Duke of Brittany in 1364. He befriended Henry IV of England during the time of his exile and Duke John's widow, Joan of Navarre, became the second wife of the English king. John died in 1399.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 285.

BRETAGNE (3), Duke of; was John V de Montfort. He was in charge of the reinforcements at Agincourt in 1415. He distinguished himself by his able and pacific policy and died in 1442.

*Hen. V*, II, iv.

BRETAGNE (4), Duke of. This was Francis II, who was born in 1435 and fought against Louis XI of France. He was present at the signing of the peace of Tours in 1445 and died in 1488.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, 7.

BROCAS, Sir Bernard; was the son, by his second wife, of Sir Bernard Brocas, one of the favourite warriors of the Black Prince. He came of a Gascon family which had long fought for the English cause in France. Sir Bernard succeeded his father as Chamberlain to Richard II's queen, Anne of Bohemia. In 1400 he was executed by Henry IV, for his share in the conspiracy of that year, in favour of his dethroned master.

*Rich. II*, v, vi. 14.

BUCKINGHAM (1), First Duke of. This was Humphrey, son of Edmund Stafford by his wife Anne, daughter and sole heiress of Thomas of Woodstock, youngest son of Edward III. Humphrey was born in 1402, being only a year old when his father's death at Shrewsbury made him Earl of Stafford. He served in France under Henry V, who knighted him in 1421. Young as he was, Stafford became a member of the council of Henry VI in 1424 and helped to reconcile Cardinal Beaufort and Humphrey of Gloucester. In 1430 he accompanied the young king abroad and was made the Constable of France. For the next two years he was employed in the military operations against the French and then returned to England, where he joined the political group opposed to the Duke of Gloucester. In 1444 he was created Duke of Buckingham, on the same day that Suffolk was made a marquis for his share in negotiating the Truce of Tours. In 1447 Buckingham secured a grant of precedence before all dukes of subsequent creation not of royal blood, doubtless as a reward for his share in the arrest of the Duke of Gloucester. Three years later he was employed in a vain attempt to make terms with the insurgents under Jack Cade; sat at Rochester for the trial of the rebels



## BUCKINGHAM]

after the failure of the rising ; and afterwards became warden of the Cinque Ports. He opposed the rising ambition of the Duke of York and supported the queen against him. Though Buckingham failed to make an amicable arrangement with York before the first battle of St. Albans, he agreed to the truce that was patched up afterwards and did his best to maintain the peace of the realm. In 1460 he was slain beside the king's tent on the eve of the battle of Northampton by the Kentish followers of the bishops who had appeared with an armed retinue to demand an audience for the Yorkist lords. His body was buried in Greyfriars Church, Northampton. Buckingham married Anne, daughter of Ralph Neville, first Earl of Westmorland. His eldest son, Humphrey, died of wounds received at the first battle of St. Albans, leaving, by his wife Margaret, daughter of Edmund Beaufort, second Duke of Somerset, a son, Henry Stafford, who succeeded his grandfather as second Duke of Buckingham.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, iii, iv ; II, i, ii, 72 ; III, i ; IV, iv, viii, ix ;  
v, i.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, 10.

BUCKINGHAM (2), Duke of. Henry Stafford, son of Humphrey, eldest son of the above, became second duke on the death of his grandfather. As a minor he was placed under the care of the Duchess of Exeter, sister of Edward IV, being knighted at the coronation of Elizabeth Woodville in 1465. As Lord High Steward of England it fell to his lot to pronounce sentence upon Edward's unhappy brother Clarence in 1478, but Buckingham did not become prominent politically until after the death of Edward IV. Though married to Catherine Woodville, the sister of the queen, Buckingham was almost as much distrusted by the queen's party as Richard of Gloucester himself. It was with the help of Buckingham that the Protector arrested Lords Rivers and Gray, and got possession of the young king Edward V, whom these lords were conducting from Ludlow towards London. Buckingham suggested the Tower as the residence of the young king ; was present with Richard during Dr. Shaw's sermon at St. Paul's Cross assailing the legitimacy of Edward IV's children ; and, two days later, himself harangued the citizens at the Guildhall to the same effect, suggesting that they should call upon

the Protector to assume the crown. It was mainly through the aid of Buckingham that Richard III was raised to the throne, as he is reminded in the ghost scene, and the Duke was rewarded with the grant of the offices of Constable of England and Chamberlain of North and South Wales. Richard also promised to restore to him that part of the Bohun estates which had accrued to the crown by Henry IV's marriage with Mary de Bohun. Yet a month or two later Buckingham was in open revolt. At first sight this sudden change of front seems inexplicable.

It may be that he doubted Richard's promise to restore the Bohun estates and was dissatisfied with the amount of his reward. French gives as the reason that the king refused to restore the "movables" of the earldom which were of very great value. Buckingham may have resented the limitations which the establishment of Richard had placed upon his own ambition; or he may have feared the fate of Hastings from the hands of the jealous king. As a descendant of John of Gaunt he may have come to the conclusion that he had a better claim to the throne than Richard himself. But the skilful persuasion of Bishop Morton decided him to raise the standard of rebellion on behalf of Richmond, though even this may have been only a cloak for his own ambition. When he moved eastward the Severn and the Wye were in flood and he could get no further. After ten days of weary waiting his army dispersed. Deserted by his "rash-levied strength", with a price of £1,000 set on his head, he fled into hiding. But he was betrayed by one of his own retainers, Banister of Lacon Park, delivered to Richard, beheaded at Salisbury on All Souls' Day 1483, and his estates confiscated. Grafton says that it had been agreed between Richard and Buckingham that his son, the young Prince of Wales, should marry a daughter of the latter.

*Rich. III*, i, iii; ii, i, ii, iv, 45; iii, i, ii, iii, 17, iv, v, vii; iv, ii, iii, 47f., iv, 439ff.; v, i, iii, 167.

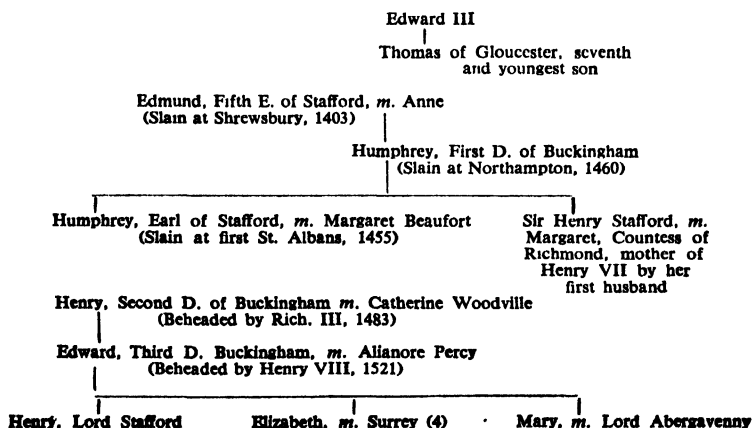
BUCKINGHAM (3), Duke of. This was Edward Stafford, eldest son of the above. Henry VIII restored him to his father's dukedom, made him Lord High Constable of England and a Knight of the Garter. He was present at the Field of the Cloth of Gold, though Shakespeare supposes him to have been absent through illness. For some time he was high in the royal favour but, incurring the enmity of Wolsey, he was

## BUCKINGHAM]

arraigned for high treason and beheaded on Tower Hill in 1521. "As a descendant of Edward III through Thomas of Woodstock, he was the most important representative of the older baronial houses. He was a foolish man, proud of his exalted rank and yet silly enough to listen to lying prophets who poured into his greedy ears stories of how the king would soon die and how he himself would thus succeed to the crown. He did not attempt to conceal his dislike and disdain of the Cardinal and boasted freely of the great future revealed to himself. There was little evidence of real treason, but the king held that he was guilty, and the peers were too timid to go against the king's will" (Tout). Shakespeare represents him as condemned upon the accusation of his surveyor, Charles Knivet, who had been dismissed from his service, and who reported that the Duke had threatened to assassinate the king. But more probably his betrayer was his Chancellor, Robert Gilbert, who no doubt was the author of an anonymous letter written to Wolsey late in 1520, giving an account of the Duke's so-called treasonable practices. Buckingham married, in 1500, Alianore, eldest daughter of Henry Percy, fourth Earl of Northumberland. In consequence of his father's attainder, his son Henry was only called Lord Stafford. Of Buckingham's daughters, Elizabeth married Thomas Howard, the Earl of Surrey in *Henry VIII*, and Mary married George Neville, the Lord Abergavenny of the same play.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, ii, 5ff.; II, i; III, ii, 256; IV, i, 5.

### HOUSE OF BUCKINGHAM



BULLEN (1), Sir Thomas ; was the second son of Sir William Bullen of Blickling ; and grandson of Sir Geoffrey Bullen, Lord Mayor of London in 1457, who had made a fortune as a London merchant. Sir Thomas Bullen was connected with the great noble houses both through his mother, Margaret Butler, a lady of the Irish house of Ormonde, and by his own marriage with Elizabeth, the daughter of Thomas Howard, second Duke of Norfolk, the hero of Flodden. In 1497, when he was but 20, he was in arms with his father against the Cornish rebels. He took part in the invasion of France in 1513, and in 1520 assisted in the negotiations for the arrangement of the meeting of the French and English kings, known as the Field of the Cloth of Gold. At the time of the masque at York Place he was not yet Viscount Rochford but after the king fell in love with his daughter he was created Viscount Rochford in 1525 and subsequently Earl of Wiltshire and Ormonde in 1529. In 1530 he was sent as an ambassador to Charles V and the Pope, who at that time were met together at Bologna, to explain the king's reasons for seeking a divorce. After the death of his daughter Sir Thomas retired into private life and died at Hever in Kent, 1539.

*Hcn. VIII, 1, iv, 92.*

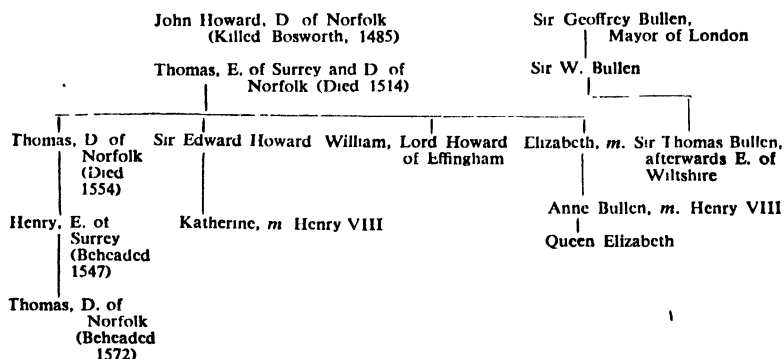
BULLEN (2), Anne ; was the youngest daughter of the above. Like other persons of her period she wrote her name sometimes as Bullen or Boleyn, besides many other ways, and sometimes even signed herself " Anne Rochford ". She was born in 1501 and accompanied the Princess Mary Tudor, younger daughter of Henry VII, to France on her marriage with Louis XII. On his death, Anne remained in France as a maid of honour to the queen of Francis I, until she reached the age of twenty, when she returned to England. " She was much admired in both courts, was more beautiful than graceful, and more cheerful than discreet " (Fox). She became a maid of honour to Queen Katherine in 1522 and at once attracted the notice of Henry VIII. " Mistress Anne ", wrote an eye-witness, " is not one of the handsomest women in the world. She is of middling stature and swarthy complexion, and has nothing but the king's great love and her eyes, which are black and beautiful." She was bright and lively and had " wonderful long hair." Before long Henry was madly in love with her and, notwithstanding Wolsey's opposition, was married to her at White-

## BURGUNDY]

hall in 1533, by Dr. Rowland Lee, afterwards bishop of Coventry and Lichfield, before the formal decree of divorce was pronounced. She had been created Marchioness of Pembroke in 1532 and was present at the meeting of the kings at Calais where Francis I urged Henry to proceed with the marriage without delay. Anne was crowned by Cranmer with great splendour in 1533, Henry, watching the proceedings from a cloister of St. Stephen's chapel. In the same year she gave birth to the Princess Elizabeth. After three short years of wedded life she was accused of unfaithfulness to the king and beheaded on Tower Hill in 1536.

*Hen. VIII*, I, iv ; II, iii ; III, ii, 36ff. ; IV, i ; V, i.

### THE HOWARDS AND THE BULLENS



BURGUNDY (1), Duke of. John the Fearless, son of Philip the Bold, was born in 1371. He married in 1385 Margaret, daughter of Duke Albert of Bavaria. In 1396 he fought for Hungary against the Turks and was taken prisoner by them at the bloody battle of Nicopolis, where he earned his surname of "the Fearless". After paying an enormous ransom he regained his liberty in the next year. In 1404 he succeeded to his father's dukedom and immediately became the rival of Louis Duke of Orleans, the younger brother of Charles VI. Like his father he placed great reliance upon the wealthy merchants and tradesmen and also the university of Paris. The next few years were filled with the quarrels and threats of these two rivals for the power of the demented king. In 1406 Burgundy was appointed by his sovereign guardian of the dauphin and his other children. On 20th November, 1407, the

Duke of Berri, uncle of both the rivals, brought about a solemn reconciliation between them but three days later Louis of Orleans was murdered in the streets of Paris by Burgundy's orders. At first the duke tried to conceal his share in the crime but soon he openly avowed it and quitted Paris. After a brief return to the capital he was recalled to Liége where the inhabitants had revolted against his brother-in-law, the bishop of that city. His rivals took every advantage of his absence. In the following year, 1409, a new league was formed against him by Bernard, Count of Armagnac, after whom the rival party was now named. Two years later Burgundy was recalled by the citizens of Paris on account of the oppression of the Armagnacs. In 1413, however, John was compelled to return to Burgundy and negotiated at the same time with both the French and English courts, standing aloof from Agincourt, though his brothers, Antony Duke of Brabant and Philip Count of Nevers, gave their lives for the cause of France. The quarrel between the two French factions still continued and in 1418 Burgundy again effected an entrance into Paris by means of a traitor who opened the gates, while the dauphin sought safety in flight. Burgundy did nothing to assist Orleans, with the result that the town fell into the hands of the English in 1419. Negotiations were now opened between Burgundy and the dauphin and the two met near Melun in July, 1419. When they met again in the following September to ratify the agreement previously made, Burgundy was slain by the adherents of the dauphin and was succeeded by his son Philip.

*Hen. V.*, III, v, 42; IV, viii, 102.

BURGUNDY (2), Duke of. Philip the Good, born 1396, was the son of the above. As the natural outcome of the assassination of his father in 1419, Burgundy signed the treaty of Arras with the English, by which he recognized Henry V as the Regent and heir of France. In 1420 he entered Paris in company with the king of England and in the same year signed the treaty of Troyes. He continued to assist the English in their campaigns against the French and in 1428 his sister Anne married the Duke of Bedford, the leader of the English forces in France. During the next ten years frequent quarrels arose between the allies. But the Duke of Gloucester's marriage with Jacqueline of Hainault angered Philip, who himself claimed territories as bequeathed to him by his cousin Philip, and when

## BURGUNDY]

in 1433 the wife of Bedford died, Burgundy opened negotiations with Charles VII and in 1435 returned to his native allegiance. He now proved a faithful ally to his sovereign and assisted him against the English. In 1440 he paid the ransom of Charles of Orleans who had been a prisoner in England from the time of Agincourt. Philip was frequently disturbed by the insurrection of his Flemish subjects and often had to put them down by force of arms. In 1453 he and his nobles vowed to undertake a crusade against the Turks but it only proved a pretext for raising funds and the expedition did not take place. Three years later he hospitably received Louis the dauphin (afterwards Louis XI) who had quarrelled with his father, but his guest repaid his kindness by stirring up strife in his court. However, on the death of Charles VII, Philip was active in his support of Louis XI, whom he accompanied to Paris. But the perfidy of the new king so angered Charles, the duke's son, that he persuaded his father to make war on France. In 1465 Philip handed over to his son the complete administration of his estates with his well-filled treasury. The old duke died in 1467 and was buried at Dijon. Philip was a patron of letters and a collector of manuscripts, as well as a patron of merchants, and administered his estates wisely.

*Hen. V, v, ii.*

*I Hen. VI, II, i, ii, III, ii, iii; IV, i, 12f.,; iv, 26.*

BURGUNDY (8), Duke of. Charles, called the Bold, son of the above by Isabella of Portugal, was born in 1423. In his father's lifetime he bore the title of Count of Charolais and early showed great aptitude both for study and for warlike exercises. Though he became intimate with the dauphin (Louis XI) he never forgave him his repurchase of the towns on the Somme which had been ceded to his father by the Treaty of Arras. In 1465 he commenced his life-long struggle against Louis XI, his brilliant bravery securing him the victory of Monthermy in July of that year, though it did not prevent Louis from re-entering Paris. In the next year he forced upon Louis the treaty of Conflans, by which he regained the towns on the Somme and the promise of the hand of the king's infant daughter, with Champagne as a dowry. The years 1466-67 were spent in suppressing revolts of the citizens of Dinant and Liège, during the course of which Louis placed himself in the hands of Charles while discussing various details of the treaty

of Conflans. A fresh insurrection of the Liégeois, fomented secretly by Louis, placed Burgundy in a difficult position from which he extricated himself by compelling Louis to assist in quelling the revolt. (See Scott, *Quentin Durward*.) In 1471 Louis accused Charles of treason, cited him to appear before parliament, and seized some of the towns on the Somme. The duke now invaded France with a large army, but failing to take Beauvais, was compelled to retire after laying waste the country as far as Rouen.

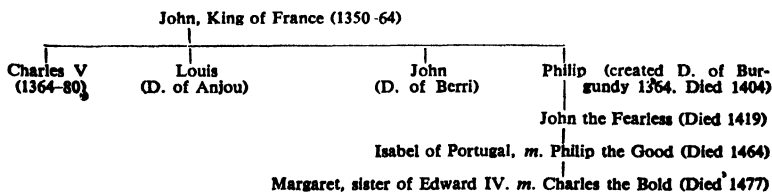
Charles had conceived the idea of forming an independent kingdom of Burgundy, and to this end bent all his energies to the development of a strong military power, receiving into his service many foreign mercenaries. But the pursuit of this object brought about his downfall. He suffered a shameful defeat at Grasson in 1476 and again at Morat. A third time he gathered his forces but he was defeated before Nancy in 1477, his mutilated body being found among the slain after the battle. "Charles the Bold has often been regarded as the last representative of the feudal spirit—a man who possessed no other quality but blind bravery—and accordingly has often been contrasted with his rival, Louis XI, as representing modern politics. In reality he was a prince of wide knowledge and culture, knowing several languages, and austere morals; and although he cannot be acquitted of occasional harshness, he had the secret of winning the hearts of his subjects, who never refused him their support in times of difficulty" (Pourpardin).

III *Hen. VI*, iv, vi, 90.

BURGUNDY (4), Duchess of. Rolfe following Ritson says: "Isabel, daughter of John I, King of Portugal, by Philippa of Lancaster, eldest daughter of John of Gaunt: she was therefore third cousin to Edward (IV) instead of aunt." Isabel had married Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy.

III *Hen. VI*, II, i, 146.

### HOUSE OF BURGUNDY





## BUSHY]

BUSHY, or Bussy, Sir John ; knight of the shire for Lincolnshire, became three times Speaker of the House of Commons. Grafton attributes the death of the Earl of Arundel and the exile of his brother, the archbishop, chiefly to Bushy's influence. He gained the favour of the king by grossly flattering his vanity. Holinshed says : " Sir John Bushie in all his talke, when he proposed any matter unto the king, did not attribute to him titles of honour due and accustomed, but invented unused termes and such strange names as were rather agreeable to the divine maiestic of God than to any earthlie potentate. The prince being desirous of all honour, and more ambitious than was requisite, seemed to like well of his speech and gave good eare to his talkc." Bushy was Speaker of the adjourned parliament which met at Shrewsbury in January 1398. After a three-days sitting it delegated its authority to a committee of eighteen members—twelve lords, and six members of the House of Commons, of whom Bushy was one—thus making Richard an absolute king. On the landing of Bolingbroke, Bushy fled with Green and the Earl of Wiltshire to Bristol, where they were taken and executed without trial by the Lancastrians in 1399.

It is usual to bracket the names of Bushy, Bagot and Green together with the opprobrious epithet, " creatures to King Richard." This is not Shakespeare's language, though it is true they were chief among the evil counsellors of Richard, by whose profuse extravagance they largely profited.

*Rich. II.*, I, iv ; II, i, ii, iii, 165 ; III, i, ii, 123f., iv, 53.

BUTTS, Dr. William ; born in Norfolk and admitted M.D. at Cambridge in 1518, was principal physician to Henry VIII. He is doubly fortunate in being mentioned by Shakespeare and handed down to posterity by Holbein, the king's favourite painter. Dr. Butts is the leading figure in a group of medical men to whom the king is presenting the Charter of the Barber-Surgeons' Company in 1541. He was a man of great learning and judgment and was one of the founders of the College of Physicians. He attended Anne Bullen in a very dangerous illness and was sent by the king to Esher when Wolsey lay ill there after his disgrace. Dr. Butts was a firm friend to Cranmer and the Reformation. The king knighted him and in 1537 bestowed on him the manor of Thornage in Norfolk. his native county. During Wolsey's disgrace, Butts tried to reconcile the king

to him, while his interposition in favour of Cranmer, as mentioned by Shakespeare, is well known. He died in 1545 and was buried in Fulham Church, where his monument, with a Latin inscription, remains. Many of his prescriptions are preserved in the British Museum.

*Hen. VIII, v, ii.*

CADE, John; rebel, commonly called Jack Cade, was an Irishman by birth and is styled by Hall as "of goodly stature and of pregnant wit." Rymer says he styled himself "Sir John Amend-all," and adds: "This turbulent mob-leader had been a dependent of Sir Thomas Dacre in Sussex but having murdered a woman and child abjured the realm and served in the French army." But in a few months he returned under the name of Aylmer, giving himself out to be a physician and gained so much reputation that he married a squire's daughter. In 1450 he became the leader of the Kentish rebellion, representing himself to be John Mortimer, according to Shakespeare, the son of the elder twin son of Edmund Mortimer Earl of March by Philippa, daughter of the Duke of Clarence. He was represented as a near relation of the Duke of York and that nobleman's enemies suggested that he was the instigator of the rebellion, though the theft of his jewels by Cade is against the suggestion.

The rebels marched on London and encamped at Blackheath, demanding the king's unpopular ministers. Henry issued a proclamation bidding all loyal men to avoid the field. When the host retired to Sevenoaks it was attacked by Sir Humphrey Stafford and his brother William. But the royalist forces were defeated and both the Staffords slain, whereupon the rebels returned to Southwark. Durrant says that the followers of Cade were not the scum of Kent alone but included many persons of good positions in that county and in Sussex. Gairdner adds: "No nobleman, indeed, appears openly to have taken part in it, and only one knight; but apparently the greater part of the gentry, with the mayors of the towns and the constables of the different hundreds, rose with the rebels. The men were summoned as if by lawful authority, and in many districts it is clear that all who were capable of bearing arms joined in the movement."

After the success at Sevenoaks Cade apparelled himself in Stafford's armour and so came to London, where he took up

**CALABER]**

his quarters at the "White Hart" in Southwark. The same afternoon he rode into the city, hewing the ropes of the draw-bridge asunder after he had passed over it and, striking his sword upon London Stone, proclaimed, "Now is Mortimer lord of this city." Next day he again entered the city, and caused Lord Say to be brought from the Tower and beheaded along with his son-in-law, William Cromer, Sheriff of Kent, their heads being carried through the city upon poles and made to kiss each other. But the outbreak of robbery and violence alarmed the citizens, who before had sympathized with the rebels and, after consultation with Lord Scales, the mayor and citizens under Matthew Gough, to whom the king had entrusted the custody of the Tower, opposed the rebels at London Bridge, where Gough was slain and the bridge set on fire. Before this Cade had broken open the prisons and the released prisoners gladly came to his aid.

The council now proclaimed an amnesty and the men, eagerly availing themselves of the proffered pardon, deserted their leader. A pardon, made out in the name of Mortimer, was also sent to Cade. He retreated to Rochester, bearing with him rich booty and stirring up further insurrection on the way. A proclamation, in which he was for the first time named John Cade, was now issued, offering a reward of £1,000 for his apprehension, dead or alive. Cade now escaped in disguise to the wooded district around Lewes, where he was captured by Alexander Iden, who had been appointed Sheriff of Kent in the place of the murdered Cromer. Cade was captured in the neighbourhood of Heathfield in Sussex. He was placed in a cart and conveyed to London, but died on the way from the effects of a wound received while resisting capture. His body was taken to the King's Bench prison, where it was beheaded, drawn and quartered, the head being set on London Bridge.

II *Hen. VI*, III, i, 857f. ; IV, ii, iii, v, 1, vi, vii, viii, ix, 8ff., x; v, i, 62ff.

**CALABER**, Duke of; a French noble present at the signing of the treaty of Tours in 1445.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, 7.

**CAMBRIDGE**, Richard Earl of; was the second son of Edmund of Langley, Duke of York, by Isabel of Castile. The date of his birth is doubtful, but in April 1403 he was employed in the

French war, while two years later he is mentioned as being summoned to the royal council. He was created Earl of Cambridge, a title formerly held by his father, by Henry V in 1414. By his marriage with Anne, daughter of Roger Mortimer and grand-daughter of Lionel Duke of Clarence, he became the centre of the plot for placing the young Earl of March on the throne during the absence of the Lancastrian king in France. The plot was revealed to Mortimer at Southampton and he straightway informed his friend the king, whereupon Scrope, Grey, and Cambridge were arrested. Richard was tried by his peers and condemned to death; the sentence being carried out in spite of his confession of guilt and piteous letters to Henry V begging for mercy. His attainder was confirmed by parliament in 1415 but was reversed in the first parliament of his grandson, Edward IV, 1461.

*Hen. V*, II, Prologue, 23; II, ii.

I *Hen. VI*, II, iv, 90, v, 54, 84.

II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 45.

CAMPEIUS, Cardinal; the Latinised form of Campeggio. Lorenzo Campeggio was born at Milan in 1461 of a noble Bolognese family. He was a man of great learning, and when in 1499 he took his doctorate he was esteemed the most learned canonist in Europe. He became the professor of law at the university of Padua. In 1500 he married Francesca de Gualtavillani, by whom he had five children. On the death of his wife, ten years later, he entered the priesthood of the Roman Church. In 1517 he was created cardinal, being appointed bishop of Salisbury and resident agent of Henry VIII at Rome in 1524. In 1529 he was appointed, along with Wolsey, as papal commissioner, to try the question of the king's divorce. But, at the same time, he received strict instructions "not to proceed to sentence under any pretext without express commission, but protract the matter as long as possible." He adjourned the court after a few week's sitting and, before it could assemble again, news came that the commission was prorogued and the matter transferred to Rome. Henry was furious and deprived Campeius of his bishopric. The cardinal retired to Rome, where he died in 1589. Campeius was very bitter against Luther and urged the emperor, Charles V, to stamp out his following with fire and sword.

*Hen. VIII*, II, i, 160, ii, iv; III, i, ii, 56,

## CANTERBURY]

CANTERBURY, Archbishop of:

(1) Stephen Langton. See Langton.

*John*, III, i, 143.

(2) Thomas Arundel. See Arundel (3).

*Rich.* II, II, i, 282.

(3) Henry Chichele, born in 1362, was the son of a yeoman of Higham Ferrers, Northamptonshire. After being educated under the patronage of William of Wykeham at Winchester and New College Oxford, he became a monk of the Carthusian order. Following a course of very rapid preferment, he was appointed English envoy to Pope Innocent VII in 1405 and to Gregory XII in 1407. He was consecrated bishop of St. David's in the next year, but before he had had time to visit his diocese he was sent off as envoy to the council of Pisa in 1409. It was not until 1411 that he was able to go to St. David's and devote himself to the affairs of his diocese. On the accession of Henry V he was again employed as an ambassador, being sent to France in company with the Earl of Warwick in 1413. On his return the king nominated him to the see of Canterbury, now vacant by the death of Archbishop Arundel. Chichele warmly advocated the war with France and, though he only appears in the first two scenes of the play, nothing could be finer than his analogy of the commonwealth of the bees. Shakespeare bases his representation of the bishops urging on the French war in the hope of foiling the attacks of the Lollards on the church upon a passage in Hall. But this must not be accepted as accurate, for, as Dr. Stubbs points out, "Chichele did not sit as archbishop in the Leicester parliament"; while the energy with which the clergy exerted themselves to find means for its prosecution does not bear out the charge brought against them of instigating the king to embark on it in order to serve their own purposes. Chichele appointed a special thanksgiving for the victory of Agincourt in 1415 and met the king at Canterbury on his victorious return. He was distinguished for his defence of the English church against the pope but, on the other hand, he was an opponent of Wycliffe, suppressing Lollardism with a firm hand. He opposed the granting of the cardinalate to Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, and was supported in his action by the king. In 1418 he was with Henry V in France, negotiated the surrender

of Rouen in 1419, and secured the independence of the Gallican church in 1420. As long as Henry V lived, the archbishop successfully carried out a national church policy, refusing to allow the see of Canterbury to be overridden by the legatine authority. But the disorganisation of the early years of Henry VI left the church defenceless before the attacks of Rome, though the archbishop struggled valiantly against them until the end of his life. In the Council of Regency he upheld the Duke of Gloucester against the attacks of Beaufort. Chichele was a benefactor of Canterbury cathedral, founded the Chichele Chest in the Oxford University for the relief of poor students, and founded All Soul's College. He died in 1443 and was buried in his cathedral.

*Hen. V, I, i, ii.*

For an account of the archbishop's argument that Henry V might justly claim the throne of France and an explanation of the genealogical table put forward by him in *Hen. V, I, ii*, lines 35 to 95, see as follows:—

CANT. : . . . There is no bar

To make against your highness' claim to France  
But this, which they produce from *Pharamond*,  
*In terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant*,  
No woman shall succeed in Salique land :  
Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze (40)  
To be the realm of France, and Pharamond  
The founder of this law and female bar.

Yet their own authors faithfully affirm  
That the land Salique is in Germany,  
Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe :  
Where *Charles the Great*, having subdued the Saxons,  
There left behind and settled certain French ;  
Who, holding in disdain the German women  
For some dishonest manners of their life,  
Establish'd then this law : to wit, no female (50)  
Should be inheritrix in Salique land :

Which Salique, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala,  
• Is at this day in Germany call'd Meisen.  
Then doth it well appear the Salique law  
Was not devised for the realm of France ;  
Nor did the French possess the Salique land

CANTERBURY]

Until four hundred one and twenty years  
 After defunction of King Pharamond,  
 Idly supposed the founder of this law ;  
 Who died within the year of our redemption (60)  
 Four hundred twenty six ; and *Charles the Great*  
 Subdued the Saxons, and did seat the French  
 Beyond the river Sala, in the year  
 Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say,  
 King Pepin, which deposed Childeric,  
 Did, as heir general, being descended  
 Of Blithild, which was daughter to King Clothair,  
 Make claim and title to the crown of France.  
 Hugh Capet also, who usurped the crown  
 Of Charles the duke of Lorraine, sole heir male (70)  
 Of the true line and stock of *Charles the Great*  
 To find his title with some shows of truth,  
 Though in pure truth, it was corrupt and naught,  
 Convey'd himself as heir to the Lady Lingare,  
 Daughter to *Charlemain*, who was the son  
 To *Lewis the emperor*, and Lewis the son  
 Of *Charles the Great*. Also King *Lewis the Tenth*,  
 Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet,  
 Could not keep quiet in his conscience,  
 Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied (80)  
 That fair Queen Isabel, his grandmother,  
 Was lineal of the Lady Ermengare,  
 Daughter to Charles the aforesaid duke of Lorraine ;  
 By which marriage the line of Charles the Great  
 Was reunited to the crown of France.  
 So that, as clear as is the summer's sun,  
 King Pepin's title and Hugh Capet's claim,  
 King Lewis his satisfaction, all appear  
 To hold in right and title of the female :  
 So do the kings of France unto this day ; (90)  
 Howbeit they would hold up this Salique law  
 To bar your highness claiming from the female,  
 And rather choose to hide them in a net  
 Than amply to imbar their crooked titles  
 Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

*Notes upon the above*

The speech of the Archbishop of Canterbury is taken almost

verbatim from the *Chronicles*. He first gives the French side of the case and then the reply on behalf of England.

*The French case :*

- (1) No woman shall succeed in Salique land.
- (2) Salique land was part of the realm of France.
- (3) Pharamond was the founder of the law.

*English reply :*

- (1) The Salique land was in Germany, between the Sala and the Elbe, and not in France.
- (2) The law was established there by Charles the Great 400 years after the death of Pharamond, so that the latter could not have been the founder of the law.
- (3) This law debarred women from the inheritance of estates, and had nothing to do with the throne of France, which was not yet in existence.
- (4) Three cases had already occurred in history of French kings either deriving or strengthening their claims to the French throne by claiming descent through females, viz. :
  - (a) Pepin through Blithild, the daughter of King Clothair.
  - (b) Hugh Capet, as heir of Lady Lingare, the daughter of Charlechauve.
  - (c) Lewis the Ninth, through his grandmother, Queen Isabel, as a descendant of Lady Ermengare.

Of the personages mentioned by the Archbishop :

*Pharmond* is a legendary king of the Salian Franks of whose existence there is grave doubt and therefore no account of him is given in the Historical Dictionary.

*Charles the Great* is in all cases Charlemagne.

*Charlemain* should be Charlechauve, i.e. Charles the Bald.

*Lewis the Tenth* should be Lewis the Ninth. Shakespeare follows Holinshed, who is responsible for all three errors.

*Lewis the Emperor* is Lewis I, the son of Charlemagne.

In line 77 I have interpolated the words "this" and

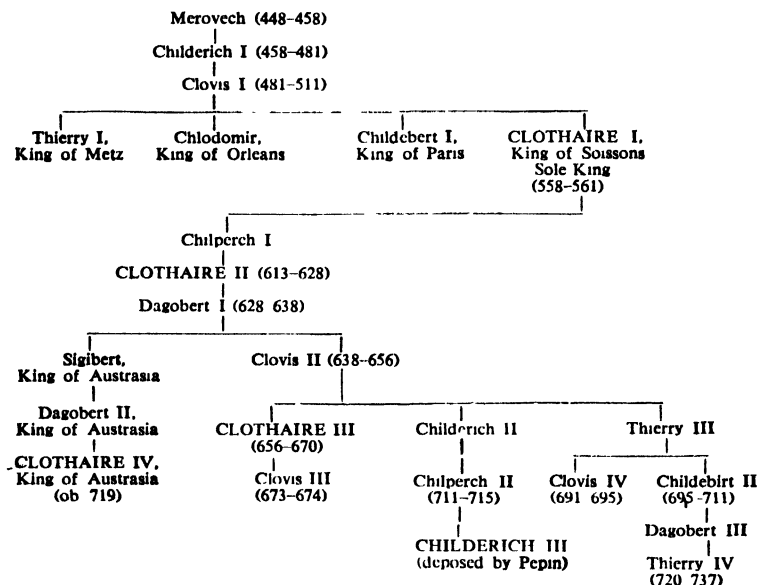
- "was", to make the reading quite clear.

*Blithild*, *Lingare*, and *Ermengare* are all fictitious personages and so are omitted from the Historical Dictionary.



The following genealogical tables illustrate the line of descent referred to by the Archbishop. The names of the persons mentioned by him are printed in capitals.

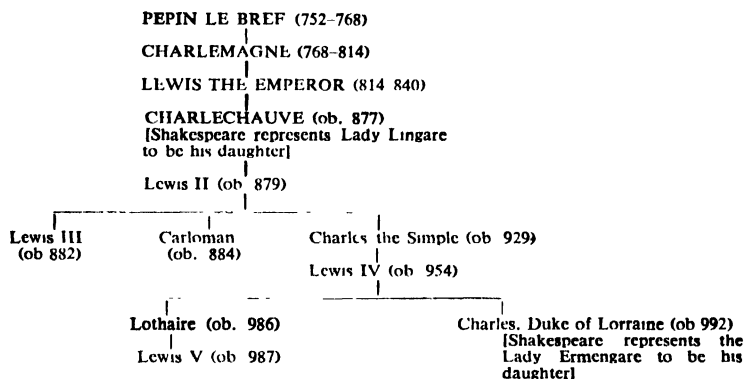
### MEROVINGIAN DYNASTY



Shakespeare represents Pepin le Bref as being descended from one of the above Clothaires through the fictitious Blithild.

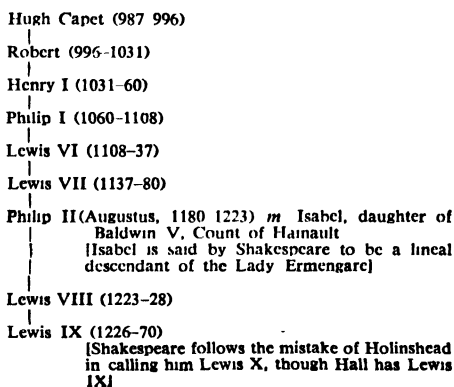
From the death of Clovis I to that of Dagobert I the Merovingians displayed considerable energy. After 639, however, the race began to decline. One after another the kings succeeded to the throne, but none of them reached more than the age of 20 or 25; this was the age of the *rois fainéants*. Henceforth the real sovereign was the mayor of the palace. These mayors of the palace belonging to the Carolingian family were able to keep the throne for periods of time, and finally the mayor Pepin, with the consent of Pope Zacharias, sent Childerich III to the monastery of St. Omer and ascended the throne:

## CARLOVINGIAN DYNASTY



Lewis the Fifth died without issue in 987 after a reign of little over a year. The crown now belonged, according to the rightful order of succession, to his uncle Charles Duke of Lorraine. This prince, however, found but few to support his pretensions; and at a grand assembly of the nobles held at Senlis, the Archbishop of Rheims strongly urged the election of the Count of Paris, Hugh Capet. Hugh was elected king by general acclamation, and by his coronation at Rheims in 987 a new dynasty was inaugurated. Charles of Lorraine was defeated by Hugh Capet, taken prisoner and imprisoned in Orleans Castle, where he died.

## CAPETIAN DYNASTY



## CANTERBURY]

CANTERBURY, Archbishop of (*continued*):

(4) Thomas Bouchier, third son of William Bouchier, Earl of Ewe, by his wife, Anne Plantagenet, daughter of Thomas of Woodstock, youngest son of Edward III. Thomas was born *c.* 1404 and was educated at Oxford. After his ordination his course of preferment was very rapid and he became successively Prebend of Lichfield, 1424; Bishop of Worcester, 1434; of Ely, 1443; Archbishop of Canterbury, 1454; and Lord Chancellor, 1455. Bouchier had, to some extent, the confidence of both the Lancastrian and Yorkist parties and was expected to preserve the balance between them. After the first battle of St. Albans, he assisted Waynflete to draw up the terms of agreement between the two parties for their temporary reconciliation in 1458. Though he had shown in the house of peers that he did not favour the Duke of York's repudiation of his allegiance, he acknowledged Edward IV as king, crowned him in 1461, and his queen Elizabeth Woodville in 1465. In 1471, Bouchier and his mother raised troops for the restoration of Edward IV and also won over the Duke of Clarence to his brother's side, arranging the reconciliation between them. He was installed cardinal of St. Cyrineus in 1473 and was one of the four arbitrators of the peace of Amiens in 1475. After the death of Edward IV, he headed the deputation which persuaded the queen-dowager to entrust her second son, Richard, to his uncle, the Protector. Three weeks later he officiated at the coronation of Richard III but there is good reason to believe that after the murder of the princes, for whose safety he had pledged his word, Bouchier shared the popular indignation against the king. Though we do not know to what extent he entered into the conspiracies against Richard, yet he was one who rejoiced most sincerely in the triumph of Henry VII at Bosworth. Within three months he crowned the new king at Westminster and, as a fitting close to his career as a peacemaker, married him to Elizabeth of York in 1486, thus joining the red and white roses and taking away all occasion for civil war. Bouchier, who had lived right throughout the Wars of the Roses, died three months later and was buried in his cathedral.

*Rich. III*, III, i.

(5) William Warham was born in Hampshire, *c.* 1450, and educated at Wykeham's school at Winchester. He passed on

to New College, Oxford, where he became Fellow in 1475 and head of the civil law school in 1489. After being employed on several embassies he was ordained in 1493. Three years later he was appointed to treat with the Spanish ambassadors concerning the marriage of Prince Arthur with Katherine of Aragon and when these negotiations were concluded, he continued to be employed in diplomatic service. While absent on an embassy to the Emperor Maximilian in 1501, he was elected Bishop of London. He was consecrated in 1502 and shortly afterwards became Keeper of the Great Seal and Lord Chancellor in 1504, being appointed Archbishop of Canterbury in the same year. Being again employed on embassies, he gave great satisfaction by his speeches and conduct. In 1509 Warham crowned Henry VIII and Katherine at Westminster. He was munificent to Erasmus and tried to induce him to settle in England by promising him a living. From Warham's hands Wolsey received his cardinal's hat in 1515, but in the next month the archbishop delivered up the Great Seal and Wolsey became Chancellor. Warham received the Emperor Charles V at Canterbury in 1520 and accompanied the king to the Field of the Cloth of Gold. Several times he came into opposition with Wolsey, who by his legatine authority tried to overrule the native prerogatives of the see of Canterbury, but their disputes were never personal. In 1527 he was Wolsey's assessor in the secret enquiry first instituted to enquire as to the validity of the king's marriage with Katherine of Aragon. In the following summer he was too ill to receive Campeggio and took no part in the divorce proceedings, though he had been assigned by the king as chief counsel for Katherine. He signed the letter addressed by the lords of England to the pope asking for his consent to a divorce. February 1532 saw the end of his compliance with the king's wishes and he protested against those acts which were derogatory to the pope's authority and that of the see of Canterbury. This protest drew upon him an attack from both Houses of Parliament. But he was now worn out and died in 1532, being buried in his cathedral. His munificence to public objects and literary men was very great and he died incredibly poor, leaving only enough to pay his debts and funeral expenses. .

*Hen. VIII, II, iv,*

(6) Thomas Cranmer. See Cranmer.

*Hen. VIII, III, ii, 401 ; IV, i, 25ff. ; V, i, ii, iii, v. .*

CAPET]

CAPET, Hugh. See Hugh Capet.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 69ff.

CAPTAIN OF A BAND OF WELSHMEN. King Richard sent the Earl of Salisbury to incite the Welsh against Bolingbroke. He raised 4,000 men who remained a fortnight in the field and then disbanded on hearing a report that the king was dead. The renowned Glendower of the next play, who is alluded to in this, *Rich. II*, III, i, was actually in attendance on Richard as his "beloved squire and minstrel." He must have escaped capture at Flint, since he headed a band of his countrymen and harassed the rear of Bolingbroke's forces as far as Coventry, when he carried off his illustrious prisoner to London.

*Rich. II*, II, iv.

CAPUCIUS, Eustachius; the Latinised form of Chapuys, was a Spanish ambassador from the Emperor Charles V, Queen Katherine's nephew. Holinshed says that he was sent by King Henry to Katherine in her last sickness and was with her when she expired, undertaking to deliver her last letter to the king.

*Hen. VIII*, IV, ii.

CAR, John de la; an alternative reading for John de la Court, the chaplain to the Duke of Buckingham, who acted as intermediary between him and Nicholas Hopkins. He was arrested at the same time as his master but, at the trial, gave evidence against him. The Globe edition 1904 gives the above reading but John de la Court is apparently the correct reading historically, as that is the name of his chaplain and confessor in the papers connected with the trial of the Duke of Buckingham now in the Record Office.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 217, ii, 162; II, i, 20.

CARDINAL :

(1) Pandulph. See Pandulph.

*John*, III, i, iv; IV, iii, 14; V, i, ii, vii, 92.

(2) Beaufort. See Winchester (1).

I *Hen. VI*, I, i, iii; III, i, iv; IV, i; V, i, iv.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, 27ff., iii; II, i; III, i, iii.

(3) Bouchier. See Canterbury (4).

*Rich. III.*, III, i.

(4) Wolsey. See Wolsey.

*Hen. VIII.*, I, i, ii, iii, 50, iv; II, i, 39ff., ii, iv; III, i, ii;  
IV, i, 96, ii, 48.

(5) Campeius. See Campeius.

*Hen. VIII.*, II, i, 160, ii, iv; III, i, ii, 56.

CARLISLE, Bishop of. This was Thomas Merke, a Benedictine monk of Westminster, thrust upon the chapter of Carlisle by the pope at the request of Richard II in 1397. He was much employed in secular matters both at home and abroad; was one of the commissioners for Queen Isabella's dowry in 1389; and there is grave reason to doubt whether he ever visited his diocese. He accompanied the king to Ireland in 1399 and was with him on his surrender at Conway. Merke was committed to the care of the abbot of St. Albans but was present in parliament when Richard's renunciation of the throne was read. His was the only dissentient voice raised against Richard's deposition and sentence to close confinement; for which protest he was committed to the custody of the abbot of Westminster. He is said to have been present at the meeting of conspirators in the abbot's room, and for his supposed knowledge of the plot to seize the new king was committed to the Tower and deprived of his bishopric. Merke was subsequently released by Henry IV and it was expressly stated in the writ for his release that he was pardoned for the excellence of his character. He acted occasionally as deputy for Wykeham and was commissioned to perform episcopal functions in the diocese of Winchester during its vacancy. The king, in 1403, bestowed upon him the vicarage of Sturminster Marshall, in Dorset. Merke was one of the three Englishmen present at Lucca in 1408, where he took sides against the pope. He died in 1409.

*Rich. II.*, III, ii, iii; IV, i; V, vi.

CASSADO, or Cassalis; Sir Gregory de; was one of the English ambassadors at the court of Rome. Shakespeare was no doubt following Hall here, whose words are: "He [Wolsey] without the king's assent, sent a commission to Sir

Gregory de Cassado, knight, to conclude a league between the king and the Duke of Ferrara, without the king's knowledge." This was one clause of the indictment against Wolsey.

*Hen. VIII*, III, ii, 321.

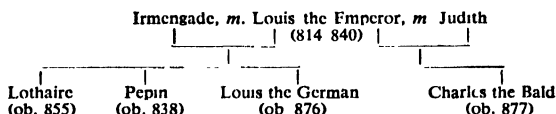
CATESBY, William; son of Sir William Catesby of Ashby St. Leger. He possessed great influence with Richard III before his accession to the throne. More speaks of him as a man well versed in the law. Richard, we are told, endeavoured through him to ascertain whether Hastings would acquiesce in his intended usurpation of the crown. But Hastings replied with such "terrible words" that Catesby, fearing for his own position, stirred up the Protector to remove his patron. He succeeded Hastings as Chancellor of the Exchequer in 1483 and in the next year was chosen Speaker in Richard's only parliament. He is held up to opprobrium as the king's chief adviser in the well-known contemporary satirical rhyme by Collingbourne. Catesby was taken prisoner at Bosworth in 1485 and beheaded three days afterwards at Leicester. "This William Catesby is often erroneously called Sir William and spoken of as a knight; but he was only an esquire of the the royal body" (Gairdner). He was buried in the church of Ashby St. Leger, where there is a very fine monumental brass with the effigies of Catesby and his wife, Margaret, the daughter of William Lord Zouche; and it is singular that the time of his death is placed two days before the date of the battle of Bosworth. His son's widow married Sir Thomas Lucy of Charlecote, and their grandson is the Justice Shallow of Shakespeare's time, while the descendant of the above character in the fifth generation was Robert Catesby, the prime mover in the Gunpowder plot.

*Rich. III*, I, iii; III, i, ii, iv, 38, v, vi, 6, vii; IV, ii, iii, iv; v, iii, iv.

CHARLEMAIN (1), for Charlemagne. See Charles (1) the Great. *All's Well*, II, i, 80.

CHARLEMAIN (2). This is a mistake copied from Holinshed. The son of Louis the Emperor was Charlechaue, i.e. Charles the Bald. See Genealogical Table of Carlovingian dynasty under Canterbury (3).

CHARLES II, called Charlechaue, was the son of Louis the Emperor by his second wife, Judith. He was born in 823. The attempts of his father to assign him a kingdom at the expense of his half-brothers, Lothaire and Louis, led to the outbreak of civil war as soon as the Emperor died.



Charles allied himself with his younger half-brother, Louis the German, and the two inflicted a severe defeat on Lothaire at Fontenoy in 841. The war was brought to an end by the treaty of Verdun, 843, by which Charles obtained the kingdom of the Western Franks which extended from the Meuse, the Saône, and the Rhône to the Ebro. For several years Charles reigned in peace, but in 858 his disaffected nobles appealed to Louis the German. Louis ravaged the kingdom and Charles fled to Burgandy. After successive attempts to regain his dominions, Charles was compelled to share them with Louis by the treaty of Meisen, 870. The next few years were occupied in waging war against the rebellious nobles and resisting the invasion of the Normans. Several times he was compelled to purchase the retreat of the latter at a high price, as the unwillingness of his nobles to lend him their aid prevented him from making headway against the invaders. In 875, after the death of Louis II, Charles received the imperial crown from Pope John VIII. But Louis the German, who had also been a candidate for the empire, revenged himself by invading Charles's dominions. But the danger was removed by the death of Louis in the next year. In 877, Charles at the urgent request of the pope crossed the Alps to aid him against the Saracens. Scarcely had Charles arrived when he was recalled by news that Carloman, the son of Louis the German, had invaded his kingdom. Charles, though now seriously ill, started on his return home, but died while crossing the Alps in 877. "Charles seems to have been a prince of education and letters, a friend of the church and conscious of the support he could find in the episcopate against his unruly nobles, for he chose his counsellors for preference among the higher clergy. . . . His reign has been much misjudged by the



## CHARLES (THE GREAT)]

Frankish chroniclers, who favour Louis the German and accuse Charles of cowardice and bad faith. He seems, on the contrary, not to have lacked activity or decision.

*Hen. V, i, ii, 75.*

CHARLES (1) THE GREAT ; called CHARLEMAGNE, was the elder son of Pepin le Bref and Bertha, daughter of Charibert Count of Laon. The place of his birth is unknown and the date uncertain, though some authors give it as 2nd April, 742. On Pepin's death in 768 Charles succeeded to the northern portion of his dominions but his brother Carloman, with whom he had not been on friendly terms, died in 771 and Charles thus became sole king. In the next year he began to wage war upon the Saxons and had extended his frontier as far as the Weser when Pope Adrian I called for his aid against the Lombards. Two years previously Charles had married the daughter of Desiderius, king of the Lombards, but had repudiated her because she bore him no children. Moreover, Gerberga, the widow of Carloman, had fled to the Lombard king and he requested the pope to recognize her son as the successor to his father's domains. Adrian refused; whereupon Desiderius invaded and laid waste the papal territory. Finding remonstrance in vain, Charlemagne crossed the Alps and overthrew the king of the Lombards in 774, the Lombard dukes acknowledging the French monarch as their king. Four years later he was invited to undertake an expedition against the Moors in Spain and thus added to his dominions the territory from the Pyrenees to the Ebro. The next few years were spent in crushing insurrections of the Saxons, while in 788 Bavaria was added to the empire. In 800, Charlemagne was waging war on the pope's behalf against the rebellious Romans. Whilst worshipping in St Peter's on Christmas Day of that year, the new pope, Leo III, unexpectedly as it appeared, set a crown upon the head of Charles and amid the applause of the people saluted him as Emperor. The title, though adding nothing to his dominions, greatly enhanced his prestige. The remaining fourteen years of his reign were spent in consolidating his vast empire which extended from the Ebro to the Elbe.

The personal appearance of Charles is thus described by Einhard, his secretary. "Big and robust in frame, he was tall, but not excessively so, measuring seven of his own feet in height. His eyes were large and lustrous, his nose rather long

and his countenance bright and cheerful." He had a commanding presence, a clear but somewhat feeble voice, and in later life became rather corpulent. He enjoyed good health till shortly before his death, probably owing to his moderation in eating and drinking and his fondness for all manly exercises, particularly hunting. He tried to establish equitable government throughout his domains by appointing counts over every district and supervising these by officials responsible to himself alone. He zealously endeavoured to promote education, agriculture, art, manufacture, and commerce; while he established churches and bishoprics throughout his empire and reformed the Frankish liturgy. Possessing an amount of learning unusual in his age, he delighted in the society of scholars and attempted to draw up a grammar of his own language. But he was unable to write and Einhard gives an account of his futile efforts to learn this art in later life. His fame spread to all parts of the then known world and in 789 Harun-al-Rashid, Caliph of Baghdad, sent ambassadors to salute him. He was not a great warrior, his victories being largely won by his magnificent powers of organisation. Charlemagne died in 814 and was buried in the church at Aix-la-Chapelle, which he himself had built.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 46ff.

*All's Well*, II, i, 80.

CHARLES (2) VI OF FRANCE. See France, King of (2).

*Hen. V*, II, iv; III, v; v, ii.

CHARLES (3) DUKE OF LORRAINE; was the younger son of the Frankish king, Lewis IV. See Genealogical Table of the Carolingian kings under Canterbury (8). Being unable to obtain the duchy of Burgundy owing to the opposition of his brother, King Lothaire, he retired to the court of his maternal uncle, Otto the Great, who bestowed upon him the duchy of Lower Lorraine. Though his authority in Lorraine was largely nominal he aided Otto in his struggle with Lothaire, and on the death of his nephew, Lewis V, made an effort to secure the Frankish crown. But Hugh Capet was the successful candidate and war broke out between the rivals. Charles, after several successes, had captured Rheims, when, in 991, he was treacherously seized by Adalberon, Bishop of Laon and

**CHARLES (DAUPHIN)]**

handed over to the usurper. Hugh Capet imprisoned him along with his wife and children in the castle of Orleans, where he died shortly afterwards.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 70 and 83.

**CHARLES (4), the Dauphin, i.e. CHARLES VII.** See France, King of (8).

I *Hen. VI*, I, i, 92, ii, v, vi; II, i; III, ii, iii; IV, i, 60f.,  
ii, 39, iv, 26; v, i, 17, ii, iii, 37, iv, v, 45.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, 41f.

**CHARLES (5), the Emperor, CHARLES V.** See Emperor (4).

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 176; IV, ii, 109.

**CHARLES (6) BRANDON.** See Suffolk (3).

*Hen. VIII*, v, i.

**CHARLES (7) De la Brett.** See Constable.

*Hen. V*, II, iv, 41; III, v, 40ff., vii, 8ff.; IV, viii, 97

**CHARLES (8) of Orleans.** See Orleans (1).

*Hen. V*, IV, viii, 81.

**CHARLOIS, Duke of.** This was the title borne by Philip the Good, afterwards Duke of Burgundy, during the lifetime of his father. See Burgundy (2)

*Hen. V*, III, v, 45.

**CHATHAM, Clerk of;** "In the Folio of 1623 this person is called 'the Clearke of Chartham', and there seems no reason why the name should be altered to 'Chatham' as in modern editions, since Chartham is the name of a place between Canterbury and Ashford, and formerly of some importance, from having in it the residence of the Priors of Christ Church, and which was afterwards that of the Deans of Canterbury. Chartham would be well-known to Cade as an Ashford man, and to some of his followers as 'men of Kent.' But it is possible that Shakespeare had in view another place in IV, ii, where the seizure of the unlucky penman is recorded, one of Cade's followers telling his leader

'We took him setting of boy's copies,'

from which passage it may be inferred that the clerk, who from his 'pen and inkhorn' was without doubt a school-master, pursued his calling near Blackheath, where Cade's army was encamped; and a name similar to Chartham suggests itself as a still more likely locality, viz. Charlton, a parish adjoining the scene of the rebel's gathering on the heath" (French).

*II Hen. VI*, iv, ii,

CHATILLON (1), an ambassador from France to King John. Hugh de Chatillon is named among the Grand Peers of France who were assembled in parliament at Paris in 1223 and, as King Philip would send a person of exalted rank upon so important an embassy as that which occurs in the play, no doubt this is the same person. The family played an important part in history and made several alliances with the royal houses of France and England.

*John*, I, i; II, i.

CHATILLON (2), Jacques de; admiral of France, was slain at Agincourt.

*Hen. V*, III, v, 43; IV, viii, 98.

CHILDERICH III (ob. c. 731), king of the Franks, was the last king of the Merovingian dynasty. See table *sub* Canterbury (3). The throne had been vacant for seven years when the mayors of the palace, Carloman and Pepin the Short, decided in 734 to recognize Childerich as king. But he took no part in public business, which was directed as before by the mayors of the palace. When in 747 Carloman retired into a monastery, Pepin resolved to secure the royal crown for himself. He took the decisive step in 751, after receiving the celebrated answer of pope Zacharias that it was better to name king him who possessed the power than him who possessed it not. Childerich was deposed and confined in the monastery of St. Omer.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 65.

CLARENCE (1). Lionel of Antwerp, Earl of Ulster and Duke of Clarence, the third son of Edward III, was born at Antwerp in 1368 during the stay of his parents in the Low Countries on account of the French war. At the age of three he was

## CLARENCE]

betrothed by his father to Elizabeth de Burgh, only child of William de Burgh, sixth Lord of Connaught and third Earl of Ulster; the head of one of the greatest Anglo-Norman houses in Ireland; who had been murdered in 1332. Elizabeth was then a girl of about nine and the actual marriage took place in 1352, whereupon Lionel entered upon his wife's vast possessions. He was created guardian of the realm during his father's absence in France in 1345. In 1347 he was created Earl of Ulster; knighted in 1355; appointed king's lieutenant in Ireland in 1361; and created Duke of Clarence in 1362 at the same time that his brother John was created Duke of Lancaster. The title of Clarence was derived from the town of Clare in Suffolk, the lordship of which had been inherited by Lionel's wife from her grandmother, the sister and co-heiress of Gilbert de Clare, the last Earl of Gloucester of that line. Clarence's wife died in 1362 leaving an only daughter Philippa, whose marriage in 1368 to Edmund Mortimer, third Earl of March, transferred her claims to the throne to the House of York. Lionel met the parliament at Kilkenny which drew up the famous statute forbidding the intermarriage of the English settlers with the Irish; but in 1366 he resigned the government and returned home. He married a second rich heiress at Milan, Violante daughter of Galeazzo Visconti, lord of Pavia, in 1368 but died in the same year at Pavia. Lionel was a man of great strength and beauty of person, and exceedingly tall in stature.

I *Hen. VI*, II, iv, 83; v, 75.

II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 34f.; IV, ii, 145; iv, 29.

CLARENCE (2), Thomas Duke of; born c. 1388, was the second son of Henry IV and Mary de Bohun. In 1401 he was made lieutenant of Ireland, Sir Thomas Erpingham and Sir Hugh Warterton being named his wardens, the boy lieutenant naturally adding to their cares. In 1404 he was with his brother Henry in South Wales, while in 1405 he was given command of a fleet which assembled at Sandwich and with which he burnt some vessels at Sluys and ravaged the coast of Normandy. In 1408 he returned to Ireland, which he had been ruling by deputy until now; arrested the Earl of Kildare and his sons; made a raid into Leinster where he was wounded at Kilmainham; but was recalled to England in the next year by the news of his father's illness. The government was now

passing into the hands of the Prince of Wales, who was supported by the Beauforts, with whom Thomas had quarrelled over the money due to him on his marriage with the widow of his uncle, John Beaufort, Earl of Somerset. This quarrel brought Thomas into opposition to his brother but little is heard of him except notices of his riotous conduct in London. On the King's recovery, the Beauforts were displaced and Thomas supplanted his elder brother in the direction of the government. Under his influence an alliance was concluded with the Duke of Orleans and Clarence led an expedition to his aid. The news of his father's death recalled Clarence to England and, though in the royal council, he continued to favour an alliance with the Orleanists against the Burgundians, he was personally on good terms with his brother and helped forward the preparations for the invasion of France in 1415. Clarence presided over the court appointed to try the Earl of Cambridge and his fellow conspirators, afterwards taking part in the siege of Harfleur; whence he was sent home in charge of the sick and wounded while Henry continued his march to Agincourt. He took part in the great expedition of 1417 which culminated in Henry's triumphal entry into Paris in 1420; accompanied Henry to Troyes and was appointed lieutenant of France on the king's return to England with his bride in the next year. Shortly afterwards, Clarence started on a raid through Maine and Anjou. Being desirous to emulate his brother's victory at Agincourt, he attacked the French, (at Beaugé) who had been reinforced by a strong body of Scottish knights, with his cavalry only without waiting for the main body of his army. He was overwhelmed and many of the knights who accompanied him fell in the battle, his body being recovered from one of the heaps of slain, carried to England, and interred at Canterbury. The English mourned him as a brave and valiant soldier who had no equal in military prowess.

II *Hen. IV.*, iv, iv, v; v, ii.

CLARENCE (8). George Duke of; the sixth son (the third surviving infancy) of Richard Duke of York and Cicely Neville, his wife, was born in Dublin during his father's residence there as lord lieutenant of Ireland. After the death of his father in 1460, George and his younger brother Richard were sent for safety to Utrecht, whence they returned on their

## CLARENCE]

brother Edward's accession to the throne in 1461. George was now created Duke of Clarence. At Calais in 1469 he married, contrary to Edward's wishes, Isabella, the elder daughter of the great Earl Warwick, and at once joined his father-in-law in an invasion of England. The battle of Edgecote made Edward their prisoner but public opinion compelled them to release him. After obtaining an amnesty Clarence became implicated with Warwick in an unsuccessful Lancastrian rising in Lincolnshire and fled to France where, in the harbour of Calais, the Duchess of Clarence gave birth to a son. In 1470 Clarence returned to England with Warwick; Edward IV fled; and Henry VI was restored to the throne. Clarence, who desired the throne himself, strongly disapproved of the Lancastrian restoration and was secretly reconciled to his brother. When Edward landed in 1471, Clarence deserted to him with 4,000 men while he was blockading Warwick in Coventry. Clarence fought with his brother at Barnet and Tewkesbury and assisted in the restoration of the Yorkist dynasty. The only support for the story that he assisted in murdering the unfortunate Prince Edward after the latter battle, to be found in contemporary writers, is Warkworth's statement that he "cried for succour" to Clarence. He now became involved in a violent quarrel with his brother Richard Duke of Gloucester, who wished to marry Anne Neville and share her father's heritage, and was only reconciled to him after parliamentary partition of the estates in 1474. Clarence's wife died in 1476, while the death of Charles the Bold a fortnight later made Mary of Burgundy, whose hand had once been sought for Clarence, mistress of all her father's dominions. Clarence at once offered himself as a suitor, but on political as well as on personal grounds, Edward placed his veto on the match, as it would have involved him in difficulties with France, while the queen is said to have pushed the claims of Earl Rivers. Clarence revenged himself on some of the queen's adherents but he was himself charged with seeking the death of the king by necromancy, committed to the Tower, attainted, and secretly executed in 1478. The mode of his death is uncertain; the statement that he was drowned in a butt of malmsey being perhaps only a London rumour. Shakespeare represents the murderer as finding the butt of malmsey conveniently at hand to complete his work. Miss Strickland says that the death of his wife had a great effect

on his mind and caused him to give way to intemperance. She suggests that he was "the victim of his own frailty" when the butt of malmsey was placed in his prison cell. He was buried at Tewkesbury beside his wife. In *Rich III*, I, iv, 72, he is made to allude to his wife as if she survived him.

*III Hen. VI*, II, vi, 104f.; III, ii, iii, 208; IV, i, ii, iii, vi, vii, 84, viii; V, i, iii; IV, 26, v, vi, 84f., vii.

*Rich. III*, I, i, iii, 86ff., iv; II, i, 76ff., ii, 4ff.; III, i, 144; IV, iii, 35, iv, 46f.; V, iii.

CLARENCE (4). Young son of; this man was Edward Plantagenet, the unfortunate Earl of Warwick, elder son of Clarence (3). He was only three years old at the time of his father's death and as his mother had predeceased her husband, Edward was brought up by his aunt Anne, the duchess of Gloucester, being knighted in 1483. Next year, the usurper Richard III, having lost his only son, thought to name him his heir, but on further consideration shut him up in close confinement in Sheriff Hutton Castle. On the accession of Henry VII he was transferred to the Tower, where he remained for the rest of his days. In 1487 he was impersonated by Lambert Simnel and in consequence, for one day, Henry VII caused Warwick to pass through the streets of London, after which he was again taken to the Tower. Here he remained for the next twelve years. Cut off from all human intercourse from his boyhood, and debarred from even the sight of common objects, it was said that "he could not discern a goose from a capon". Perkin Warbeck was committed to the Tower after his surrender at Taunton and placed along with Warwick. In 1499 the unfortunate Duke was beheaded on the ridiculous pretence that he had conspired against Henry VII, though he had merely agreed to Warbeck's plan for the escape of both from prison. It was reported that his death was in a great measure due to Ferdinand of Spain, who refused to give his daughter in marriage to prince Arthur so long as the succession might be disputed on behalf of this son of Clarence, and there seems much truth in the statement. Many years afterwards, when Katherine of Arragon felt bitterly the cruelty of Henry VIII in seeking a divorce from her, she observed, according to Lord Bacon, "that it was a judgment of God, for that her former marriage was made in blood, meaning that of the Earl of Warwick".

*Rich. III*, II, ii; III, v, 107; IV, iii, 35.



## CLARENCE]

CLARENCE (5). Young daughter of ; this was Margaret, the last of the Plantagenets, the second daughter of Clarence (3). She was born at Castle Farley, near Bath, in 1473 and became as illustrious for her misfortunes as for her royal birth. She eventually became the sole heiress of her grandfather, Earl Warwick "the Kingmaker". Her marriage is prematurely mentioned in *Rich. III.* iv, iii, when the usurping king sums up his misdeeds, but at this date, 1483, Margaret was only ten years old. She was married by Henry VII to Sir Richard Pole, a gentleman of Buckinghamshire, probably in 1491. Henry VIII, who described Margaret as the most saintly woman in England, was anxious to atone for the injustice done to her brother, Clarence (4), and in 1513 created her Countess of Salisbury. She became governess to princess Mary, but refusing to give up her ward's jewels to the new queen, Anne Bullen, was discharged from office. After Anne's fall she returned to court in 1536, but at that very time her son Reginald (Cardinal Pole) sent to the king his book, "*De Unitate Ecclesiastica*" which gave deep offence, and Henry determined to destroy the whole family in spite of the fact that both Margaret and her eldest son, Lord Montague, wrote a strong reproof to Reginald. Margaret's sons Henry and Geoffrey were arrested and executed and she herself imprisoned. A sweeping Act of Attainder was passed against all three in 1539 and the Countess of Salisbury herself was executed within the precincts of the Tower of London on the news of Sir John Neville's rising in Yorkshire.

*Rich. III.* II, ii ; III, v, 107 ; IV, ii, 55, iii, 36.

CLIFFORD (1). Thomas, eighth baron Clifford of Clifford Castle in Hereford, was born in 1414. He was the son of John, seventh lord, by his wife Elizabeth Percy, only daughter of "Hotspur". He succeeded his father who was killed while taking part under Henry V in the siege of Meaux, in 1422, and himself served under Bedford in France, where he rendered distinguished service. In 1452 Clifford was commanded to muster men and ships from the northern counties for the relief of Calais. On the outbreak of the Wars of the Roses he gave powerful support to Henry VI, in whose cause he fell at the first battle of St. Albans, leaving, by his wife Joanna, the

daughter of Thomas Lord Dacres of Gillesland, a son who is the "young Clifford" of II *Hen. VI* and the "Lord Clifford" of III *Hen. VI* (See below).

II *Hen. VI*, iv, viii; v, i, ii.

CLIFFORD (2), LORD; the "young Clifford of II *Hen. VI*, was John, ninth lord, son of the above. He was born in 1435 and when grown up became the relentless foe of the House of York. In 1458 he led his forces to London and demanded compensation for his father's death. After this had been granted he seems to have been reconciled to the house of York for a time and his name is found among those attainted, along with York, Warwick, and Salisbury after the battle of Bloreheath, at the parliament held at Coventry in 1459. Clifford was one of the Lancastrian leaders at the battle of Wakefield in the next year, where he is said to have murdered, in cold blood, the Earl of Rutland, the young son of York, whom he lighted upon after the battle. For this cruel deed he was ever after called "the Butcher"; a title to which Richard, afterwards Duke of Gloucester, alludes in III *Hen. VI*, ii, ii, 95, when he asks, "Are you there, butcher?" Clifford is also charged with having cut off the head of the dead Duke of York and presenting it, decked with a paper crown, to Margaret after her victory at Wakefield. He was present at the second battle of St. Albans in 1461 but was slain six weeks later, on the eve of the battle of Towton, at Ferrybridge, where he defeated the Yorkists under Lord Fitzwalter, but was in turn routed by Lord Fauconberg, uncle to the Earl of Warwick.

II *Hen. VI*, v, i, ii.

III *Hen. VI*, i, i, iii, iv; ii, i, 3 ff., ii, iii, 16, iv, v, 16, vi; v, vii, 7.

*Rich. III*, i, ii, 159.

CLIFTON, Sir John; was knight of the shire for Nottingham. He was one of the royal commanders at the battle of Shrewsbury in 1403 and fell during the course of the conflict.

I *Hen. IV*, v, iv, 46, 58.

CLOTHAIRE. There were four Clothaires of the Merovingian dynasty of the French kings which lasted from 418 to 752. The first of these was one of the sons of Clovis.

See genealogical table *sub* Canterbury (3).

*Hen. V*, i, ii, 67.

## CLOTHARIUS]

CLOTHARIUS is a Latinized form of Clothaire. In *Hen. VIII* the dramatist means kings of such a type, "kings of ancient days and stately fashion".

*Hen. VIII*, I, iii, 10.

COBHAM (1). Reginald Lord. See Rainold or Reginald.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 279.

COBHAM (2), Eleanor. See Gloucester (4).

*II Hen. VI*, I, ii, iii, iv; II, iii, iv.

COBHAM (3), LORD; was Sir Edward Broke who was summoned to parliament as Lord Cobham of Kent from 1445 to 1460. He was an ardent Yorkist and fought on that side at the first battle of St. Alban's in 1455 and commanded their left wing at Northampton in 1460. York is represented as sending his eldest son Edward to Lord Cobham bidding him rouse the men of Kent and come to his aid at Wakefield.

*III Hen. VI*, I, ii, 40.

COEUR DE LION. This was a title of Richard I, king of England, and was bestowed upon him from the circumstance related in Rastal's Chronicle as follows: "It is said that a lyon was put to Kynge Richard, beyng in prison, to have devoured him; and when the lyon was gapynge, he put his arme in his mouth, and pulled the lyon by the harte so hard that he slew the lyon, and therefore some say he is called Richarde Cure de Lyon; but some say he is called Cure de Lyon, because of his boldness and hardy stomake." Others say that he received the nickname of Lion-Heart because of his enormous strength and dauntless courage in battle.

*John*, I, i, 54ff.; II, i, 12.

*I Hen. VI*, III, ii, 83.

COLEVILLE, Sir John; This prisoner to Falstaff is perhaps Sir John Coleville who was governor of Wisbeach Castle and whose grandfather of the same name served with Edward III in his French wars. In *II Hen. IV*, IV, iii, 79 and 80, Prince John orders the immediate execution of this "most furious knight and valorous enemy", this "famous rebel". Hume says that his life was spared; if so, no doubt he was the same Sir John Colvyl Knight who was in the retinue of Henry V in his expedition to France in 1415.

*II Hen. IV*, IV, iii, 4ff.

**CONSTABLE OF FRANCE.** This was Charles de la Bret, a natural son of Charles le Mauvais, king of Navarre, and consequently half-brother to Henry V, as his stepmother, Joan of Navarre, was married to Henry IV in 1402. Constable de la Bret led the van at Agincourt, where he was seriously wounded and died the day afterwards.

*Hen. V*, II, iv; III, v, vii; IV, ii, iii, 84; v, viii, 97.

**CONSTANCE**, mother of Arthur (1). Her father was Conon le Petit, Duke of Brittany and Earl of Richmond in Yorkshire, while her mother was Margaret, daughter of Henry Earl of Huntingdon, the son of David I King of Scots. "Shakespeare has made Constance sublime in her sorrow and truly grand in her maternal affection for her pretty Arthur." Nevertheless, she was not a widow as she describes herself, as at that time she was married to her third husband, Guy Viscount of Thours. Constance died at Nantes in 1201, therefore long before the death of Queen Eleanor, although in the play both events are represented as taking place close together.

*John*, I, i, 32; II, i; III, i, iv; IV, ii, 122.

**COURT**, John de la; an alternative reading for Car, q.v.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, ii.

**COURTNEY** (1), Sir Edward; was the cousin, not the brother, of the bishop of Exeter, with whom he tried, in vain, to excite a rising in Devon and Cornwall against Richard III. On their failure, Sir Edward escaped to Brittany to share the exile of Richmond, with whom he returned to England. He was created Earl of Devonshire by Henry VII in 1485 and at the same time granted very large estates in that county. He was made a Knight of the Garter in 1490 and seven years later gave signal proof of his loyalty by resisting Perkin Warbeck's attack on Exeter. Courtney died in 1509 and was buried at Tiverton.

*Rich. III*, IV, iv, 502.

**COURTNEY** (2), Peter, bishop of Exeter. See Exeter (4).

*Rich. III*, IV, iv, 503.

**CRANMER**, Thomas; was born at Aslockton, Notts, in 1489 and educated at Jesus College, Cambridge. He was appointed

a fellow of Jesus but lost his post on his marriage. On the death of his wife he was re-elected to his fellowship and proceeded to his D.D. In 1528 the king moved to Waltham, where Gardiner and Fox were lodged in the house in which Cranmer was residing as a tutor. During a private conversation Cranmer is said to have suggested an appeal to the universities, English and foreign, as to the validity of the royal marriage. Fox reported the conversation to the king and Cranmer was summoned into his presence. After the interview Cranmer was commissioned to write a book embodying his opinions. He was appointed a chaplain to Henry VIII and appointed to obtain an answer to the question, "Do the laws of God allow a man to marry his brother's widow?" which was addressed to the universities. Before he returned with a favourable answer he was nominated to the see of Canterbury. Cranmer accepted the dignity with great reluctance and delayed his home-coming in the hope that the king might change his mind. At his consecration he made a protest repudiating any obedience to the pope which should bind him to anything contrary to the king's wishes, or prevent him reforming anything that he found amiss in the Church of England. As Primate of All England, he now pronounced the marriage of Katherine null and void at Dunstable in 1533; this being undoubtedly his inalienable right as constituting from time immemorial the supreme ecclesiastical court; for the archbishops of Canterbury governed the Church of England, not as delegates for a foreign power, but by their own authority. This continued down to 1440, when a licence was granted to John Kemp, archbishop of York, to assume the rank of cardinal in England, in consequence of which he took precedence of the archbishop of Canterbury. This papal appointment of a *legate a latere*, who was sometime though not always the primate, continued until 1534.

In 1534 Cranmer took steps for the production of an authorized English Bible and after several previous attempts, the "Great Bible" was ordered to be set up in all parish churches in 1540, Cranmer himself defending the translation against the criticisms of Gardiner. He had previously officiated at the magnificent coronation of Anne Bullen and baptized the princess Elizabeth. On the death of Henry VIII, the archbishop was appointed one of the council of regency to govern the realm during the minority of Edward VI. He now con-

tinued his reforming work and was largely instrumental in the drawing up of the First and Second Books of Common Prayer. In 1552 he promulgated the 42 (afterwards reduced to 39) articles of religion and in the next year, joined, against his wish, in signing the will of Edward VI excluding Mary from the throne. On the accession of Mary he was deprived of his see and committed to the Tower. In 1555 he was formally cited to appear before the pope but refused to acknowledge his jurisdiction. Being condemned for heresy by Reginald Pole, the newly appointed archbishop of Canterbury, Cranmer was publicly degraded from the rank of archbishop, through all the subordinate offices, to the ranks of a layman and taken back to prison, whence he only came forth to be burnt at the stake in Oxford, 1556. Of Cranmer's personal appearance Foxe writes that he was "of stature mean, of complexion pure and somewhat sanguine, having no hair on his head at the time of his death [owing to it having been shaved at the time of his deposition] but a long beard, white and thick. He was of the age of 65 [should be 67] when he was burnt; and yet, being a man sore broken in studies all his time never used any spectacles."

*Hen. VIII*, II, iv, 238; III, ii, 63ff.; IV, i, 107,  
v, i, ii, iii, v.

CROMER, Sir James; Shakespeare following Hall calls the fellow victim of Lord Say, Sir James Cromer; and speaks of him as his son-in-law. Dugdale says that Lord Say's wife's father, Sir William Cromer, was Sheriff of Kent in the year of Cade's rebellion and being taken prisoner by the rebels, was committed to the Fleet, whence he was afterwards taken out to join Lord Say, who had been dragged out of the Tower; both being beheaded by the rebels and their heads set up on London Bridge. Hasted and others say that Alexander Iden married the widow of his predecessor, who could not be the William Cromer above. Fuller states that the son-in-law of Lord Say was William Cromer of Tunstall in Kent, who was Sheriff in 1445, while his brother Henry was Sheriff in 1450, the year of Cade's rebellion. Iden then was the immediate successor of Henry, not of William Cromer.

II *Hen. VI*, IV, vii, 118.

CROMWELL, Thomas, born in 1490, was the son of a blacksmith at Putney. Driven from home by some misconduct in his early manhood, he became a trooper in the army of Constable Bourbon and was present at the sacking of Rome in 1527. He afterwards settled down in Antwerp and amassed money as a merchant. He returned to England a prosperous man, and first became conspicuous as a moneylender, then as a lawyer. While abroad he had rendered an essential service to Sir John Russell, who introduced him to Wolsey. Being one of the commissioners appointed by Wolsey in 1525 to enquire into the state of the smaller monasteries, he showed great harshness in performing his duties. On Wolsey's fall, Cromwell loyally pleaded his cause, but after his death transferred his services to the king and soon rose high in the royal favour. A strong, resolute, greedy self-seeker, his avowed principle of conduct was to follow the inclination of his master, so that he was just the sort of tool that Henry desired. During an interview with the king he suggested that Henry need not trouble himself about the decision of the pope in any way, but should cut the knot of the divorce question by declaring himself the head of the Church of England. The king acted upon his advice and in 1533 appointed him Chancellor of the Exchequer and two years later Vicar-general in Spirituals, i.e. in ecclesiastical affairs; so that he now held in his hands all matters both secular and spiritual. In his capacity of Vicar-general, Cromwell had the chief hand in the dissolution of the monasteries and the diverting of their revenues into Henry's pocket, for which he earned the title the "Hammer of the Monks". In 1536 he was created Lord Cromwell of Oakham and in 1539 Earl of Essex. After the death of Jane Seymour, Cromwell arranged for the king's marriage with Anne of Cleves, one of the protestant princesses of Germany. But Henry found her coarse, ugly, and illiterate, and disliked her strongly from the first. The full force of his wrath fell upon Cromwell and he was hurriedly attainted of treason by Act of Parliament, condemned without a trial, and executed on Tower Hill in 1540. The charges of treason were ridiculous, for he had laboured for Henry only too well, but he had now served his master's purpose and was ruthlessly sacrificed by the tyrant whose purse he had filled.

DAUPHIN was an ancient feudal title in France, borne only by the counts of Vienne, the dauphins of Auvergne, and from 1364 by the eldest son of the kings of France. The origin of this curious title is obscure and has been the subject of much controversy. The title became attached to the royal house as follows: Humbert II, the last independent dauphin, sold his domains to Philip of Valois in 1349, partly on condition that ever after the king's eldest son should hold the province with the arms and title of Dauphin. The armorial device of the dolphin was assumed from the name of the province in the south of France and not vice versa.

(1). It is too early to assign the title of Dauphin to the eldest son of the French monarch at the time of the play of King John but Shakespeare means Lewis, afterwards king as Lewis VIII, the eldest son of Philip Augustus. He was born in Paris in 1187 and is described as "short, thin, pale-faced, with studious tastes, cold and placid temper, sober and chaste in his life. He left the reputation of a saint, but was also a warrior prince". In 1214, while his father was winning the victory of Bouvines, Lewis held King John in check; while in the next year he received a request from a group of English barons to "pluck them out of the hand of the tyrant". A party of 7,000 French knights was at once sent to their aid and, after the arrival of 24 hostages, Lewis himself invaded England in spite of the prohibition of the papal legate. He claimed the crown in right of his wife, maintaining that John had forfeited it by the murder of his nephew Arthur and that the English barons had the right to appoint to the vacant throne. His second plea lost its plausibility on the death of John and the accession of Henry III in 1216. Gaulo, the papal legate, excommunicated the French invading troops and the English rebels, while the young king found an able defender in William Marshall Earl of Pembroke. After the "Fair of Lincoln", in which he was hopelessly defeated, Lewis was compelled to return home. He succeeded his father in 1223 and surrounded himself by the counsellors chosen by his father and continued his policy. He waged war on the Plantagenets, taking from them Poitou and Saintonge in 1224 and died in 1226. He had married in 1200 Blanch of Castile, the niece of King John, and was succeeded by his son Lewis IX.

*John*, II, i; III, i, iv; IV, ii, 130, iii, 16f.; V, i, 32f.,  
ii, iii, 10, iv, 15f., v, vii, 59f.



(2). During the course of the play of *Henry V* there were three dauphins whom Shakespeare has mingled into one. At the beginning of the play Lewis, the eldest son of Charles VI was dauphin and he it is whom Shakespeare represents as a character in the play. He died in 1415, shortly after the battle of Agincourt at which he is indicated as present.

“ One interesting slip from Holinshed is in representing the Dauphin as present at Agincourt. Probably Shakespeare felt that as Henry V represented the solid qualities of a true king, and the Dauphin the mere show and glitter of royalty without the substance, it would add to the dramatic effect that both should meet on the great day of trial, the one to issue from it with glory, the other in reprobation and disgrace ” (Moore Smith). Lewis was survived little more than a year by his next brother Jean, to whom the title devolved. On the death of Jean in 1416, the title passed to a still younger brother, Charles, afterwards Charles VII.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 221f. ; II, iv ; III, iii, 45, v, vii.

(8). Charles. See France, King of ; (3).

I *Hen. VI*, I, i, 92ff., ii, iv, 101, v, vi ; II, i, ii, 19f. ;  
III, ii, iii ; IV, ii, 21f., iii, 2f., vi, 10, vii ; v, ii,  
iii, 37, iv.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, 108 ; II, ii, 151.

DAVY GAM. See Gam.

*Hen. V*, IV, viii, 109.

DENNY, Sir Anthony ; born in 1500, was the second son of Sir Edmund Denny, Baron of the Exchequer in the reign of Henry VII. Sir Anthony was one of the companions of Henry VIII's younger days and long remained favourite of that king. He married Joan, daughter of Sir Philip Champernon of Modbury, Devonshire, was knighted in 1541 at Boulogne ; and made a member of the Privy Council. It was he who, when all others held back in fear, had the honesty and courage to warn Henry of the approach of death, and to exhort him to prepare for it. Denny was appointed one of the executors of the king's will and named as one of the Council of Regency during the minority of Edward VI. He was a zealous promoter of the Reformation. Ascham says that his whole time and care were occupied with religion, learning, and the affairs of state. He died in 1549 and was buried at Cheshunt.

*Hen. VIII*, v, i.

DERBY, Earl of; (1). One of the titles of Bolingbroke, afterwards Henry IV.

*Rich. II.*, I, iii, 35.

DERBY, Earl of; (2). See Stanley (3).

Note from Dyce on the variation of the names Derby and Stanley in the text of *Richard III.* "To suppose that Shakespeare would have called the same person 'Derby' in some places of the play and 'Stanley' in other places, appears to me a most extravagant idea; nor have I any doubt that the confusion of the names was occasioned by the conflicting texts of the tragedy." The Globe Edition of 1904 gives the following variations.

In I, iii, stage direction "Derby".

II, i, ii, stage direction "Derby".

III, ii, stage direction "Lord Stanley" for the first time.

III, iv, stage direction and text "Derby". But Dyce gives "Derby" stage direction and "Stanley" in the text.

IV, i, ii, iv, stage direction and text, "Lord Stanley".

IV, v, stage direction and text, "Derby".

v, ii, "our father Stanley" in the text.

v, iii, stage direction "Derby" but "Stanley" at lines 34, 290, and 342.

v, v, stage direction and text, "Derby".

The bestowal of the title "Derby" on Sir Thomas Stanley before the date of the battle of Bosworth is premature as he was not created "Earl of Derby" until after the accession of Richmond as Henry VII.

DIGHTON, John; one of the murderers of the princes in the Tower, was the groom of Sir James Tyrrel. He is called by Hall, "a bigge, broade, square, and strong knave". Dighton was rewarded by being made bailiff of Aiton in Staffordshire. He was arrested along with his master, and perished on the scaffold in the reign of Henry VIII.

*Rich. III.*, IV, iii, 4ff.

DONALBAIN, or Donald Bain, was the second son of Duncan I, King of Scots. On the death of his father he fled to the Hebrides, where he appears to have lived during the whole of the reign of Macbeth, nor does he appear to have visited his

## DORSET]

brother Malcolm at any period of his reign. On the death of Malcolm he hurried to Scotland with a powerful armament which he had gathered in the Western Isles with the aid of Magnus Barefoot, King of Norway, and took possession of the throne, apparently without any opposition. According to the Celtic law of succession Donalbain, as the eldest male of the royal line, was the heir to the crown and his pretensions were supported by a powerful party among the Scottish nobles and especially the Celts. The children of Malcolm were hastily conveyed to England for safety. Scottish hatred of the influence of Margaret aided Donalbain who drove the English out of the kingdom. His first act was to issue an edict banishing all foreigners from the Scottish court. This was an ignorant and foolish attempt to arrest the progress of civilization but is easily accounted for by the king's long residence among uncivilized islanders. He was driven out by his nephew Duncan, supported by a numerous force of English and Normans, in 1094, but Duncan was slain by the Celts in the same year and Donalbain restored. The edict for the expulsion of the foreigners was now rigorously enforced. In 1097 he was defeated, captured, blinded, and deposed by Malcolm's son Eadgar, who now ruled for ten years. Donalbain died at Roscobie, in Forfarshire.

*Macb.* I, ii, iv, vi ; II, ii, 20, iii, iv, 25 ; III, vi, 9 ; v, iii, 7.

DORSET (1), Marquis of. This was Thomas Grey, born 1451, the elder son of Sir John Grey by Elizabeth Woodville, afterwards queen of Edward IV. He succeeded his father, as ninth Lord Ferrers of Groby, in 1461 and was created Earl of Huntingdon by his step-father in 1471. In the same year he fought for Edward IV at Tewkesbury and was one of those who took part in the murder of the unfortunate Prince Edward. He became Lord Harrington and Bonville by right of his wife in 1475. (See III *Hen.* VI, iv, i, 56-7, where Clarence reproaches the king for promoting this marriage.) In the same year he was created first Marquis of Dorset. When Richard III obtained the throne, Dorset took sanctuary but after a little while took up arms in Yorkshire. In 1483 a reward was offered for his capture. Next year he took part in Buckingham's rising and proclaimed Richmond in Exeter. When the rising failed he joined Richmond in Brittany but did not accompany him on his expedition to England as, on the intercession of his

mother, he had set out to be reconciled to Richard in 1485 and Richmond distrusted him. After his victory at Bosworth and accession to the throne Henry recalled him, his attainder was reversed, and his honours restored. In 1487, on Simnel's insurrection breaking out, he fell under suspicion and was for a time committed to the Tower; but after the battle of Stoke he was released and restored to full favour. In 1492 he took part in the expedition to assist the Emperor Maximilian against the French, while five years later he held a command in the royal forces sent to suppress the Cornish insurrection. Dorset died in 1501 and was buried in the collegiate church of Astley, Warwickshire. He was an early patron of Wolsey, under whose charge he placed three of his sons at Magdalen College School, Oxford, and whom he presented to the living of Limington in Somersetshire.

*Rich. III.* I, iii; II, i; IV, i, ii, 46f., iv, 311f.

DORSET (2), Marquis of. This was Henry Grey, eldest son of Thomas, second Marquis, and grandson of the above. He succeeded to the title in 1530 and owed his position at court to his rank and wealth alone. With the consent of Henry VIII he repudiated his first wife, the daughter of Lord Arundel, to marry in 1533-4 Frances, elder daughter of Charles Brandon, Duke of Suffolk, by Mary Tudor, the younger sister of the king. Dorset took a prominent part in the court ceremonies of the day and carried the sceptre at the coronation of Anne Bullen in 1533; while both he and his mother were present at the christening of the Princess Elizabeth. He was one of the chief mourners at the funeral of Henry VIII. During the minority of Edward VI he took a prominent part in the government and, being a firm protestant, actively championed the cause of the reformation. But though he was very ambitious he was weak in character, being always under the influence of a stronger personality. At first he joined Somerset and left his daughter, the Lady Jane, with the young king in the hope that he would marry her. On the fall of Somerset in 1548 Dorset attached himself to John Dudley, Earl of Warwick, who became the Protector in the next year. By the death from fever of his two nephews Henry and Charles Brandon in 1551 he became Duke of Suffolk by right of his wife, the male line being extinct, and was elevated to that dignity at the same time that Dudley was created Duke of

## DORSET ]

Northumberland. Grey had agreed to the arrest of Somerset and was one of the judges at his trial and condemnation. He now became a tool in the hands of Northumberland and readily agreed to his scheme for marrying his daughter Jane to Lord Guildford Dudley and proclaiming her queen. On the failure of this plan Suffolk's only care was to save his own head, and he proclaimed Mary at the Tower after despoiling his own daughter of the insignia of royalty. Only the intercession of his wife, who was Mary's friend and godmother, saved him and he was allowed to retire to his private house at Sheen. On the rebellion of Sir Thomas Wyatt against the proposed match between Mary and Philip of Spain in 1554, Suffolk joined the rising and proclaimed his daughter Jane at Leicester. But the insurrection failed and Suffolk fled into hiding in the cottage of a game-keeper on his estate at Astley Cooper, Warwickshire. The keeper, whose name was Underwood, betrayed him and he was taken to the Tower. Thence he was brought forth and arraigned for high treason before the Earl of Arundel, the brother of his first wife. He was condemned and executed on Tower Hill in 1554. He was a liberal patron of learned men, among others of Bullinger, while he had some learning himself. Holinshed speaks of his gentleness and truthfulness.

*Hen. VIII, iv, i.*

DORSET (3), Marchioness or Lady Marquess of; was Margaret, daughter of Robert Wotton of Broughton, Kent, and mother of Dorset. She was one of the godmothers of the Princess Elizabeth and, according to Shakespeare, presented her with three gilt bowls, pounced (i.e. perforated), with covers.

*Hen. VIII, v, iii, 170, v.*

DOUGLAS (1). Archibald, fourth Earl of Douglas and first Duke of Touraine, the second son of the third earl, was born in 1369. In 1390 he married Margaret Stewart, daughter of Robert III, king of Scotland. He succeeded to his father's title and vast estates in 1400 and early in the following year, as Warden of the Scottish Marches, carried a foray right to the gates of Berwick. On the death of the heir-apparent, Douglas allied himself with the Duke of Albany, then forming designs upon the crown. In 1402 he was taken prisoner along with his

eldest son and other knights at Homildon Hill by the Scottish Earl of March and Hotspur. Douglas was wounded in five places besides losing an eye in the battle. But on the revolt of Hotspur against Henry IV Douglas was liberated and joined his captor at Shrewsbury, where he was again wounded and taken prisoner by the royal army. His personal prowess on this field is celebrated by both English and Scottish writers. Drayton compares him to Mars and Shakespeare preserves the tradition that he sought to encounter Henry himself. French says, "out of respect for his courage he was released without ransom," but Mackay says that he was not released until 1408, after the payment of a large ransom. In 1412 he proceeded to Paris and concluded a treaty with John Duke of Burgundy; but returned home to take part in the negotiations for the release of James I from his English captivity. He unsuccessfully besieged Roxburgh in 1417 and burnt Alnwick in 1420. French says that he was present at the defeat of Clarence at Beaugé in 1421, but Mackay says that it was his eldest son Archibald Lord of Wigtown who was there, along with John Earl of Buchan, while Douglas brought out reinforcements in 1423, whereupon he was created Duke of Touraine by Charles VII of France. Soon afterwards he was defeated and slain by the Duke of Bedford at the battle of Verneuil and was buried at Tours. He was a brave soldier but an unfortunate commander, losing almost every engagement in which he took part. "Ambition is the key to his character. He was ready to fight on the side of France or England, for Henry IV or for Hotspur, for any cause he thought for the advantage of his house. Personal courage, a quality common in that age, he possessed; but when Hume of Godscroft urges that his 'wariness and circumspection may sufficiently appear to the attentive and judicious reader,' he had in view the family and not the national verdict" (Mackay).

I *Hen. IV*, I, i, 67f., iii, 296; II, iii, 28, iv, 377f.;

III, ii, 107ff.; IV, i, iii, iv, 22; V, i, 116, ii, iii,

iv, v, 17ff.

II *Hen. IV*, Ind. 31; I, i, 17ff.

DOUGLAS (2). Archibald, fifth Earl of Douglas and second Duke of Touraine, eldest son of the above, was born in 1391. In 1421 he fought in aid of Charles VI of France at Beaugé and was rewarded with a grant of the county of Longueville.

## DUNCAN]

Ill health caused his return home and thus he was absent from Verneuil where his father, his brother-in-law Buchan (the son of the regent Albany) and his brother James lost their lives. Douglas was one of the ambassadors appointed to conduct James I home. One of the first acts of the new king was to arrest Murdock Duke of Albany, along with Douglas, though the latter was released shortly afterwards. Douglas took no part in the assassination of James I and in 1437 was appointed one of the council of regency. In the next year he was appointed Lieutenant-General of the Kingdom and by virtue of his office summoned the parliament which met at Edinburgh in November of that year. In June of the following year he died of fever at Restalrig, near Edinburgh. Douglas seems to have been less vigorous than his father, probably owing to being enfeebled by the hardships of the French wars.

I *Hen. IV*, 1, iii, 261.

DUNCAN I, "The Meek," king of Scotland, was the grandson of Malcolm II, whom he succeeded in 1033. His mother was Bethoc, or Beatrice, daughter of Malcolm, while his father was Crinan or Cronon, lay abbot of Dunkeld. He married a daughter or sister of the warlike Siward Earl of Northumbria. During his grandfather's lifetime he bore the title *rex Cumbriorum*, i.e. king of the Strathclyde Welsh, and as Lothian was ceded to Malcolm in 1018 Mr. Skene considers it probable that Duncan was the ruler of all the territory south of the Forth and Clyde, though his name is not mentioned along with those of his grandfather and Macbeth, when those princes submitted to Canute in 1031. Malcolm appears to have cleared the way for the accession of his grandson by the murder of "Boete, son of Cuiaed," the rightful heir according to the law of tanistry, and next year Duncan succeeded without opposition. According to Fordun, Duncan's rule was very peaceful, but no reliance can be placed upon the account that he gives of the king's yearly progress through the realm to restrain the injustice of his lords. In the northern part of Scotland, the Orkneys, Caithness, Sutherland, and the Hebrides, Thorfinn, King Malcolm's grandson and Duncan's cousin, ruled; while between the two lay Moray with its Celtic mormaer, Macbeth, who seems to have succeeded in 1029. Duncan granted his cousin's domains to his nephew Moddan, who seems to have gone north to make good his claim, but was

defeated by Thorfinn. When Duncan marched north to his aid he also was defeated near the Moray Firth in 1040. Marianus Scotus says he was slain by Macbeth, and according to Mr. Skene, Macbeth, after wavering in his allegiance to Duncan, finally threw in his fortunes with Thorfinn and ultimately divided the realm with his ally. A twelfth-century tradition preserved through Fordun says that Duncan was killed at Bothngouane, or Bothgownan, near the Moray Firth, in 1040.

It is not historically true that Macbeth murdered Duncan in his own castle and while his guest. As indicated above he attacked and slew him in fair fight. The story in Holinshed upon which Shakespeare based his play is that of the murder of an earlier King Duff. He was murdered in 972 by four servants of Donwald, captain of the castle of Forres, who slew the king's chamberlains whilst in a state of drunken stupor that the blame might be attached to them. According to the old chroniclers this was done at the instigation of his wife, who is styled "very ambitious, burning in unquenchable desire to bear the name of queen".

For genealogical table see *sub* Macbeth.

*Macb.*, I, ii, iv, v, 40f., vi, vii, 16f.; II, i, 63, iii, 117,  
iv, 14f.; III, i, 66, ii, 22, iv, 63, vi, 3ff.

#### EDMUND

(1) of Langley. See York (2).

*Rich. II.*, I, ii, 62.  
II *Hen. VI.*, II, ii, 15f.

(2) Mortimer. See Mortimer (1).

II *Hen. VI.*, II, ii, 36f.; IV, ii, 144.

(3) Mortimer. See Mortimer (3).

I *Hen. IV.*, I, iii, 156.

(4) Mortimer. See Mortimer (4).

I *Hen. VI.*, II, v, 7.  
II *Hen. VI.*, II, ii, 38f.

(5) Beaufort. See Somerset (2).

II *Hen. VI.*, I, ii, 29; IV, ix, 39.

EDWARD THE CONFESSOR, so called on account of his reputation for piety, though "his piety was not of that sort which is associated with active usefulness," was the son of Ethelred the Unready and Emma of Normandy. On the recognition of



### EDWARD III]

Sweyn, king of Norway, as king of England in 1018, Edward was taken by his parents to the court of Richard, Duke of Normandy, his mother's father. Here he remained until recalled by Hardicanute in 1041, whom he succeeded in the next year. At first he was under the influence of the great Earl Godwin, whose daughter Edith he married in 1045. But his tastes were entirely Norman and his advancement of foreigners led to quarrels with his English nobles. After several skirmishes with the foreign favourites of the king Godwin was outlawed and fled to Flanders in 1051. But the people recognized that Godwin represented the cause of national independence and when he returned in the next year he was received with open arms; the foreigners fled, and Godwin was restored to his old position, which he retained until his death, when he was succeeded by his son Harold. Edward died in 1066. "The virtues of Edward were monkish rather than kingly. In the qualities of a ruler he was conspicuously deficient; always depending on others, he ever inclined to the unworthier master. But the charm of his character for the monkish biographer, and the natural tendency to glorify the days before the Norman oppression began, combined to cast about his figure a halo which had not attached to it in life" (Phillips).

All the kings before the time of the Commonwealth were crowned with the crown of Edward the Confessor and the queens with the crown of Queen Edith. The crown of Edward the Confessor was a narrow circlet of gold from which rose alternately four crosses and four fleurs-de-lys. At the time of the coronation of Henry IV there were added two arches which sprang from the crosses and at their crossing supported an orb and a cross.

*Macb.*, III, vi, 27.  
*Hen. VIII*, IV, i, 88.

EDWARD III, king of England, born at Windsor in 1312, was the eldest son of Edward II by Isabella, daughter of Philip IV of France. He was created Earl of Chester in 1320, Duke of Aquitaine in 1328, proclaimed guardian of the kingdom in the name of his father in 1326, and chosen king in 1327. For four years he was merely the figure-head of the rule of his mother and Roger Mortimer. He married Philippa of Hainault

in 1328 and claimed the throne of France in the same year but was set aside for Philip of Valois. Two years later he declared his independence, executed Mortimer, and placed the queen-mother in honourable confinement. In 1332 he invited Flemish weavers to come to England and teach the manufacture of fine cloth, and secured the recognition of Edward Baliol as King of Scots. In the next year he inflicted a defeat upon the Scots at Halidon Hill to replace Balliol on the throne from which he had been driven. In 1340 Edward assumed the title of King of France and invaded that country, where in 1346 the English gained an overwhelming victory at Crécy, afterwards capturing Calais. At the treaty of Bretigny in 1360 Edward renounced all claims to the French crown in return for the grant of the full sovereignty of Aquitaine, Guisnes, Ponthieu, and Calais. Two years later he erected Gascony and Aquitaine into a principality which he conferred on his eldest son, the Prince of Wales. In the same year he enacted that English should be used in the law courts in England instead of French, as had been the custom from the Norman Conquest. Towards the end of his reign he gave himself up to the unworthy influence of Alice Perrers. His later years were much embittered by the quarrels between the Commons and his son, John of Lancaster; the failure of the French war; and the death of his eldest son. He died at Sheen in the 65th year of his age in 1377, deserted by his mistress and courtiers and attended only by a single priest who stayed with him out of compassion. Edward was buried in Westminster Abbey by the side of his Queen Philippa.

“ In person Edward was graceful; his manners were courtly and his voice winning. He was strong and active, loved the practice of knightly exercises and, above all, war itself. Although according to our modern notions his ambition is to be reckoned a grave defect in his character, it seemed in his day a knightly quality. While he was not wantonly cruel he was hard-hearted; his private life was immoral, and his old age was dishonoured by indulgence in a shameful passion. His commercial policy was enlightened and won for him the title of ‘father of English commerce’. As a leader in war Edward could order a battle and inspire his army with his own confidence, but he could not plan a campaign; he was rash and left too much to chance. During the first part of his reign he paid much attention to naval administration, he

## EDWARD (BLACK PRINCE)]

successfully asserted the maritime supremacy of the country, and was entitled by parliament 'the king of the sea'' (Hunt).

*Rich. II*, I, ii, 11f. ; II, i, 121ff.

*II Hen. IV*, iv, iv, 128.

*Hen. V*, I, i, 89 ; II, iv, 93.

*I Hen. VI*, I, ii, 31 ; II, iv, 84, v, 66, 76.

*II Hen. VI*, I, ii, 10, 20, 46.

EDWARD THE BLACK PRINCE, born at Woodstock in 1330, was the eldest son of Edward III and Philippa of Hainault. In 1343 he was created Prince of Wales and two years later was knighted by his father at La Hogue. In 1346 he commanded the van of the English army at Crécy, his father intentionally leaving him to win the battle. It is commonly said that he received his name of Black Prince from the black armour which he wore on that occasion. He took part in the capture of Calais in 1347, was appointed the king's lieutenant in Gascony, and in 1356 routed the French at Poitiers, taking their king, John, prisoner. He negotiated the treaty of Bretigny in 1360, was created Prince of Aquitaine and Gascony in 1362, and undertook an expedition to Spain for the restoration of Pedro the Cruel to the throne of Castile in 1366. But he returned ruined in health and fortunes and, though he made some show of resistance to the French advance on the conquered province, he retired to England in 1372. Four years later he led the Commons in their attack on the administration of his brother, John of Lancaster, but his strength was now rapidly failing and he died before his father in 1376, from dysentery contracted in Spain, and was buried in Canterbury Cathedral. He married Joan, "the Fair Maid of Kent," widow of Thomas Holland, Earl of Kent, and by her had two sons, Edward, who died young, and Richard, who succeeded his grandfather as Richard II.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 124.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 105 ; II, iv, 56 ; IV, vii, 97.

*I Hen. VI*, II, v, 64.

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 11, 18.

EDWARD IV, king of England, son of Richard Duke of York and Cicely Neville, was born at Rouen in 1442. He became Earl of March and was attainted as a Yorkist in 1459. In

1460 he returned from Calais with the Yorkist earls, Warwick and Salisbury, and assisted in the defeat of the forces of Henry VI at Northampton. The king fell into their hands and they governed in his name, while Edward at this time swore fealty to him. After the defeat and death of his father at Wakefield, Edward gathered forces; defeated Queen Margaret at Mortimer's Cross; proceeded to London, and was proclaimed king in 1461. In the same year he utterly defeated the Lancastrians at Towton and on his return was crowned king, upon which occasion he created his brothers George, Duke of Clarence, and Richard, Duke of Gloucester. A parliament which met at the end of the year declared Henry VI and all his adherents traitors. Although a match with Bona of Savoy was in course of negotiation, he privately married Elizabeth Woodville in 1464. Four years later his sister Margaret married Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy. Edward's position was threatened by the intrigues of Warwick, who was offended at his rejection of the French marriage and was, with Clarence, plotting his overthrow. In 1469 he was defeated at Edgecote by Warbeck and Clarence and committed to the custody of George Neville, archbishop of York. But he soon escaped, defeated the rebels at Lose Coat Field, near Stamford, while Warwick and Clarence fled to France, where they were reconciled to Queen Margaret. In 1470 Edward was compelled to seek refuge in Holland after a joint attack by Warwick, Clarence and Queen Margaret. But in the next year he was enabled to return to England by the help of the Duke of Burgundy, was reconciled to Clarence; took King Henry prisoner; slew Warwick at Barnet; captured Margaret at Tewkesbury, slaying her son immediately after the battle. He now quelled the rising under the Bastard Falconbridge, compelled him to surrender Sandwich and captured the navy he had brought from Calais. Edward was now firmly seated on the throne and illegally raised money by benevolences for the invasion of France in 1474. This actually took place in 1475, but he was beguiled by the astuteness of Louis XI into deserting his ally, Burgundy, and signing a seven years' treaty with France at Picquigny. In 1478 Edward imprisoned and put to death his brother Clarence, who had lately aspired to the hand of Mary of Burgundy. He died in 1483, as French writers assert, of mortification at the treaty of Arras, by which the dauphin married Mary of Burgundy instead of Edward's

own daughter, with whom a marriage had been arranged. On his deathbed he tried to arrange peace between his brother Gloucester's adherents and his wife's relations. Comines speaks of Edward IV as the most handsome prince he ever saw and says he was no less than 6ft. 3in. in height. His manners were pleasant and these, together with his reputation as a warrior, rendered him very popular. Careless and self-indulgent, he allowed dangers to accumulate, but when it came to action he was firm and decisive. His familiarity with the wives of London citizens was the subject of much comment and so were his exactions, whether in the shape of parliamentary taxation, benevolences, or debasement of the coinage; having recourse to this last device in 1464. He was survived by two sons and five daughters.

"Tall, stout, handsome, and skilled in all manly feats, Edward was as well-gifted in mind as he was in body. Brave, quick, with all the powers of a good general, he had also the powers of a good captain—an open hand, a fair tongue, a ready ear, a cool brain. He loved his children, was kind to his servants, did not forget his friends, and took pains to be courteous to all he met, rich or poor. But he was thoroughly selfish, over-fond of pleasure, over-hasty in his suspicions, over-greedy of wealth, and too lazy to look forward in his plans. The most kingly quality he had was his unflinching justice and zeal for fair law" (York Powell).

*III Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, iv, 11, 74; II, i, ii, iii, v, 129, vi; III, i, 81, ii, iii, 45ff.; iv, i, ii, 10ff., iii, iv, 8ff., vi, 2ff., vii, viii; v, i, ii, iii, iv, 25f., v, vi, 24ff., vii.

*Rich. III*, I, i, 36ff., ii, 92ff., iii, 138f., iv, 68ff.; II, i, ii, 40ff., iii, 7; III, iv, 72, v, 75f., vii, 4f.; iv, iii, 88f., iv, 63ff.; v, i, 3f., iii, 158.

EDWARD V, king of England, eldest son of Edward IV by his queen, Elizabeth Woodville, was born in the Sanctuary at Westminster at the time when his father was driven out of the kingdom in 1470. On his father's recovery of the throne he was created Prince of Wales in 1471, two months after the slaughter of Edward Plantagenet at Tewkesbury. He was entrusted by his father to a board of control of which his uncles, Clarence and Gloucester, and his maternal uncle, Earl Rivers, were chief members. Edward succeeded to the throne

in 1483 at the age of thirteen, and his short reign of two months was merely a struggle for power between the Woodvilles and Gloucester. He was at Ludlow on the death of his father and was met on the way to London by Gloucester, who seized Earl Rivers and Lord Richard Grey at Pomfret, and afterwards conducted his nephew to the Tower, where he soon afterwards sent his younger brother Richard Duke of York to join him. The boy king was deposed by an assembly of Lords and Commons on the plea of the invalidity of his mother's marriage. Shortly afterwards he was murdered in the Tower, along with his brother, by order of his uncle Richard, who usurped the crown. The young princes are said to have been smothered with their pillows by Dighton and Forrest and their bodies buried at the foot of a staircase. There is great probability that the skeletons, found at the foot of a staircase in the White Tower in the reign of Charles II, were those of the two princes. The "Chronicle of the Grey Friars of London," recording the first year of Richard III, mentions their death in this simple way: "And the two sons of King Edward were put to silence." The princes' own relations and many of the great nobles did not believe that they were dead. Many asserted that they had escaped from the Tower and were in hiding. This widespread belief was one of the causes of two attempts on the part of pretenders in the reign of Henry VII.

III *Hen. VI*, v, vii.

*Rich. III*, II, ii, 100; III, i, vii, 177, 191; IV, ii, 10, 14, 16, iv, 19, 21, 42, 64; v, iii.

EDWARD (1), Plantagenet, Prince of Wales, was the only son of Henry VI and Margaret of Anjou. This unfortunate prince was born in 1453. He possessed much of his mother's spirit and beauty and was regarded as a prince of great promise. The poet's description of the young prince's personal merits in *Rich. III*, I, ii, agrees with the account given by the historians. He was taken by his mother to Harlech Castle after the Lancastrian defeat at Northampton in 1460 and was disinherited by parliament in that year, York being declared heir to the throne. Edward was present at the second battle of St. Albans in 1461, after which he was knighted by his father, being then eight years old. But the Duke of York's son was proclaimed king as Edward IV in that year and after the Lancastrian defeat at Towton, Margaret fled to Scotland,

## EDWARD]

whence she sailed to France in 1462, taking her son with her. Through the aid of Louis XI of France Margaret landed in Scotland in 1462, whence she invaded England and captured some castles in Northumberland; but on the approach of Edward IV she again fled towards Scotland. Then it was that while wandering in the forest, Margaret and her son were attacked by robbers who stripped them of all their jewels and afterwards fought among themselves for the booty. Margaret gave her son to one of the brigands saying, "Here my friend, save the son of your king." The conclusion of the story is thus related by the chronicler: "The brigand took him with very goodwill, and they departed, so that shortly afterwards they came by sea to Sluys." They remained in France until the defection of Warwick in 1470. On Margaret's reconciliation to him, the young prince was betrothed to Warwick's younger daughter, Anne. Margaret and her son joined Warwick in his attack on England and were defeated at Tewkesbury, where Edward fell into the hands of his enemies. Shakespeare follows Hall in his account of Edward's death, according to which King Edward IV struck him with his gauntlet and Gloucester, Clarence, Dorset, and Hastings stabbed him to death. But George Bucke, whose father, Sir John, fought for Richard III at Bosworth, declares that Gloucester did not strike the prince, who had fled after the battle and was captured by Sir Richard Croft and given up to the king on promise of his life being spared in accordance with the terms of the royal proclamation issued for his apprehension. This is referred to in III *Hen.* VI, v, v, 10. With the death of Edward Plantagenet in 1471 ended the last legitimate male of the House of Lancaster. He was buried in Tewkesbury Abbey.

III *Hen.* VI, I, i; II, ii; III, iii; IV, i, 117, vi, 60;  
v, iv, v.

*Rich.* III, I, ii, 10, 118, 182, 241, 250, iii, 120, 192,  
199; IV, iv, 21, 40, 68, 67; v, i, 4, iii.

EDWARD (2), Duke of York. See Aumerle.

*Hen.* V, IV, viii, 108.

EDWARD (8), Duke of York, afterwards Edward IV, *q.v.*  
III *Hen.* VI, III, iii, 27.

**EDWARD (4), Courtney.** See Courtney (1).  
*Rich. III, iv, iv, 502.*

**EDWARD (5), Bohun.** See Bohun.  
*Hen. VIII, ii, i, 103.*

**EDWARD (6), Duke of Bar.** See Bar.  
*Hen. V, iv, viii, 103.*

**ELEANOR (1),** or Elinor, Duchess of Aquitaine, queen successively of France and England; born c. 1122, was the daughter of William X, Duke of Aquitaine. In 1137 she was married by her father to Louis VII of France. Moved by the eloquence of St. Bernard, both Louis and Eleanor took the Cross and started on the crusade in 1148 but returned to France in 1149. Two years later she was divorced on the plea of consanguinity. In 1152 she married Henry Count of Anjou and Duke of Normandy, afterwards Henry II of England. Her affection for her children caused her to abet them in their rebellion in 1173, whereupon she was arrested and placed under strict guard from which she was not entirely released until the death of her husband sixteen years later, though she was present at the reconciliation of the king and his sons in 1184. On the death of Henry II it was Eleanor who secured the recognition of Richard I as king and restored peace throughout the country. In 1191 she brought Richard's future wife, Berengaria of Navarre, to Sicily. In the next year she prevented John, who was meditating treachery against his brother, from crossing to France, and exacted an oath of fealty to Richard I from the lords of the realm. On the death of this king, Eleanor exerted herself to secure the succession of her youngest son, John, laying waste Anjou, which had declared for her grandson Arthur. The queen was jealous of Constance, her son Geoffrey's widow, fearing the influence she would obtain should her son Arthur succeed to the throne of England; but historians relate to her credit that she pleaded warmly for the safety of the young prince when he was taken prisoner by his uncle, John. Though now almost 80 years old she set out for Castile in 1200 to arrange for the marriage of Alphonso's daughter, Blanche (her own grand-daughter), to Lewis of France. In 1202 she was staying at Mirabeau Castle with only a scanty guard, where she was besieged by Arthur



## ELEANOR]

and would have been compelled to surrender but for John's rapid march by night to her assistance. Two years later Eleanor died and was buried in Fontevraud Abbey, where she had lived in retirement.

*John*, I, i; II, i; III, i, iii.

ELEANOR (2), younger daughter of Roger Mortimer, married Edward Courtenay, eleventh Earl of Devonshire, and died without issue in 1418.

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 38.

ELEANOR (3), Cobham. See Gloucester (4).

*II Hen. VI*, I, ii, iii, iv; II, iii, iv.

ELIZABETH (1), queen of Edward IV, born c. 1431; the first subject raised to the throne of England as the wife of the reigning sovereign, was the daughter of Sir Richard Woodville, afterwards Earl Rivers, by Jacquetta of Luxemburg, widow of John Duke of Bedford. She married first, about 1452, Sir John Grey, son and heir of Lord Ferrers of Gorby and after the marriage became one of the four ladies of the bed-chamber to Margaret of Anjou. Her husband was killed at the second battle of St. Albans, 1461, where he had charge of Queen Margaret's cavalry, leaving her with two sons, Thomas, afterwards Marquis of Dorset, and Richard. The Woodvilles and the Greys were alike strong partisans of the Lancastrian cause, and on the accession of Edward IV Elizabeth was deprived of her inheritance and obliged to remain in her father's house at Grafton in Northamptonshire. In her poverty she made personal appeal to the new king upon his visit to her mother at Grafton. Miss Strickland gives an interesting account of Elizabeth's first interview with Edward IV in Whitebury Forest, near Grafton, where she waited with her two sons under a noble oak, still known as the "Queen's oak." Edward was much fascinated with her grace and beauty and secretly married her in 1464. She was crowned at Westminster in 1465 and the advancement of her relatives at once caused great dissatisfaction among the old nobility. Fuller says, "She got more greatness than joy, height than happiness, by her marriage, for she lived to see the death of her husband, the murder of her two sons, and the restraint of herself and other children." This agrees with her gloomy foreboding as indi-

cated in the play. Miss Strickland says, "There never was a woman who contrived to make more personal enemies." On the death of Edward IV in 1483, she took sanctuary at Westminster from the anger of Gloucester and Buckingham, but was persuaded by Cardinal Bouchier to give up her second son Richard, who was thereupon sent to the Tower to join the young king, his brother. Her marriage with Edward IV was pronounced invalid in a parliament controlled by Richard III in 1484 and she was thereafter styled by him, "Dame Elizabeth Grey, late calling herself Queen of England." She was induced to quit her sanctuary on Richard's promise to provide for herself and her daughters. By this means he long postponed what he intended to prevent entirely, the marriage between her daughter Elizabeth and the exiled Earl of Richmond. After the accession of Henry VII, Elizabeth was placed in full possession of her rights as queen dowager in 1486, but in the next year her lands were declared forfeited by the alleged perfidy she had shown in 1484 by breaking her promise to Henry in his exile and delivering her daughters into Richard's hands. She retired to the Abbey of Bermondsey where, much neglected by her son-in-law, she died in 1492, and was buried in St. George's Chapel, Windsor, by the side of Edward IV. She refounded and re-endowed Queens' College, Cambridge, which her rival, Margaret of Anjou, had founded before her.

*III Hen. VI*, III, ii, ; iv, i, iv, vii.

*Rich. III*, I, iii ; II, i, ii, iv ; IV, i, iv.

ELIZABETH (2), daughter of Edward IV and wife of Henry VII, was born at Westminster Palace in 1465. Her marriage with the dauphin was one of the conditions of the peace between Edward IV and Louis XI in 1475 but the ceremony was never performed. Edward next tried to get the exiled Earl of Richmond into his hands by suggesting his marriage with Elizabeth. But the Duke of Brittany, with whom he had sought refuge, refused to give him up. On the death of her father Elizabeth took sanctuary with her mother but later was induced by her uncle, Richard III, to leave this retreat, and it was rumoured that on the death of Anne, his wife, he proposed to make her his queen. The report provoked so much public indignation that Richard's counsellors induced him publicly to disavow any such intentions and Elizabeth

## ELIZABETH]

was sent to Sheriff Hutton Castle in Yorkshire, where she remained until after the battle of Bosworth. The "Song of the Lady Bessy," a contemporary composition, declares that she utterly loathed the proposal of Richard and induced Lord Stanley to join Richmond. She was married to Henry VII in 1486, in pursuance of a petition presented to the king by parliament, and crowned in 1487, after the suppression of the Earl of Lincoln's rebellion. Her death at the age of 88 in 1508 is attributed to grief at the death of her eldest son, Prince Arthur, in that same year. An elegy upon her was written by Sir Thomas More.

*Rich. III.*, iv, ii, 61, iii, 41, iv, 203, v, 18; v, v, 29.

ELIZABETH (8), Queen of England, was the daughter of Henry VIII and Anne Bullen. She was born at Greenwich in 1533. Along with her half-sister Mary she was declared illegitimate after her father's marriage with Jane Seymour. Like all Henry's children she was well educated and her school master, Roger Ascham, tells us that she spoke French and Italian as well as she talked English; that she was fluent in Latin; and had a fair knowledge of Greek. She wrote an exquisite hand and was a good musician. Half the young princes of Europe sought her hand in marriage. During Mary's reign she lived mostly at Hatfield, the home of the Cecils. She came to the throne in 1558 at the age of 25. William Cecil, afterwards Lord Burleigh, became her chief adviser and for forty years possessed the confidence of the queen. Her position was one of great difficulty, as the finances of the country were at a low ebb, while France, Spain, and Scotland were open enemies. Most of the Romanists regarded her as illegitimate and Mary Queen of Scots as the rightful heiress to the throne. Between the bigotry of the Romanists, restored to full power by her predecessor, and the bigotry of the Protestants, whose hatred had been fanned to white heat during their exile on the continent, Elizabeth was in a great strait. With the innate statesmanship of the Tudors, she cut the Gordian knot by restoring the ancient Church of England, free from foreign dominion, as it had been before the disastrous days of King John and during the reigns of all the strongest of English sovereigns. Though her throne was frequently surrounded by plots she safely escaped them all. In 1587 parliament compelled her to execute her rival,

Mary Queen of Scots, who had taken refuge in England nineteen years before. In the next year Elizabeth encountered the most dangerous of all her trials, the sailing of the "Invincible" Armada sent by Philip II of Spain. But the daring of her seamen and her own undaunted heroism saved the realm and the Armada was scattered. Meanwhile the daring English seamen ploughed every sea and laid the foundation of their country's colonial greatness. She died at Richmond in her 70th year in 1603. Elizabeth was "above the middle height, with strong features, a broad brow, a great hooked nose, hazel eyes, fair complexion and masses of light auburn hair. She had a magnificent constitution, and seemed almost incapable of fatigue, working nearly as hard as her father at the business of ruling her kingdom, yet always finding time for the endless frivolities of her court. She delighted in watching plays, masques, and shows. . . . She had few scruples, was utterly regardless of truth, and sometimes a touch of ferocity showed that she was Henry's true daughter. . . . She was as self-centred as Henry himself, and if she did her best for her country, it was only because, with fine Tudor instinct, she could not separate its interests from her own" (Tout).

"When all is said that can be said to prove that she had her weaknesses and her faults, it amounts to no more than this, that she was human; and when all deductions have been made that the most captious criticism can collect, her name will go down to posterity as one of the great personages in history, the virgin queen, who, by sheer force of character, gained for herself the credit of all the grand achievement which her people effected, in peace or war; whose name was held in something more than honour from Persia to Peru, from Russia to Algiers, who crushed the tremendous power of Spain, broke for ever the spiritual tyranny of Rome, and lifted England into the first rank among the kingdoms of the world" (Jessop).

*Hen. VIII, v, v.*

ELY, Bishop of;

(1). John Fordham, canon of York and secretary to Richard II, with whom he was a great favourite. He was appointed Dean of Wells and in 1382 consecrated Bishop of Durham. In 1386 Richard appointed him treasurer but he became obnoxious to the party opposed to the court, from which he was banished in 1388. Two years later the Lords secured from

## ELY (BISHOP)]

Urban VI his translation from Durham to the inferior bishopric of Ely, where he remained upwards of 35 years and died in extreme old age in 1425.

*Hen. V, I, i, ii.*

(2). John Morton, the eldest son of Richard Morton, a gentleman of good family at Milborne St. Andrew, Dorset, was born about 1420. He was educated at Cerne Abbey, a Benedictine house near his own home, proceeded to Oxford, where he took his D.C.L.; and, after ordination, practised as an ecclesiastical lawyer in the Court of Arches. Bouchier heaped preferment upon him and he became a great pluralist. He was held in great esteem by Henry VI and espoused the Lancastrian cause and, after the defeat of Towton, where he was in danger of losing his life, went into exile with Queen Margaret and her son, on which account he was attainted and all his property confiscated. He played a great part in the reconciliation of Clarence and Warwick with Margaret; but after the disaster of Shrewsbury he submitted to Edward IV and his attainder was reversed. In 1472 Bouchier presented him to the living of St. Dunstan's-in-the-East and in the same year he was appointed a prebend of St. Paul's cathedral. Notwithstanding his well-known Lancastrian inclinations he was much respected by Edward IV, who sent him on an embassy to Hungary in 1475, while next year he helped to negotiate the treaty of Pecquigny; also arranging for the ransom of Queen Margaret. He was elected bishop of Ely in 1479 and was present at Edward's death and funeral in 1483, in which year he was arrested and imprisoned, first in the Tower and afterwards in Brecknock Castle under the custody of Buckingham. Here he encouraged that nobleman to revolt against Richard and then escaped, first to Ely and thence to Flanders. Gloucester, even when Protector, was anxious to gain his good will and, as alluded to in the play, dreaded his influence when he fled to his rival. When, in 1484, Richard was plotting the capture of Richmond in Brittany, Morton heard of the scheme in time to send Henry timely warning by Urswick, so that he saved his life by escaping into France. When Henry had gained the throne he summoned Morton home and for the rest of his life depended much on his counsels. Morton it was who was the great advocate of Henry's marriage with Elizabeth of York. In 1486 he succeeded Bouchier as Archbishop of Canterbury,

and in the next year became Lord Chancellor. He assisted in the collection of benevolences for the French war in 1491 and has been known traditionally as the author of "Morton's fork". He is said to have asserted that those who lived plainly and frugally had evidently saved money; while those who lived extravagantly and on a grand scale were as evidently very wealthy and, therefore, both could equally well afford to give the king a large benevolence. But the truth seems rather to be that he and Richard Foxe did their best at the council to restrain Henry's avarice. In 1493 he was made Cardinal of St. Anastasia by Pope Alexander VI and, two years later, Chancellor of Oxford. His high rewards in church and state were the recompense for the important services he rendered to Henry VII both before and after his accession.

Bacon says of Morton that "he was a wise man and an eloquent, but in his nature harsh and haughty, much accepted by the king, but envied by the nobility and hated by the people". This unfavourable view of his character is not so trustworthy as the opinion of Sir Thomas More, who knew him intimately and gave a very sympathetic description of him in his "Utopia". According to More "his conversation was easy, but serious and grave. He spoke both gracefully and weightily. He was eminently skilled in the law, had a vast understanding and a prodigious memory; and these excellent talents with which nature had furnished him were improved by study and discipline".

Morton was a great builder and Morton's Dyke, a great drainage trench which he cut through the fens from Peterborough to Wisbeach, perpetuates his memory. He repaired the episcopal palace at Hatfield, besides several churches. It was probably he who wrote the Latin version of the "History of Richard III", usually attributed to Sir Thomas More, the work of the latter, it seems, being confined to translating it into English.

*Rich. III.*, III, iv; IV, iii, 46, 49.

(8). Dr. Nicholas West was born in 1461, his father being a baker at Putney. He was educated at Eton and thence proceeded to Cambridge, where he became a fellow of King's College in 1488. He was appointed Archdeacon of Derby in 1486, Dean of Windsor in 1509, and Bishop of Ely in 1515. West was constantly employed on diplomatic missions abroad.

## EMPEROR]

He was chaplain to Queen Katherine and opposed the divorce proceedings. He died in 1533, soon after the coronation of Anne Bullen. West added to the buildings of St. George's, Windsor; King's College, Cambridge; Putney Parish Church, and Ely Cathedral.

*Hcn. VIII, II, iv.*

**EMPEROR (1).** Henry VI, Roman Emperor, the son of Frederick I, was born in 1165 and chosen king of the Germans in 1169. Ten years later he was invested with lands in Germany. In 1184 he was knighted and associated with his father in the government, being left as regent while the Emperor was on a visit to Pope Lucius III. Two years later Henry married at Milan, Constance, daughter of Roger I, King of Sicily. Soon afterwards Henry was crowned King of Italy and recognized as Emperor-elect by the pope. He now returned home, where he was appointed the regent when his father set out on a crusade in 1189. In the next year Frederick died and Henry, having obtained a promise of his coronation from Pope Clement III, proceeded into Italy. On his arrival he found that the pope was dead and that his successor refused to proceed with the ceremony. But the strength of the German army overawed the pontiff and Henry was crowned Emperor in 1191. He was recalled from his attempts to suppress a revolt in Italy and Sicily by news of a league against his authority and of the general confusion at home. Henry at once acted energetically against his foes but his real salvation came from the captivity of Richard I of England and the skill with which he used this event to make peace with his enemies. By 1194 peace was restored, while with the large ransom obtained from Richard I, Henry was able to fit out an expedition with which he obtained complete mastery over the Italians and Sicilians. He was crowned King of Sicily on Christmas Day, 1194, and leaving his wife as regent, returned to Germany in June of the following year. He now made an attempt to assert his sovereignty over the whole of western Europe but his dreams were shattered and his diplomacy and duplicity rendered vain by the disorder in both his German and in his Italian dominions. Henry died at Messina while suppressing the Italian revolt with great cruelty. He was buried at Palermo in 1197. "He was a man of small frame and delicate constitution, but possessed

considerable mental gifts and was skilled in knightly exercises. His ambition was immense and to attain his desires he often resorted deliberately to cruelty and treachery."

*John*, I, i, 100.

**EMPEROR (2).** Lewis I, surnamed "the Pious", Roman Emperor, was the third son of Charlemagne. He was born in France in 778 and crowned King of Aquitaine in 781. As his tastes were mainly ecclesiastical the government was conducted by his counsellors, though he took part in several campaigns against the Saxons and in Italy. In 794 he married Irmengarde, daughter of the Count of Haspen and, after the death of his elder brother, was crowned co-Emperor in 813, becoming sole ruler in the following year. He earned his surname of "the Pious" by banishing his sisters and others of immoral life from the court and by his reforms of the monasteries. It was not until 816 that he was crowned Emperor at Rheims by Pope Stephen IV and he at once divided the Empire among his sons. After suppressing the revolt of his nephew Bernard with great ferocity, he married his second wife Judith in 819. After she bore a son, afterwards Charles the Bald, she commenced to intrigue in order to secure for him a kingdom, being aided by her eldest step-son, Lothaire. Several revolts of his sons followed and twice Lewis was confined to a monastery by them, though each time he was restored by the popular indignation at the way in which he was treated. In 838 Pippin, his second son, died and the Empire, except Bavaria (the kingdom of his son Lewis) was divided between Lothaire and Charles. This led to a revolt of Lewis and it was while suppressing this that the Emperor died in 840, being buried on an island in the Rhine near Ingelheim. Lewis was a man of strong frame who loved the chase and did not shrink from the hardships of war. He was, however, easily influenced and was unequal to the government of the Empire bequeathed to him by his father.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 76.

**EMPEROR (3).** Sigismund, Roman Emperor, the son of the Emperor Charles IV, was born in 1368. At the age of seventeen he married Maria, the daughter of Louis the Great, King of Poland and Hungary, and was crowned king of the latter country in 1387. In 1396 Sigismund led the combined armies



## EMPEROR]

of Christendom against the Turks, who had extended their dominions to the Danube. But the Christian forces were completely overthrown and on his return to Hungary Sigismund was deprived of his authority. After many vicissitudes he was elected king of the Romans in 1410, though his coronation was delayed till 1414, at Aix-la-Chapelle. He now compelled Pope John XXIII to summon the Council of Constance in that same year and Sigismund took a leading part in its deliberations. During 1415-17, Sigismund undertook journeys to France, Burgundy, and England where he sought, in virtue of his presidency of western Europe, to make peace between France and England; Burgundians and Armagnacs. But he failed in his endeavour. In 1419 he became the titular king of Bohemia though he had to wait for seventeen years before the Czechs would acknowledge him. But though he was the nominal head of Christendom, he only succeeded in establishing his authority in Hungary. It is probable that he was not implicated in the execution of John Huss, yet he waged war upon his followers. In 1424 Sigismund was deprived of the headship of Germany. Seven years later he was acknowledged as king of the Lombards, while at Rome in 1433 he received the imperial crown. In 1436 he was recognized as King of Bohemia, but died at the end of the next year, being buried at Grosswardein.

“ Sigismund was brave and handsome, courtly in his bearing, eloquent in his speech, but licentious in his manners. He was an accomplished knight, one of the most far-seeing statesmen, and steadily endeavoured to bring about the expulsion of the Turks by uniting Christendom against them. As King of Hungary he proved himself a born political reformer, and the military measures which he adopted enabled that kingdom to hold its own against the Turks for almost a hundred years, but he was easily discouraged and hampered on all sides by poverty.”

*Hen. V*, iv, i, 42; v, Pro., 38.

*I Hen. VI*, v, i, 2.

EMPEROR (4). Charles V, Emperor of Germany, was born at Ghent in 1500. His parents were Philip of Burgundy and Joanna, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella. From his father who was the son of the Emperor Maximilian and Mary of Burgundy, he inherited the Netherlands, the county of Bur-

gundy ; and a strong claim to the imperial crown. From his mother he inherited the kingdoms of Spain and Naples with the Spanish possessions in America ; while he married his relatives to all the leading royal houses. After a visit to Henry VIII of England and his aunt Katherine, in 1521 Charles was crowned Emperor of Germany at Aix-la-Chapelle and a few months later presided at the famous Diet of Worms, which promulgated an edict against Luther and his opinions. The history of western Europe for the next 25 years is largely the story of the rivalry between Charles and Francis I of France. Almost equally formidable was the advance of the Turks up the Danube and the union of the Turkish naval power with that of the Barbary state of N. Africa. The aim of Charles was a great Empire in western Europe, of which the Pope should be the spiritual, and the House of Austria the temporal, heads. At first, mainly through the influence of Wolsey, Henry VIII aided Charles, who was everywhere successful. But in 1527, after the sack of Rome and the imprisonment of the Pope, Henry joined the Holy League against him. But the peace of Cambrai two years later left Charles master of Italy. During all these years Charles had also been occupied in restoring peace and security of government in Spain. In 1529, he proceeded to Italy, where at Bologna he was crowned by the pope as Emperor of the Romans. In 1535 Charles destroyed the power of the great corsair Barbarossa and captured Tunis. The exhausting war between Charles and Francis was brought to a halt in 1538 by the intervention of Pope Paul III, and a truce for ten years was signed. In 1541 Charles attacked the pirates of Algiers but his fleet was destroyed by storms while he himself reached the coast of Spain with difficulty. A new quarrel having arisen between Charles and Francis, the truce was broken. But when Henry VIII, who was furious with Francis for his alliance with the Turks (in accordance with which their fleet wintered at Toulon), joined Charles, Francis was compelled to make peace in 1544. The death of Francis in 1547 left Charles free to devote himself to the two great objects of his life ; the suppression of Protestantism and the succession of his son Philip to the imperial crown. But the former was defeated by Maurice of Saxony, who used Charles's confidence to place himself in a position to command the most favourable terms for the Protestants, while the latter also failed owing to the refusal of his brother, Ferdinand to waive

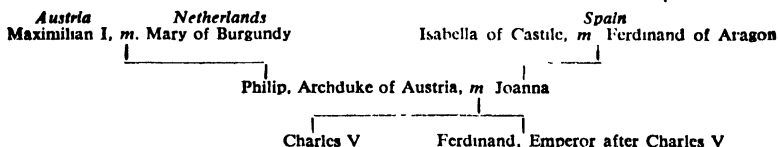
## ERPINGHAM]

his claim to the empire. The reign of Charles was, in America, the age of conquest and organization. Upon his accession the settlements upon the mainland were insignificant. By 1556 the conquest was practically complete and civil and ecclesiastical government firmly established. In 1555 Charles formally resigned the sovereignty of the Netherlands and in the next years the kingdoms of Spain, Sicily, and Burgundy to his son Philip; while in the same year he resigned the empire to his brother Ferdinand. He retired to a small house attached to the monastery of Yuste in Estremadura where he continued to take the keenest interest in state affairs until his death in September, 1558. "In person he was slight and graceful, and his manners were marked by singular refinement and dignity; but throughout all his life he was haunted by the dread of his mother's mental affliction."

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 176ff.; II, i, 162, ii, 26; III, ii, 318;  
IV, ii, 109.

Table to show the marriage alliances which resulted in the union of the Spanish Empire, the Burgundian Provinces, including the Netherlands, and Austria with the Imperial dignity in the person of Charles V.

### EMPIRE OF CHARLES V



ERPINGHAM, Sir Thomas; born 1357, was the son of Sir John Erpingham, of the manor of that name in Norfolk. He was only thirteen at the time of his father's death and was early trained in arms. In 1386 he served under John of Gaunt in Spain and under his son (afterwards Henry IV) in Lithuania in 1390, also accompanying the latter in his banishment. He landed with Henry at Ravenspur in 1399, became Constable of Dover Castle, Warden of the Cinque Ports, and was appointed one of the commissioners for receiving Richard II's resignation of the crown. He promised the king his help in the suppression of the Lollards but his selection for this task was singular, as

he himself inclined to Lollardy and was a friend of Sir John Oldcastle. In 1401 Erpingham was selected to accompany the king's second son, Thomas Duke of Clarence, when he went as Lieutenant to Ireland, remaining with him until his return in 1408. In the next year Erpingham was appointed a member of the Privy Council and Steward of the Royal Household. On his accession Henry V seems to have placed as much confidence in Erpingham as his father had done and he took a prominent part in the Agincourt campaign. To this experienced warrior, "grown grey with age and honour", was entrusted the task of setting the English army at Agincourt in battle array; and when all was ready for the attack he himself gave the signal by throwing his truncheon into the air and crying out "Now, strike". In 1416 he was sent with John Wakering, Bishop of Norwich, to treat with the French king; but he was now nearly sixty years old, and this seems to have been his last important employment. He died in 1428. Erpingham was a great benefactor of Norwich, where he built the Erpingham gateway, and there is a portrait of him in a window of Norwich Cathedral.

*Rich. II.*, II, i, 283.

*Hen. V.*, IV, i.

ESSEX, Earl of. This was Geoffrey Fitzpeter, who married Beatrice, grand-daughter of William de Say by Beatrice, only sister of Geoffrey de Mandeville, Earl of Essex, on whose death Fitzpeter claimed the title in right of his wife. He was one of the five judges of the king's court during the absence of Richard I on crusade and was excommunicated for his opposition to William Longchamp, on whose death he was appointed Justiciary of England, an office which gave the holder rank next to the king himself. He carried out many oppressive measures in order to supply Richard with money and on his death took a prominent part in securing the succession of John at the council of Northampton. That monarch confirmed him in his office, though he actively disliked him. He was appointed Vice-Regent in 1213 when the king set out on his expedition to Poitou, but, to John's great joy, Essex died at the end of that year.

*John.*, I, i.

EXETER, Duke of; (1). This was John Holland, born 1352, the third son of Thomas Holland, first Earl of Kent, by Joan,

## EXETER]

daughter of Edmund of Woodstock, Earl of Kent. His mother afterwards became the wife of Edward the Black Prince and mother of Richard II, consequently Holland was half-brother to that king. In 1381 he went to France to escort Isabella to England. The violence of his temper is shown by his brutal murder of the young Ralph Stafford in 1385 merely because an archer belonging to him had, in a quarrel, slain one of Exeter's esquires. The king ordered Holland's lands to be seized but they were restored in the next year. Holland married Elizabeth, second daughter of John of Gaunt, under whom he distinguished himself in Spain in 1386. On his return in the next year he was created Earl of Huntingdon and two years later appointed Chamberlain of England for life. In 1394 he made a pilgrimage to Palestine. On his return he was appointed Duke of Exeter, in 1397, owing to his activities on the king's behalf against Gloucester and Arundel. He accompanied Richard on his unfortunate expedition to Ireland, was sent by that king as an ambassador to Bolingbroke, and after Richard's deposition was degraded from his dukedom so that he again became Earl of Huntingdon. In 1400 he entered into a conspiracy for the restoration of Richard II and, after the defeat of the conspirators at Cirencester, fled to Plashy, where he was arrested and beheaded by order of the Countess of Hereford. He is referred to by Bolingbroke in v, iii, 137 as "our trusty brother-in-law", Holland's wife being Henry IV's sister.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 281 ; v, iii, 137.

(2). This was Thomas Beaufort, third and youngest son of John of Gaunt by Catherine Swynford. He was legitimized by Richard II along with his brothers in 1397. On the accession of his half-brother as Henry IV he was promoted to be Constable of Ludlow ; Admiral of the Fleet for the northern parts in 1403 ; and two years later commanded the royal forces against the northern rebels. He became captain of Calais in 1407 and, as a result of the anti-clerical reaction in 1409, received, from Henry, the great seal early in the next year. He was the only lay Chancellor of the reign, for at that time the post was usually filled by an ecclesiastic. He took part in the French expedition of 1412 under the Duke of Clarence, in which year he was created Earl of Dorset. After taking part in the discussion of Henry V's title to the French throne, he was

appointed Lieutenant of Aquitaine; formed part of the final embassy to France before the outbreak of war; and accompanied the king to Harfleur, being appointed governor of that town on its surrender. According to Round he was present at Agincourt, as represented by Shakespeare; where he held command of the third line. But Marshall says he was not present at Agincourt, having remained behind at Harfleur. Early in 1416 the Count of Armagnac besieged him closely by land and sea in Harfleur but after being relieved by John, Duke of Bedford, he was appointed Lieutenant of Normandy and in the same year created Duke of Exeter for life. He accompanied Henry to Rouen in 1418, receiving the keys of that fortress early in the next year, whereupon he was appointed captain of that city. After reducing several coast towns he helped to negotiate the treaty of Troyes and was present at its ratification in 1420. On Henry's departure he was left with the Duke of Clarence, with whom he was made prisoner at Beaugé. Regaining his liberty, he returned to England, having been appointed one of the executors of Henry's will and a member of the Council of Regency. He seems to have returned again to the French wars before his death, which took place at his manor of Greenwich in January 1427, so that he was not present at the coronation of Henry VI as Shakespeare represents. Exeter left no issue.

*Hen. V.* I, ii; II, ii, iv; III, i, iii, 51, vi, 5ff.; IV, iii, vi, vii, viii; v, ii.

I *Hen. VI.* I, i; III, i.

**EXETER (8).** Duke of. This was Henry Holland, the son of John Holland, Earl of Huntingdon, who is noticed in Henry V as present at Troyes. In 1446 he was joined with his father in the office of Constable of the Tower. Though he had married Anne Plantagenet, the sister of Edward IV, he remained faithful to Henry VI, sharing the triumph of Wakefield and the defeats of Towton and Barnet. At the latter battle he was left on the field for dead but was found by a retainer and, though severely wounded, at length recovered. He was attainted by Edward IV and fell into the deepest poverty, even being reduced to begging his bread. He died in 1473.

III *Hen. VI.* I, i; II, v; IV, viii.

**EXETER (4).** Bishop of; this was Peter Courtenay, third son of Sir Philip Courtenay of Powderham. He was educated at

## EXTON]

Oxford and Padua. In 1463 he became Prebendary of Lincoln ; in 1477, Dean of Windsor ; and in 1478 was appointed Bishop of Exeter, being consecrated by bishop Kemp of London in St. Stephen's Chapel, Westminster. As a bishop he displayed great activity in building. He completed the north tower of his cathedral at his own cost and put in a great bell, still called Peter's bell, and a curious clock showing the state of the moon and the day of the month. Of a Yorkist family, he took a considerable part in politics in the service of Edward IV and even acquiesced in the usurpation of Richard III. But, along with his cousin Edward, he joined the party of Buckingham and endeavoured to promote a rising in Devon and Cornwall. His life was spared but he was deprived of his temporalities and estates by Richard's parliament. He returned with Henry VII, was restored to his see, and appointed Keeper of the Privy Seal. He was present in the first parliament of Henry VII, where the sentences of Richard's time were reversed. On the death of William of Waynflete Courtenay received the temporalities of the see of Winchester. He was a witness of the creation of Arthur as Prince of Wales in 1490 and died in 1492.

*Rich. III, iv, 503.*

EXTON, Sir Pierce of ; Holinshed says, " King Henry, on a day at his table, sore sighing said, ' Have I no faithful friend which will deliver me of him whose life will be my death, and whose death will be the preservation of my life ? ' " Shakespeare, therefore, adopts the version of Richard's death that he was killed at Pontefract Castle by Sir Pierce of Exton and his guards.

" Sir Nicholas Exton, Sheriff of London in 1385, was a violent opponent in parliament to Richard II, whose favourite, Brembre, he succeeded as mayor in 1386. It is probable that Pierce was a near relation " (French).

*Rich. II, v, iv. v, vi.*

FALCONBRIDGE. This was William Neville, second son of Ralph, first Earl of Westmorland by his second wife, Joan Beaufort, daughter of John of Gaunt. He was knighted by Henry VI in 1426 and served under the Earl of Salisbury at the siege of Orleans in 1428. His father married him before 1424 to Joan, the heiress of the last baron Faulconberg (also spelled Fauconbrygge) of Skelton Castle in Cleveland, at the

mouth of the Tees, and he was summoned to parliament in his wife's right in 1429. He was prominent in the campaign against the Duke of Burgundy in 1439, assisted his cousin Edmund Beaufort, Earl of Dorset, to capture Harfleur, and served under the Duke of York in 1442. During York's first protectorship, Falconbridge served as a member of the Privy Council, taking part in the first battle of St. Albans. In 1457 he served under his nephew Warwick at Calais and early in the next year received the command of a fleet at Southampton, owing to a French fleet being in the Channel. He assisted Warwick at Northampton in 1460 and was present with Edward IV at Towton, defeating Clifford at Ferrybridge on the eve of that battle; for which important service he was rewarded by his elevation to the earldom of Kent. In 1462, Queen Margaret having taken refuge with Louis XI, who was preparing to assist her to return, Falconbridge was appointed admiral of England. He made descents in Brittany and the Isle of Rhé, but failed to intercept Margaret when she sailed from France. He died in 1468, leaving no heir, and was buried in Guisborough priory.

Some writers sought to identify "stern Falconbridge" with Thomas Neville, base son of the above, who figures in history as one of the last adherents of the Lancastrian cause under the name "Bastard Fauconberg". In 1471 this soldier was in the service of the Earl of Warwick and actively assisted him to reinstate Henry VI on the throne, being appointed captain of "Warwick's navy", and directed to cruise between Calais and Dover to intercept any assistance coming to Edward IV. About the date of the battle of Tewkesbury he raised the county of Kent on behalf of Henry VI and marched on London, where his followers did immense damage on the banks of the Thames. Being persuaded by Lord Scales that Edward was about to leave England, he retired to Blackheath and thence to Sandwich where he was soon afterwards defeated. He escaped to Southampton but was there captured, taken to Middleham Castle, Yorkshire, and beheaded in 1471, his head being set up on London Bridge.

In the text it is evident that Queen Margaret speaks of one who did not belong to King Henry's side, as in the preceding line she says, alluding to the opposite faction, "Warwick is Chancellor and the Lord of Calais." That great nobleman was the nephew of Falconbridge, while Calais, the important, gate-



way by which to enter France, was then held by Warwick, as its captain, and, being also Constable of Dover, he held command of the "narrow seas" i.e. the Channel; his uncle, who was a Yorkist, serving under him as Admiral of the Fleet. Moreover, had it been intended to mention the Bastard Falconbridge, his rising would have no doubt been placed at the beginning of *III Hen. VI*, v, vi, as it is placed by Hall after Tewkesbury. It may safely be accepted therefore, that "stern Falconbridge" is William Neville, afterwards Earl of Kent.

*III Hen. VI*, I, i. 239.

FASTOLFE, Sir John; warrior and landowner, the son of John Fastolfe, was born at Great Yarmouth about 1378. (French says 1380.) He was educated as a page in the household of Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, after whose banishment he entered the service of Thomas of Lancaster, Duke of Clarence, and accompanied him to Ireland. He married Milicent, daughter of Robert, third Lord Tibetot, and widow of Sir Stephen Scrope. In 1415 he served under Henry V at the capture of Harfleur and was constituted Governor along with Thomas Beaufort, Duke of Exeter. French says that he remained at Harfleur and, therefore, could not have been present at Agincourt but Sir Sidney Lee says, "Fastolfe distinguished himself at the battle of Agincourt, in the raid on Rouen, in the relief of Harfleur when besieged by the Constable of France, at the taking of Caen, and at the siege of Rouen in 1417, in which year he was knighted." After the death of Henry V he continued to serve under the Duke of Bedford, who in 1423 constituted him Regent in Normandy and Governor of Anjou and Maine. At the battle of Verneuil, 1424, he took prisoner John, second Duke of Alencon, who was ransomed three years later, Fastolfe complaining that he was deprived of his proper share of the money. It was largely owing to Fastolfe's efforts that in the following year the subjection of Maine was completed. In 1428 he achieved his greatest exploit in the "Battle of the Herrings", when he was bringing stores to the English army then besieging Orleans. The next year, when serving under Talbot, he was defeated at Pataye by Joan of Arc, who caused such a panic among the English soldiery that they ran away. Monstrelet mentions the behaviour of Sir John Fastolfe and his companions, who "had not dismounted, and, to save their lives, they, with many

other knights, set off at full gallop". This blot on his escutcheon is alluded to in *I Hen. VI*, III, ii. According to the same author, the knight was reproached by Bedford for having thus fled "before a stroke was given" and was by him deprived of his "Garter". Shakespeare represents this degradation as being performed by Talbot in the presence of King Henry, who thereupon banished Fastolfe from court (*I Hen. VI*, IV, i.). Sir Sidney Lee says that at Pataye; "Talbot behaved with foolhardy courage. A manoeuvre on the part of Fastolfe was misunderstood by his own men; panic seized them, and Fastolfe's endeavour to recall them to their senses proved ineffectual. It was only when the day was irretrievably lost and his life was in immediate danger that he beat a retreat. Talbot with Lord Hungerford and others was taken prisoner. This is the version of the engagement given by an eye-witness, Jean de Waverin." Monstrelet admits that Fastolfe was quickly restored to his honours, "though against the mind of Lord Talbot". There can be no doubt that Fastolfe was employed after the battle of Pataye in as responsible offices as before. Monstrelet's story when compared with Waverin's account of Fastolfe's conduct resolves itself into the statement that at Talbot's request Bedford held an enquiry into a charge of cowardice brought against Fastolfe after Pataye, and came to the conclusion that it was unfounded. In 1430, Fastolfe was appointed Lieutenant of Caen, and in 1434 assisted in negotiating the peace of Arras. He was not popular with the people at home, for during Cade's rebellion he was denounced by that rebel leader as the greatest traitor in England or France, and Fastolfe was forced to seek refuge from the fury of the insurgents in the Tower of London. When Sir John retired to his property at Caistor in Norfolk, his birthplace, he built a great castle, the foundations of which covered more than five acres. Fastolfe's life in Norfolk is fully described in the "Paston Letters", the author of which, John Paston, was his neighbour and intimate friend. In these Fastolfe shows himself to be a grasping man of business, eager to amass wealth. He lent vast sums of money to the Crown, many of which were never repaid. Fastolfe died at Caistor in 1459, leaving no issue. A will, suspected to be a forgery, bequeathed to John Paston Caistor Castle, now a complete ruin. Fastolfe contributed to the building of the philosophy schools at Cambridge and bequeathed the manor of Caldecot

in Suffolk and the tenement called the "Boar's Head" in Southwark to establish a college at Caistor. But these bequests were transferred to the foundation of Magdalen College, Oxford, in 1474.

"Shakespeare is credited with having bestowed on him a celebrity that is historically unauthorised. In the folio edition of Shakespeare's works Fastolfe's name is spelt Falstaff when introduced into the *First Part of Henry VI*. This may seem to give additional weight to the theory that the Sir John Falstaff of Shakespeare's *Henry IV* and *Merry Wives of Windsor* is a satiric portrait of Sir John Fastolfe. Shakespeare represents Falstaff to have been brought up in the household of the Duke of Norfolk as Fastolfe is reported to have been. Fastolfe had a house in Southwark, and his servant, Henry Windsor, wrote to John Paston in 1458 that his master was anxious that he should set up at the Boar's Head tavern in Southwark. Falstaff is well acquainted with Southwark, and the tavern where he wastes most of his time in the play is the Boar's Head in Southwark. The charge of cowardice brought against Fastolfe at Pataye supports the identification. Shakespeare was certainly assumed by Fuller to have attacked Fastolfe's memory in his Falstaff for Fuller complained in his notice of Fastolfe that 'the stage had been overbold with his memory, making him a thrasonical puff and emblem of mock valour'. But that the coincidences between the careers of the dramatic Falstaff and the historic Fastolfe are to a large extent accidental is shown by the ascertained fact that in the original draft of *Henry IV* Falstaff bore the title of Sir John Oldcastle, and the name Falstaff was only substituted in deference, it is said, to the wish of Lord Cobham, who claimed descent from Oldcastle." An allusion in the preamble of Fastolfe's first will to the favourite Lollard text, I Cor. xiv, 38, has suggested to some of Fastolfe's biographers that he sympathized with the Lollards and Mr Gairdner suggests that this tradition encouraged Shakespeare to bestow his name on a character previously bearing the appellation of an acknowledged Lollard like Oldcastle. "Shakespeare was possibly under the misapprehension, based on the episode of cowardice reported in *Henry VI*, that the military exploits of the historical Sir John Fastolfe sufficiently resembled those of his own riotous knight to justify the employment of a corrupted version of his name. It is of course untrue that Fastolfe was ever the intimate associate of

Henry V when Prince of Wales, who was not his junior by more than ten years, or that he was an impecunious spend-thrift or greyhaired debauchee. The historical Fastolfe was in private life an expert man of business, who was indulgent neither to himself nor to his friends. He was nothing of a jester, and was, in spite of all imputations to the contrary, a capable and brave soldier" (Lee).

I *Hen. VI*, I, i, 181, iv, 85; III, ii; IV, i.

FAUCONBERG, Earl; a French noble slain at Agincourt.

*Hen. V*, III, v, 48; IV, viii, 99.

FER. At Agincourt the French were encumbered by the immense weight of their armour. In the Musée d'Artillerie at Paris are still preserved the casque and cuirass borne by Ferri de Lorraine, killed in the battle of Agincourt, which weigh 90 lbs. Can this be the Fer represented as captured by Pistol?

*Hen. V*, IV, iv.

FERDINAND OF SPAIN. Ferdinand V of Castile and Leon, and II of Aragon, was born in 1452. In 1469 he married his cousin Isabella of Castile and thus formed the united kingdom of Spain. "The reign that followed was one of the greatest in the history of Spain, which was in a few years advanced to the first rank among the nations by the military administration and diplomatic skill of its sovereigns, and of the distinguished body of ministers and generals that surrounded them."

Ferdinand suppressed the banditti by organizing a kind of militia-police, composed of the citizens and the country people. He also broke the power of the feudal aristocracy. The Spanish Inquisition was established by a bull of Pope Sixtus IV in 1478 and Ferdinand earned the name of "the Catholic" for his support. In 1492, the fall of Granada marked the end of the long struggle with the Moors and, although they were guaranteed the free exercise of their religion, this was treacherously withdrawn a few years later. His wife assisted the voyage of Columbus and the discovery of America gave Spain an unchallenged supremacy so that Ferdinand took a prominent part in European affairs. He also conquered the Spanish half of Navarre, thus becoming monarch of Spain from the Rock of Gibraltar to the Pyrenees. He died in 1516 and was succeeded by his grandson Charles V. To Ferdinand and Isabella Spain owes her unity, and greatness as a nation.

*Hen. VIII*, II, iv, 47.

## FERRARA]

FERRARA, Duke of; with whom Wolsey made a league without the king's knowledge. Ferrara was a province in Italy with a capital of the same name on the main road from Bologna to Padua.

*Hen. VIII*, III, ii, 323.

FERRERS, LORD. This was Sir Walter Devereux, who married Anne, only child and heiress of William, sixth Lord Ferrers of Chartley, Staffordshire, and was summoned to the House of Lords by that title in 1461. He met his death while fighting for Richard III at Bosworth in 1485, and was succeeded in the title by his son John.

*Rich. III*, v, v, 13.

FIFE. See Mordake.

I *Hen. IV*, I, i, 71f.

FITZWATER, LORD; was Walter, fifth Baron Fitzwater, who was summoned to parliament in 1390. He was descended from Robert Fitzwater, the famous "Banner-bearer of the city of London," general of the barons against King John. Fitzwater was the first to throw down his gage of defiance to Aumerle in Westminster Hall, according to Holinshed, and as indicated by Shakespeare. He died in 1407.

*Rich. II*, IV, i; v, vi.

FOIX, Earl; was John, born about 1382, and succeeded to his father's lands and title in 1412. During the struggle between the Burgundians and the Armagnacs, he intrigued with both parties, and consequently was distrusted by the dauphin, afterwards Charles VII. Deserting the cause of France, he then allied himself with Henry V of England; but when Charles VII became king in 1422, Foix returned to his native allegiance, becoming that king's representative in Languedoc and Guienne. Shakespeare represents him as killed at Agincourt.

*Hen. V*, III, v, 45; IV, viii, 104.

FORREST, Miles; one of the four gaolers who had charge of the young princes in the Tower and assisted Dighton to smother and bury them. He was, according to Hall, "a felowe fleshe bred in murther before tyme." Forrest, it is said by the old chroniclers, "by piecemeal rotted away." He was

appointed keeper of the wardrobe in one of Richard's royal residences, Barnard Castle, and when he died soon afterwards, an annuity of five marks was settled on his widow and her son Edward Forrest.

*Rich. III.*, iv, iii, 4f.

FRANCE, King of ;

(1) PHILIP II, known as Philip Augustus, the son of Louis VII, was born in 1165, and at the age of 14 was associated with his father as king, being crowned at Rheims. His father's illness at once threw the responsibility upon him, while his death in 1180 left Philip sole king. The boy-king found himself in a difficult position, for Henry II of England was the feudal lord of all the west of France, while his power in the remaining portion was restricted by his uncles, William, Archbishop of Rheims, Henry Count of Champagne, and Theobald Count of Blois and Chartres. In 1180, Philip married Isabella, daughter of Baldwin V, Count of Hainault, and thus added Artois to his dominions and secured an ally in his father-in-law. In the same year he made a treaty with Henry II at Gisors, and then turned his attention to his uncles and other great barons, against whom he struggled for the next five years. Having forced these to submit, he next attacked, and in 1186 subdued, Hugh Duke of Burgundy. Then, having made himself supreme and secure at home, he turned against Henry II of England, aiding the sons of that monarch in their rebellion against their father. On the accession of Richard I to the throne of England, pledges of mutual faith were exchanged and both prepared to go on the crusade. Philip appointed Adela, the queen-mother, and William, Archbishop of Rheims, as regents, arranging for an annual report of the affairs of the kingdom to be sent to him that he might, as far as possible, rule the country from Palestine. On the way to the Holy Land the two kings quarrelled. During the siege of Acre Philip fell ill, and nine days after its fall, announced his intention to return, reaching Paris at Christmas 1191. Though he had pledged himself not to interfere with Richard's land, on his way home he made an alliance with Henry VI of Germany, and when Richard Coeur-de-Lion fell into the emperor's hands, Philip did his utmost to prolong his captivity by bribes to the emperor. On his return, Richard combined the neighbouring barons of France against the king,

## FRANCE (KINGS)]

defeating Philip at Fréteval in 1194. But Richard's death five years later removed Philip's greatest enemy. John, the new English king, signed a treaty with Philip in 1200, by which he ceded the sovereignty of Berri, Auvergne, and Brittany and the guardianship of his nephew Arthur, while Philip's son Louis married Blanch of Castile, the niece of King John. But in 1202 the war was renewed and though for a time John was successful, capturing Arthur at Mirabeau, he soon alienated his allies and Philip began his great task, the conquest of Normandy. Though Pope Innocent III tried to make peace, Philip was obdurate and continued his victorious advance, securing his conquests by liberal grants of privileges to the great towns and retaining the great barons who went over to him in full possession of their power. In 1206 a truce was made for two years, by which John renounced all claims to Normandy, Maine, Brittany, Touraine, and Anjou. But it did not last six months, and by 1208 Philip had reduced the great French possessions of the Angevin kings of England to a mere shadow. Meanwhile Innocent III had pronounced the deposition of John, and Philip made active preparation for the invasion of England. But the submission of John disappointed his hopes and he turned his arms against Ferdinand, Count of Flanders. In 1214 came the great crisis in Philip's life. All the great barons against whom he had been waging war for so long combined against him while John invaded Guienne. While Prince Louis hastened to meet John and caused his retreat to La Rochelle, Philip utterly defeated his enemies at Bouvines.

Philip II is even more remarkable for his work as an organizer and statesman than as a warrior. He surrounded himself with clerks and lawyers, sending itinerant justices throughout his domains. Feudal service was more and more compounded for a money payment, the small barons were completely reduced to submission; the power of the great barons was curbed; while the great merchants were favoured and received many trade privileges and monopolies. Philip pursued his policy of building up a strong monarchy with great steadiness of aim and, though he was impulsive and displayed extraordinary activity at times, he possessed great caution, shrinking from no trickery in achieving his ends. Philip is described by Païen Gatineau as "a well-knit, handsome man, bald [from his illness at Acre], of agreeable face and ruddy complexion, loving good cheer, wine, and women. Generous

to his friends, he was miserly to those who displeased him ; very skilled in the art of engineering, catholic in his faith, far-seeing, obstinate in his resolution. His judgment was sound and quick. He was also quick in his anger, but easily appeased."

Philip died in 1223 and was succeeded by his son, Louis VIII.

*John*, I, i, 1 ff. ; II, i ; III, i, iv.

(2). CHARLES VI, the son of Charles V and Jeanne of Bourbon, was born in Paris, 1368. He was the first of the princes of France to bear the title of dauphin from his infancy. At the age of twelve he succeeded to the throne and at once a struggle for the royal power broke out between his paternal uncles, Louis Duke of Anjou ; John Duke of Berri ; Philip the Bold, Duke of Burgundy ; and his maternal uncle, Louis Duke of Bourbon ; the first named becoming regent and guardian of the young king according to the settlement of his father. The misgovernment of the dukes led to several risings in the large towns. Charles VI gained a victory over the insurgents of Paris at Roosebecke in 1382 and wreaked a fearful vengeance upon the city. In 1385 Charles married Elizabeth, daughter of Stephen II, Duke of Bavaria, her name being Gallicised into Isabel. Three years later he assumed the reins of government himself. The opening years of his independent rule promised well but excess of gaiety had undermined his health and in 1392 he had an attack of insanity. Other attacks followed in quick succession and it soon became evident that he was incapable of government and the royal dukes came back to power. The two most powerful now were the dukes of Burgundy and Orleans. In 1396 the king's daughter Isabel was married to Richard II of England and thus peace was secured with that country. But the Lancastrian revolution in 1399 undid this settlement. France was further torn by the claims of the rival popes, one of whom was supported by each party. During these troublous times the king's intellect became feebler, while Isabel gave herself up to gaiety and licentiousness. In 1407 John the Fearless of Burgundy caused the murder of the Duke of Orleans in the streets of Paris. The young Duke Charles of Orleans now married the daughter of Bernard VII, Count of Armagnac, who thus became the leader of the party opposed to Burgundy. In 1411, Burgundy, now supreme in



## FRANCE (KINGS)]

the royal council, concluded a treaty with Henry IV of England, while civil war broke out at home. The king and the dauphin now appealed to the Armagnacs for deliverance. In 1415 Henry V invaded the distracted country and gained the decisive victory of Agincourt. The two elder sons of Charles VI, Louis Duke of Guienne and Jean Duke of Touraine, died in 1415-7 and Charles Count of Ponthieu became heir-apparent. Paris was now governed by Bernard of Armagnac and Queen Isabel was imprisoned at Tours, but she escaped and joined Burgundy. In 1418 the capital was captured by the Burgundians and a terrible massacre of the Armagnacs followed. Queen Isabel now assumed the title of regent and entered Paris in triumph, accompanied by John of Burgundy. But in the next year, Burgundy was murdered under the eyes of the dauphin and naturally his son at once threw in his lot with the English, who had by this time completed the conquest of Normandy. In concert with Queen Isabel, Philip the Good of Burgundy concluded the treaty of Troyes with the English, by which Henry V became master of France and heir to the throne. During all this time Charles had been living in a state of great neglect. He was brought to Paris in September of 1422 where he died in the following month.

*Hen. V, II, iv ; III, v ; v, ii.*

(8). CHARLES VII, the fifth son of Charles VI and Isabel of Bavaria, was born in Paris in 1403 and ten years later betrothed to Mary of Anjou. He became dauphin of France on the death of his brother Jean in 1417 and in the next year assumed the title of regent. By the treaty of Troyes Charles was disinherited but he was recognized as king in the unconquered provinces and fixed his government at Bourges. The English hold on the north of the country was greatly increased by the victories of Crevant, 1423, and Verneuil, 1424. The young French king, who was nicknamed "king of Bourges," was weak in mind and body and always remained under the influence of favourites. But the power of these favourites was greatly shaken by the influence of Yolande of Aragon, the queen's mother, though the first result of her rise to power was an exhausting war between the two parties of the Armagnacs. Meanwhile the Duke of Bedford had established settled government in the north and was besieging Orleans. But the tide of battle was turned by the advent of Joan of Arc, who

relieved Orleans in 1429, and two months later Charles was crowned at Rheims. But the favourites of Charles were jealous of "the Maid" and no efforts were made to release her after her capture at Compiègne in 1430. Fifteen years of civil war and anarchy now intervened, while bands of armed men wandered at will over the country. The English power was greatly weakened by complications at home and many of the English troops joined these bands of freebooters. The expulsion of the English, begun by Joan of Arc, was carried on by the people of France themselves, while the advent to power of Charles of Anjou, Dunois (the famous bastard of Orleans), and Arthur of Brittany, led to the formation of settled government and the reform of the finances. In 1440 a considerable conspiracy, aided by the dauphin, afterwards Louis XI, was formed against the royal authority and at last broke out into open revolt. Charles VII repressed the rising, buying over the leading nobles by large grants of land and honours. In 1444, the peace of Tours was concluded with England and a regular army organized; the conquest of Normandy being completed by the victory of Formigny in 1450. Meanwhile Guienne had been reconquered by Dunois while all hopes of the English regaining it were destroyed by the defeat and death of Talbot at Chatillon. By 1453 the only English foothold in France was Calais. The change which made Charles take an active part in public affairs is said to have been largely due to Agnes Sorrel, who became his mistress in 1444. Charles VII continued his father's resistance to the encroachments of Rome and did all in his power to preserve the independence of the Gallican church. In 1446 the dauphin again broke out into open revolt and for the next ten years ruled like an independent sovereign in Dauphiné. But in 1457 he was forced to seek refuge with his father's ancient enemy, Philip of Burgundy. Charles VII died in 1461. The suspicion that he was poisoned by his son cannot be established.

*I Hen. VI*, i, i, 92, ii, v, vi; ii, i; iii, ii, iii; iv, i, 60,  
ii, 39, iv, 26, vii; v, i, 17, ii, iii, 37, iv, v, 45.

*II Hen. VI*, I, i, 41f.

(4). LEWIS XI, king of France, the son of Charles VII and Marie of Anjou, was born at Bourges in 1423. Joan of Arc appeared when Lewis was five years old but his boyhood was

## FRANCE (KINGS)]

spent far away from the stirring events which followed her advent. In June 1486 he married Margaret, daughter of James I of Scotland, and three years after this unhappy marriage entered upon his stormy political career. When sent in 1489 to resist the English in Languedoc he was persuaded to rebel by the discontented nobles. After being pardoned he fought against the English and in 1448 assisted his father to suppress the revolt of the Count of Armagnac. He failed, however, to suppress the Swiss and on his return to court found his father under the influence of Agnes Sorrel. The death of his wife completed the alienation of Lewis and his father, as the king was fond of his daughter-in-law. Lewis retired in 1447 to his province of Dauphiné, which he now governed as if it were an independent state, using the alliance of the towns, to which he granted many privileges, to overthrow the nobles. In 1456 Charles compelled him to seek refuge with Philip of Burgundy and Dauphiné was annexed to the French crown. Lewis succeeded to the throne in 1461 and, though he revenged himself upon his father's favourites, he retained most of his reliable advisers and officials. He gathered round him a motley throng of competent men, as so ably portrayed by Scott in "Quentin Durward", caring nothing of their previous life, provided they were faithful to himself. His high-handed treatment led to a revolt of the chief nobles headed by Charles the Bold of Burgundy, though its serious proportions were much mitigated by the alliance of the citizen class with the king. Still, Lewis was besieged in Paris and compelled to sign the treaty of Conflans in 1465 by which he was forced to yield the "Somme towns" in Picardy which he had purchased from Philip the Good. He now set to work to isolate Charles of Burgundy by winning over the chief of his supporters. Charles found an ally in Edward IV of England, whose sister he married. After defeating Francis of Brittany, Lewis arranged to meet Charles at Peronne in 1468 but was caught in the meshes of his own diplomacy and compelled to assist Charles in suppressing the revolt of Liége, the people of which were the allies of France. Two years later he was able to assist Warwick and Margaret to place Henry VI again on the throne and to drive out Edward IV. After the reaccession of Edward IV, he joined in a conspiracy against Lewis. But France was saved the horrors of civil war by the opportune death of the king's brother Charles, the head of the confederacy. Burgundy was now compelled to make peace: by

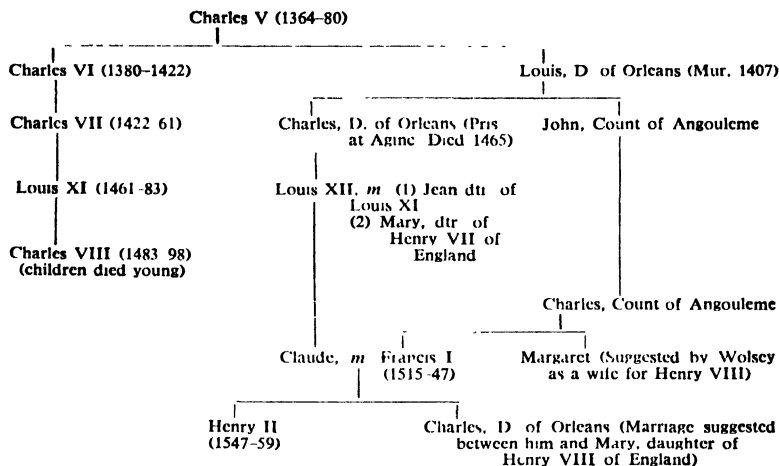
1478 all danger of the dismemberment of France had passed away. The next great task of Lewis was the overthrow of Burgundy and this he accomplished by buying off Edward of England and subsidizing the Swiss and the Duke of Lorraine to wage unceasing war upon Charles. But on the defeat and death of his rival at Nancy in 1477, the eagerness of Lewis to seize his inheritance drove his daughter and heiress, Mary, into a marriage with Maximilian of Austria and thus led later on to the surrounding of France by the empire of Charles V. But the unification of France was complete by the time of the death of Lewis in 1483.

“More than any other King of France, Louis XI was a ‘bourgeois king’. The upper bourgeois, the aristocracy of his ‘good cities’, were his allies against the nobles and against the artisan class, whenever they revolted. He ruled like a modern capitalist; placed his bribes like investments in the courts of his enemies; and, while draining the land of enormous sums, was pitiless to the two productive portions of his realm, the country population and the artisans. Impatient of all restraint upon his personal rule, he was continually in violent dispute with the parliament of France, and made “justice” another name for arbitrary government. Louis was ungainly, with rickety legs. His eyes were keen and piercing, but a long hooked nose lent grotesqueness to a face marked with cunning, rather than dignity. Its ugliness was emphasized by the old felt hat which he wore—its sole ornament the leaden figure of a saint. Until the close of his life he wore the meanest clothes. Thus he traversed France, avoiding all ceremony, entering towns by back streets, receiving ambassadors in wayside huts, dining in public houses, enjoying the loose manners and language of his associates, and incidently learning, at first hand, the condition of his people and the possibility of using or taxing them—his need of them, rather than theirs of him. He was not an agreeable companion, violent in his passions, nervous, restless, and in old age extremely irascible. His religiosity was genuine if degenerate. He tried to bribe the saints of his enemies as he did their ministries. During the last two or three years of his life Louis lived in great isolation in the chateau of Plessis-les-Tours” (Shotwell).

*III Hen. VI*, III, iii; *iv*, i, 11; *v*, vii, 38.

*Rich. III*, III, vii, 182.

## HOUSE OF VALOIS-ORLEANS



FROISSART, Jean ; was born at Valenciennes about 1337 and educated for the church, but spent his youth in gaiety and dissipation. At the age of twenty he began to write the history of the wars waged during his days, in France, England, Scotland, and Spain. The first part of his Chronicle, which deals with the events of the years 1326-56, was principally compiled from the writings of Jean le Bel, canon of Liège. Having completed this he set out for England in 1360, where he received a gracious welcome from Philippa of Hainault, wife of Edward III. In 1364 he travelled to Scotland on horseback, where his reputation as a poet and historian gained for him a welcome from David Bruce. He was entertained for fifteen days at Dalkeith Castle by William Earl of Douglas, the exploits of whose house Froissart has frequently celebrated in his Chronicle. In 1366 he journeyed to Aquitaine in the retinue of the Black Prince, and two years later was in Italy. Before 1384 he had attached himself to Wenceslas Duke of Brabant, upon whose death he repaired to the court of Guy Count of Blois, who persuaded him to devote himself to the Chronicle, the second volume of which was finished in 1388. About the same time he set out from Blois on a visit to Gaston Phebus Count de Foix, in company with the good knight Espaing de Lyon, of which journey he has left a very interesting record. In 1390 he settled in Flanders and resumed the work on his Chronicles.

Five years later he revisited England and was cordially welcomed by Richard II, returning after three months to Chimay, where he obtained a canonry, and where he remained until he died in 1410.

Froissart's famous book deals with the periods between 1326 and 1400 and, though mainly occupied with the affairs of France, England, Scotland, and Flanders, supplies much valued information with regard to Germany, Italy, and Spain, and even touches occasionally on events in Hungary and the Balkan Peninsula. An historian-errant, he gathered his material in courts and on highways, from the lips of the lords and knights, the squires and heralds whom he encountered. He was a born story-teller and his pages glow with colour, while, as Villemain says, "In certain battle-pieces Froissart's style is truly Homeric." The main defects of his work are the frequent repetitions and the negligent arrangement of the facts; but few historians have been less critical or so uniformly delightful.

*I Hen. VI, I, ii, 29.*

GAM, Davy or David. This valiant Welsh warrior's real name was Dafydd ab Llewelyn. "Gam" is a nickname meaning "squinting" which, like other Welsh nicknames, became equivalent to a surname. He is described in some verses, ascribed to Owen Glendower, as a short, red-haired man with a squint. Gam possessed fair estates in the lordship of Brecon which had lapsed to the crown by the accession of Henry IV, but remained faithful to the king on the revolt of Owen Glendower, for which fidelity he was rewarded in 1401 by confiscate lands in South Wales. He was taken prisoner by Glendower in 1412 but was ransomed by his father. In 1415, accompanied by three foot-archers only, he accompanied Henry V to France. Before the battle of Agincourt he was sent to reconnoitre and in reply to the king's enquiry as to their number, the valiant Welshman is reported to have said, "May it please you, my liege, there are enow to be killed, enow to be taken prisoners, and enow to run away." He was slain during the engagement, and there is a tradition that he was knighted for his valour while dying on the field of battle, though Shakespeare simply calls him Davy Gam, Esquire. He is said to have married Gwenllian, daughter of Gwilym, son of Hywel Grach, leaving a family, his daughter becoming the mother of William Herbert, first Earl of Pembroke of that House.

Some of Gam's descendants are buried in the parish church of Llanfrynach, Brecon. French says that he married a sister of Owen Glendower, but this rests on no early authority and, like the story that he plotted against the life of Owen while attending the Welsh parliament at Machynlleth, is probably a misstatement.

"It has been suggested that David is the original of Shakespeare's Fluellen. This is not at all an improbable conjecture, as Fluellen is plainly a corruption of Llewelyn, and David was generally called David Llewelyn, or ab Llewelyn. The reference to him in Raleigh shows that his name was familiar to the age of Elizabeth" (Tout).

*Hen. V*, iv, viii, 109.

GARDINER, Stephen : Bishop of Winchester, was the reputed son of John Gardiner, a cloth-worker of Bury St. Edmunds, where he was born between 1483 and 1490. He was educated at Trinity Hall, Cambridge, where he took his D.C.L. in 1520. In 1524 he was made tutor to a son of the Duke of Norfolk, to whose family he remained firmly attached throughout his life. Norfolk introduced him to Wolsey and the latter made him his private secretary. He was sent to Rome by Henry to obtain the pope's consent to the divorce, and wrung from him his consent to a second commission and, though advocating a "middle course" on the divorce question, he compiled a reply to Katherine's counsel at Rome. On his return he was made private secretary to the king, and from this time he is frequently referred to in official correspondence as "Mister Stevens". (Secretaries in those days were frequently designated by their christian names only.) Gardiner became Bishop of Winchester in 1531 and was a member of the court that invalidated Katherine's marriage. He signed the renunciation of obedience to the papal jurisdiction, and published his famous oration, *De vera Obedientia*, in which he maintained the supremacy of secular princes over the church. Being opposed to Cranmer and Cromwell he fell out of favour for a time and retired to his diocese. He had a strong dislike for Cranmer, whom he regarded as the "arch-heretic" and the harshness of his disposition is well brought out in the play. After the fall of Cromwell, Gardiner's political influence again became supreme, and he inspired the Six Articles of 1539. In the funeral obsequies at Henry's interment, Gardiner assumed

the leading part, and was the chief celebrant at the mass. On Edward's accession, Gardiner was excluded from the council of state, deprived of his see, and imprisoned in the Tower on account of his opposition to doctrinal changes. On Mary's accession he officiated at her coronation, was reinstated in his see, and appointed Lord Chancellor in 1553. In the next year he procured the re-enactment of the statute *De Haeretico Comburendo*, and took part against Rogers, though he tried to save Cranmer and Northumberland. He opposed the Spanish marriage, but advocated great severity towards Elizabeth, whom he caused to be declared illegitimate by act of parliament. He published a controversial work against the teaching of Bucer. Gardiner died of gout at Whitehall in 1555 and was buried in his cathedral at Winchester.

*Hen. VIII*, II, ii ; IV, i, 101 ; v, i, iii.

GARGRAVE, Sir Thomas. The fatal shot which struck down the Earl of Salisbury as he besieged Orleans, also wounded one of his chief officers, Sir Thomas Gargrave, who died of wounds within two days. His family seat was Gargrave and Nosthall in the West Riding of Yorkshire.

*I Hen. VI*, I, iv.

GARTER KING AT ARMS. This important official, introduced in the coronation procession of Anne Bullen in 1533, was Thomas Wriothesley, who had been appointed to that office in 1529. His father, John Wriothesley, had occupied the same office under Richard III when that monarch founded the College of Heralds in 1483. In 1538 Thomas Wriothesley was appointed ambassador to the Netherlands, to propose a marriage between Henry VIII and the Duchess of Milan. He was knighted in 1540, and made Constable of Southampton Castle in the succeeding year. He formulated the offensive and defensive alliance between Henry VIII and the Emperor Charles V, which resulted in a joint invasion of France in 1544, in which year he was created Baron Wriothesley, while in the same year he was appointed Lord Chancellor. He was appointed by Henry VIII one of his executors, and a privy councillor to Edward VI who, in 1547, created him first Earl of Southampton. He died in 1550 at his palace in Holborn. It is difficult to trace in Southampton's career any motive beyond that of self-aggrandizement. Under Cromwell he was



GAUNT]

an enemy of bishops and a patron of reformers, but after the death of the former, Henry adopted a more conservative policy and Wriothesley returned to Catholicism.

The grandson of his second son, Henry Wriothesley, third Earl of Southampton, earned the proud title of "the friend of Shakespeare."

*Hen. VIII*, iv, i; v, v. Stage direction.

GAUNT, John of. So called from his birth at Ghent, where his mother was staying in 1340 during her husband's campaign in France, was the fourth son of Edward III. In 1342 he was created Earl of Richmond, while in 1359 he married Blanche, second daughter and co-heiress of Henry Duke of Lancaster, succeeding to her father's title and estates in 1362. He led the first division of the Black Prince's expedition to Spain, distinguishing himself at Najera in 1367. Two years later he became Captain of Calais and Guisnes; was present with the Black Prince at the taking of Limoges in 1370, and, in the next year, on the retirement of his brother owing to ill-health, became Lieutenant of Aquitaine. But he resigned his command in July of that year, and while still at Bordeaux married Constance, daughter of Pedro the Cruel, assuming the title of King of Castile in 1372. In the closing years of his father's reign, owing to the illness of the Prince of Wales, John of Gaunt became the principal figure in domestic politics. The fact that the heir was an infant, and the increasing power gained by Lancaster, prompted the suspicion that he was aiming at the succession. The Black Prince, who was exasperated at Gaunt's mismanagement of the French War, attacked him in the "Good Parliament" of 1376, and many of his supporters were dismissed from office. In the midst of his reforms, the Prince died and the parliament dissolved, but not before Richard of Bordeaux had been recognized as heir to the throne. Gaunt was the personal protector of Wycliffe at much hazard to himself, and the steady friend of Geoffrey Chaucer, who married a younger sister of the duke's third wife. On the accession of his nephew, Lancaster retired from the court to Kenilworth, but was recalled to give his advice on the French war. In 1378 he was again appointed Lieutenant of Aquitaine, but failed to take St. Malo, whereupon the expedition ingloriously returned, Gaunt incurring thereby great odium. As commander of the Border he made

peace with Scotland on the outbreak of Wat Tyler's rebellion in 1381, but was compelled to take refuge in Scotland owing to the insurgents' hatred of him. Towards the end of 1385, a serious quarrel broke out between the king and Lancaster, and to avoid arrest the latter fled to his castle at Pontefract, which he fortified to withstand a siege. But a reconciliation was effected and he accompanied Richard on his Scottish expedition at the end of that year. In 1386 he proceeded to Portugal, and joined John of Avis, king of that country, in an invasion of Castile. The king of Portugal married Lancaster's daughter, Philippa, whereupon John of Castile hastened to open negotiations for the hand of Lancaster's daughter Catherine, by his second wife, Constance of Castile, and on the consummation of this alliance Gaunt resigned his claims to the throne. He now returned home and mediated between Richard II and his enemies, chief of whom was his brother Gloucester. In 1390 Richard created Gaunt Duke of Aquitaine and for several years kept him employed abroad. He supported the king's French marriage but scandalized the royal family by marrying his mistress, Catherine Swynford, in 1396. His brother Gloucester formed, with the Earls of Arundel and Warwick, an alliance against the king's policy. Lancaster and his son, Henry of Hereford, gathered troops for the king's defence and took a prominent part in the arrest and trial of these lords. But in 1398 there began the quarrel between Hereford and Norfolk, which terminated in their banishment. Lancaster did not long survive his son's disgrace and died at Ely House, Holborn, in 1399, his noble palace, the Savoy, having been sacked and burnt by the rebels under Wat Tyler. He was buried in St. Paul's by the side of his first wife. Shakespeare gives a graphic account of his last hours in the play of Richard II.

*Rich. II.*, I, i, ii, iii, iv, 54; II, i, iii, 100ff.; III, iii, 109.

*I Hen. IV.*, II, ii, 70; V, i, 45.

*II Hen. IV.*, III, ii, 49ff.

*I Hen. VI.*, II, v, 77.

*II Hen. VI.*, I, i, 19; III, iii, 81f.

GAWSEY, Sir Nicholas. This knight was Sir Nicholas Goushill of Hovingham, Notts. His son, Sir Robert Goushill (who had married the widow of the "Duke of Norfolk" in *Rich. II.*), was also killed in the battle of Shrewsbury, 1403.

*I Hen. IV.*, V, iv, 45.

## GEOFFREY ]

**GEOFFREY Plantagenet**, Count of Brittany, the fourth son of Henry II, was born in 1158. When but eight years of age he was betrothed to Constance, the daughter of Conan the Little, Count of Brittany, then but a child of five years, and adopted by his father-in-law as his heir. In 1171 Conan died and Geoffrey succeeded to his dominions. Two years later he joined his brothers, Henry and Richard, in their rebellion against their father. Henry and his sons were reconciled and in 1178 Geoffrey was knighted. He assisted Philip II of France against his rebellious lords while in 1181 he married Constance. By order of his father he made war on his brother Richard, occupied Limoges by treachery, and, after a temporary reconciliation with Richard, joined John against him. After further engagements against his father and brothers, he plotted with Philip II for the possession of Anjou. But he was trampled to death at a tournament at Paris in 1186, being then but 28 years of age.

“ Geoffrey was good-looking and fairly tall, a good soldier and an eloquent speaker, but he was false and plausible, universally distrusted and known as a mischief-maker and a contriver of evil ” (Hunt). He left a daughter, Eleanor, and after his death his wife gave birth to an heir, the unfortunate Prince Arthur.

*John*, I, i, 8 ; II, i, 99ff. ; III, iv, 46 ; IV, i, 22.

**GENERAL OF FRENCH FORCES.** When the two Talbots were slain at Castillon in 1453, fighting against overwhelming numbers, the French forces were commanded by Marshals Andrea de Valle, Lord of Loheaus, and the Sieur de Jalognes.

I *Hen.* VI, iv, ii.

**GENTLEMAN-USHER** to Wolsey, who remained his faithful minister to the last, was an eyewitness from whom Shakespeare has derived much of his story for the play of *Henry VIII*. This was George Cavendish, elder son of Thomas Cavendish. He was born in 1500 and married Margaret Kemp, the niece of Sir John More. In 1526 or 1527 he entered the service of Wolsey as gentleman-usher. When Wolsey lost the royal favour, Cavendish stayed with him until his death at Leicester. In 1530 Cavendish returned to his home in Suffolk, where he lived a quiet life. In the reign of Mary he commenced to write the life of his beloved master but the work long remained in manu-

script and was not published until the reign of Elizabeth. In his "Life of Wolsey" he gives a most minute description of the transactions wherein the King, Cardinal, Queen Katherine, Anne Bullen, and Cranmer took part and which are so vividly reproduced in the play. The work was not published until 1598 but Holinshed possessed a manuscript copy. "The view of Wolsey taken by Cavendish is substantially the same as that of Shakespeare, and it is by no means improbable that Shakespeare had read Cavendish in manuscript. Cavendish writes with the fullest admiration for Wolsey and sympathy with his aims; but reflection had taught him the pathetic side of all worldly aims. He admits Wolsey's haughtiness, his 'respect to the honour of his person rather than to his spiritual profession', but this does not diminish his personal affection or destroy the glamour of the cardinal's glory" (Creighton).

*Hen. VIII*, II, iv.

GEORGE (1). Duke of Clarence. See Clarence (3).

*III Hen. VI*, I, iv, 74; II, i, 138ff., vi, 106; v, i, 76, v, 84.

*Rich. III*, I, i, 46ff.

GEORGE (2). Stanley. See Stanley (4).

*Rich. III*, IV, iv, 497, v, 3; v, iiif., v, 9.

GILBERT (1). Talbot. See Talbot (4).

*Rich. III*, IV, v, 10.

GILBERT (2). Peck. See Peck.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 218; II, i, 20.

GLANSDALE, Sir William. "A stern rude soldier of fortune" (Serle), perished at Orleans by the breaking of a drawbridge which was struck by a cannon shot. Owing to the weight of his armour he sank in the Loire, where he was drowned with many more knights and soldiers. Shakespeare makes Glansdale, in the only words spoken by him, take up his position at the place where he was to assault the town at which he lost his life.

*I Hen. VI*, I, iv.

GLENDDOWER, Owen; Welsh rebel, more correctly Owain ab Gruffydd, was born about 1359. He claimed descent from Llewelyn, the last Prince of Wales. "It was afterwards

believed that great prodigies attended Owen's birth, and contemporaries thought that he had magic help against the English. The story, often told, that at the time of his birth the horses in his father's stables were found standing in blood, is really told of Sir Edmund Mortimer [Mortimer 3] in all the original authorities" (Tout). Glendower became a student of English law at Westminster and in 1385 served in the Scottish campaign of Richard II. Subsequently, he took service under Henry of Lancaster but headed a Welsh rebellion against him on his accession as Henry IV, Wales being firmly attached to Richard II. Moreover, Owen had been previously incensed by the rudeness with which Henry's parliament had treated his petition for redress when Lord Ruthyn seized his estates. At first Glendower was brilliantly successful. Soon all North Wales was in revolt and he assumed the title of Prince of Wales. Henry heard of the Welsh rising when he was at Leicester on his way back from his Scottish expedition and he at once set out to suppress it. Though the king penetrated as far as Anglesey, Owen kept out of the way, and the royal army was compelled to retreat for want of provisions. In 1401, Glendower suddenly invaded South Wales where Hotspur was Warden but was defeated. After Hotspur's resignation, the revolt broke out again and the king, with his son Prince Henry, invaded North Wales. Owen again avoided a pitched battle but continually harassed the royal forces, from which he took much booty. But he was repulsed when he made an attack on Caernarvon. He now opened negotiations for peace through the Earl of Northumberland but all the time was seeking help from Scotland, France, and Ireland. In the next year Glendower captured Reginald de Grey and Sir Edmund Mortimer, the latter of whom married his daughter. He was continually engaged in conflicts with Prince Henry until the revolt of the Percies in 1403. He failed to join the Percies at Shrewsbury, though he is said to have watched the conflict from a distant tree. The rapid march of the king had prevented his forces arriving in time to assist their allies. After their defeat, Owen ravaged the English border, while in the next year, aided by French and Bretons, he captured Harlech Castle and the town of Cardiff. In 1405 he concluded an alliance with France and summoned a Welsh parliament. It seems to have been about now that Glendower, Mortimer, and Percy signed the famous tripartite treaty, though Shakespeare, following Hall, places

it before the battle of Shrewsbury. During the year he was twice defeated by Prince Henry and his influence began to wane. Two of his sons were captured or slain, though he himself continued to hold out in North Wales. The accession of Henry V was followed by the issue of a general pardon but Glendower does not seem to have accepted it. His wife, daughter (Lady Mortimer), and other children together with his grandchildren fell into the new king's hands. But in spite of negotiations the old hero refused to surrender and it is thought that he died in the mountains of sheer starvation about 1416. He was buried in the churchyard of Monington-upon-Wye, Herefordshire.

*Rich. II*, III, i, 48.

*I Hen. IV*, I, i, 40, iii, 88ff.; II, iii, 27, iv, 874f.; III, i; IV, i, 131, iv, 16; v, v. 40.

*II Hen. IV*, I, iii, 72; III, i, 103.

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 41.

GLOUCESTER (1). Duke of. This was Thomas of Woodstock, the seventh and youngest son of Edward III and Philippa of Hainault. He was born in 1354 and at the age of twenty was married to one of the richest heiresses of the time, Eleanor de Bohun, in whose right he was styled Earl of Essex. On the accession of his nephew as Richard II in 1377 he was created Earl of Buckingham. When a French and Spanish fleet ravaged the south coast in 1380, Thomas and his brother Edmund prevented them from landing at Dover and, following them down the Channel, captured eight of their ships off Brest. Though Buckingham was offended when Gaunt married his son Henry to Mary de Bohun, the younger sister of Thomas's wife, the attempts of Richard II to establish arbitrary government drew the brothers closer together. In 1385 he was created Duke of Gloucester. But he now took the lead of the opposition to the king and his favourite Michael de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk. Gloucester was one of the judges who tried and condemned Suffolk and he is said to have threatened Richard with the fate of Edward II. His estrangement from the king increased and in 1388 he took up arms, along with Arundel and Warwick, against Richard and his favourites. They would have deposed Richard but for the intervention of Hereford and Nottingham. After twelve

## GLOUCESTER]

months Richard regained the reins of government and Gloucester, being naturally in disgrace, went abroad for a short time. In 1392 Gloucester was appointed Lieutenant of Ireland but was soon superseded by the young Earl of March. Gloucester disapproved of the king's second marriage and the signing of peace with France. It was alleged that he was engaged in a fresh conspiracy along with Arundel and Warwick and in 1397 he was arrested by Richard in person and conveyed to Calais, where he was placed in the custody of Nottingham. When called upon to produce his prisoner, Mowbray announced that he was dead. In the first parliament of Henry IV a certain John Halle, a former servant of Nottingham, swore that, by the orders of the king, Gloucester had been smothered beneath a feather bed by William Serle, a servant of Richard's chamber, and several esquires of the Earls of Nottingham and Rutland. Halle, who said he had kept the door while the deed was done, was executed and, though he was not publicly examined, there seems no strong reason to doubt the main features of the story. Gloucester's proud, fierce, and intolerant nature provoked the lasting and fatal resentment of his royal nephew. The body was brought to England and buried in Westminster Abbey.

*Rich. II.*, I, i, 100f.; II, i, 128; IV, i, 8ff.

*II Hen. VI.*, II, ii, 16.

GLOUCESTER (2). Duchess of; wife of the above, was Eleanor, elder daughter of Humphrey de Bohun, the last Earl of Hereford, Essex, and Northampton of that house. She brought her husband many wide lands, including Pleshy Castle in Essex, which became his chief seat. Her only son, Humphrey, died, unmarried, in Anglesey, probably of the plague, in 1399. Eleanor died of grief at the death of her son in the same year while residing at Pleshy and was buried beside her husband. But French says that she died at Barking Abbey, whither she had retired and taken the veil on the death of her husband.

*Rich. II.*, I, ii; II, ii, 90.

GLOUCESTER (8). Duke of; "the good Duke Humphrey" was the youngest son of Henry IV by his first wife Mary de Bohun. He was born in 1391 and remained in England during

his father's banishment. On his father's accession he was knighted. His youth was extremely dissolute and by the age of thirty he had undermined his constitution by his excesses. He was created Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Pembroke in 1414 by his brother Henry V, whom he accompanied to France. While commanding one of the three English divisions at Agincourt he was wounded and thrown to the ground by the Duke of Alencon, but was rescued by his royal brother, who bestrode his prostrate body. In that same year he was appointed Warden of the Cinque Ports and Constable of Dover Castle. In this office he received the Emperor Sigismund at Dover in the next year. Gloucester took part in Henry's second French expedition, being appointed Governor of Rouen in 1419, in which year he was appointed one of the commissioners to treat for peace and for Henry's marriage with Katherine of France. He was in England on Henry's death in 1422 and was warned by the dying monarch not selfishly to prefer his own personal interests to those of the nation. He was appointed deputy for the regent Bedford during his absence in France but claimed the regency for himself. This was disallowed, though he continued as deputy with the title of protector. In 1422 Gloucester married Jacqueline of Hainault, who was then a fugitive in England, thereby dealing a fatal blow to English interests in France, as his wife's possessions made him a competitor with the Duke of Burgundy for the mastery of the Netherlands. As a result the latter concluded a truce with France after Humphrey's arrival in Hainault in 1424. But having found a new mistress in his wife's entourage, Eleanor daughter of Lord Cobham of Sternborough, he returned to England and allowed Burgundy to capture Jacqueline and her territory.

During Gloucester's absence abroad Henry Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, had become chancellor. Humphrey was embittered by failure, broken in health, and crippled by debt, and after being rebuked by the council in 1425 a personal quarrel broke out between him and Beaufort, culminating in a riot in London between their followers. Bedford was recalled and a reconciliation took place. In 1428, after Jacqueline had submitted to Philip of Burgundy and repudiated her marriage with Gloucester, the latter married his mistress, Eleanor Cobham. The mistakes of his enemies alone gave Gloucester a further lease of power and he now posed as the champion of English liberty by refusing to acknowledge Beaufort as papal



## GLOUCESTER]

legate in 1428. When Beaufort accompanied Henry VI for his coronation in France, Gloucester was appointed Warden of the Kingdom and actively prosecuted his quarrel with Beaufort, urging his removal from the council, his see of Winchester, and his prosecution under the statute of *præmunire*. Beaufort's friends retaliated by attempting to deprive Gloucester of his salary, whereupon he seized the bishop's plate and jewels, removed Archbishop Kemp from the chancellorship, and dismissed the other friends of Beaufort from office. In 1434 he quarrelled with Bedford over the conduct of the French war, the young king vainly trying to restore harmony. But the death of Bedford in 1435 rendered Gloucester heir-presumptive to the throne. On the defection of Burgundy taking place, Humphrey was appointed Captain of Calais, but had the mortification of seeing it relieved by Edmund Beaufort, the cardinal's nephew. In 1436 Gloucester was appointed Count of Flanders but effected nothing, while in that same year he returned to denounce Beaufort as a friend of France. But his influence over Henry VI was now at an end and he was powerless to prevent the proceedings against his wife for witchcraft in 1441. He vainly endeavoured to press an Armagnac marriage upon Henry as a counter-scheme to the plan of Beaufort for an alliance with Margaret of Anjou. Still Gloucester diplomatically joined in the welcome to Margaret on her arrival in England. He also advocated the violation of the truce with France in 1445, but in vain. Henry now began to fear that Gloucester had some designs upon his person. He was arrested and, dying in custody leaving no issue, was buried at St. Albans in 1447. The suddenness of his death gave rise to suspicions of foul play but these seem to be groundless, for his health had been ruined by his excesses and he was very weak at the time of his arrest.

“ Gloucester was a man of great and restless energy, hot-tempered and impulsive, of gracious and popular manners, eloquent, plausible, and affable. His title of the ‘ good duke ’ is due, not to his moral virtues, but to the applause of men of letters whom he patronised, and to the popular notion that he was a patriot. Shakespeare's portrait of him hands down the popular tradition, and nearly all the chroniclers, foreign and native, praise him ; but the broad facts of his life show him unprincipled, factious, and blindly selfish. Lydgate boasted that Humphrey maintained the church with such energy ‘ that

in this land no Lollard dare abide'. Though avaricious, he was a liberal giver. He was a real student and lover of literature, and an indefatigable collector of books. The catalogue of his books presented to Oxford best indicates the range of his tastes. Humphrey's donations first gave the university of Oxford an important library of its own, but his collection was dispersed in the reign of Edward VI and only three volumes of the duke's collection remain in the Bodleian" (Tout).

II *Hen. IV*, IV, iv, v; v, ii.

*Hen. V*, I, ii; III, i, ii, 59f.; IV, i, iii, vii, viii; v, ii.

I *Hen. VI*, I, i, iii; II, iv, 118; III, i, iv; IV, i; v, i, v.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, iii; II, i, iii, iv; III, i, ii, 20ff.

GLOUCESTER (4), Duchess of. This was Eleanor Cobham, first the mistress and afterwards the wife of Humphrey of Gloucester. She was the third daughter of Sir Reginald Cobham of Sternborough, Surrey, who was the eldest son of Reginald, the second lord Cobham, who is alluded to in *Richard II* as one of the companions of Bolingbroke when he returned from exile. She married Duke Humphrey in 1428. Through the malignancy of her husband's enemies she was arrested and brought to trial on the absurd charge of "necromancy, witchcraft, heresy, and treason," by means of which she was said to have attempted the king's life. She was arrested in 1441 and the trial took place in St. Stephen's Chapel, Westminster, the "Hall of Justice" in the play. As the duchess had to perform "three days open penance", it may be taken for granted that the scene in the play represents the last of the series, as the sheriff states that his commission is at an end. "She landed at Queen's Hive, and so went through Cheap and St. Michael's Cornhill, at which time the Maior, Sheriffs, and Crafts of London received her and accompanied her." Stow, however, says nothing about the white sheet, the bare feet, or the papers pinned on her back as mentioned in the play. She was afterwards committed to the care of Sir John Stanley and imprisoned at Chester and Kenilworth, being transferred to the Isle of Man in 1446, where she is said to have died in Peel Castle in 1454. The rigorous confinement meted out to her was far different from the promise in II, iv, 94-99.

II *Hen. VI*, I, ii, iii, iv; II, iii, iv. .

GLOUCESTER]

GLOUCESTER (5), Duke of. Richard, son of Richard Duke of York and afterwards king as Richard III, q.v.

III *Hen. VI*, II, vi, 108; III, ii; IV, i, v, vi, 81, vii;  
v, i, iii, v, vi, vii.

*Rich. III*, I, i, ii, iii, iv, 11ff.; II, i, ii, iii, 27, iv, 12f.;  
III, i, iv, v, vii.

GLOUCESTER (6), Duchess of. This was Anne Neville, the wife of the above and afterwards queen. See Anne (2).

*Rich. III*, IV, i.

GOUGH, or Goffe, Matthew; this eminent soldier, who was really killed by the rebels on London Bridge, had served in France under Talbot, Scales, Fastolfe, and other distinguished leaders. Sir Matthew was the third son of John Gough of Wales. The name of this valiant captain does not usually appear in the lists of the dramatis personæ, though he is brought on the stage in IV, vii. In IV, v, 11, Lord Scales, who was then guarding the Tower, tells the citizens, who had applied to him for aid, that he would send Matthew Gough to them. In scene vii in many modern editions the stage direction is, "Enter on one side Cade and his company, and on the other citizens and the King's Forces, headed by Matthew Gough. They fight, the citizens are routed, and Gough is slain."

II *Hen. VI*, IV, v, 11; v, vii.

GOVERNOR (1), of Paris. When Paris was captured by the English, Bedford appointed John of Luxemburg as the governor. He may, therefore, be the person introduced at the coronation of Henry VI in 1431 to take the oath of fealty to him as king of France.

I *Hen. VI*, IV, i.

GOVERNOR (2), of Harfleur. When the town was first invested, Jean Lord D'Estouteville held the chief command at Harfleur. But when reinforcements were thrown into the town under Raoul Sieur de Gaucourt, that leader seems to have assumed the direction of the defence. He was also the principal spokesman for his side in the parleys with the English for the surrender of the town after it had borne a siege of 80 days in 1415. Both leaders were sent to England as prisoners, where the latter wrote a narrative of the siege.

*Hen. V*, III, iii.

GOWER, of the king's party. This was probably Thomas Gower, eldest son of Sir Thomas Gower of Stitenham, Yorks. He afterwards served with Henry V in France and was made governor of Mans, a place which he nobly defended in the reign of Henry VI.

*II Hen. IV, II, i.*

GRANDPRÉ, Duke of; was a leader in the main French body at Agincourt along with Bar and Alencon. He fell during the course of the battle. The Count of Grandpré is named as one of the twelve Great Peers of France assembled in the parliament at Paris in 1223.

*Hen. V, III, v, 44, vii, 138; IV, viii, 104.*

GREEN, Sir Henry; one of the favourites of Richard II, was one of the six commoners appointed to act with twelve peers as commissioners in 1398. These commissioners were invested with the whole power of the Lords and Commons. Sir Henry was the second son of Sir Henry Green, a justice of the King's Bench under Edward III, his mother being Catherine, the daughter of Sir John Drayton of Drayton, Northants. Along with his companions he was besieged by Bolingbroke in Bristol Castle and, after its surrender, was executed without trial.

*Rich. II, I, iii, iv; II, I, ii; III, I, ii, 141, IV, 58.*

GREGORY de Cassado. See Cassado.

*Hen. VIII, III, ii, 321.*

GREY (1). Sir Thomas; was the second son of Sir Thomas Grey of Berwick, who was also Constable of Norham Castle. His mother was Jane, daughter of John Lord Mowbray. The family seat was at Heton, Northumberland. Grey married Alice Neville, daughter of the Earl of Westmorland. He was executed at Southampton in 1415 on a charge of high treason, being implicated in the plot of Richard Earl of Cambridge against Henry V.

*Hen. V, II, Pro. 25; II, ii.*

GREY (2). Sir John; eighth Lord Ferrers of Groby, born in 1482, was the elder son of Edward Grey. Edward married Elizabeth, daughter of Henry Ferrers and heiress of William sixth Lord Ferrers of Groby. On the death of his wife's grand-

## GREY]

father Grey succeeded him as seventh Lord, being succeeded in the title by his son John, who is commonly called Sir John Grey. Sir John married, in 1450, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Richard Woodville, afterwards the queen of Edward IV. He was killed fighting for Henry VI at the second battle of St. Albans in 1461. In *III Hen. VI*, III, ii, it is wrongly stated by Edward IV that he lost his life "in quarrel of the House of York." Correct reference is made by Gloucester in *Rich. III*, I, ii, where he says, "You and your husband Grey were factious for the House of Lancaster," and again, "Was not your husband in Margaret's battle at St. Albans slain?" In some texts Shakespeare erroneously refers to him as Sir Richard Grey in *III Hen. VI*, III, ii, and therein he deviates from Hall, his authority, apparently without cause.

*III Hen. VI*, III, ii, 2.

*Rich. III*, I, iii, 127.

GREY (3), *LADY*; afterwards queen of Edward IV. See Elizabeth (1).

*III Hen. VI*, III, ii, iii, 174; IV, i, 2f.

*Rich. III*, I, i, 64.

GREY (4), *LORD*. This character, sometimes styled the "Lord Richard Grey" was, strictly speaking, only of knightly degree. He was the younger son of Sir John Grey and Elizabeth Woodville and brother of the Marquis of Dorset. After the death of his step-father, Edward IV, he and his uncle Anthony Woodville, Earl Rivers, had charge of the young king for a time. The prince was at Ludlow Castle and was there proclaimed as Edward V. While conducting him towards London for his coronation, on their arrival at Northampton Earl Rivers sent forward the young king under the care of Sir Richard Grey. But they were overtaken at Stony Stratford by the Protector who, after supping in apparent friendship with Rivers, Vaughan, and Grey, had them arrested and sent to prison for no fault but their loyalty to their late master's children, a heinous crime in Richard's eyes. He charged them with having estranged from him his nephew's affection and they were committed to Pontefract Castle. Soon afterwards Sir Richard Ratcliffe received orders to have Grey executed without process or judgment and he carried out the sentence with promptitude and rudeness in 1485.

Hall gives Lord Rivers, Lord Richard Grey, Sir Thomas Vaughan, and Sir Richard Haute; the last named having been Lieutenant of the Tower and Sheriff of Kent, in which county his family had been seated at Waddenhall from the time of Richard II.

*Rich. III.* I, iii; II, i, iv, 42; III, ii, 67, iii; IV, iv, 69;  
v, i, 3, iii, 141.

For genealogical table see sub Woodville.

GRIFFITH, gentleman-usher to Queen Katherine. Wright gives his name as Griffin Richardes. George Cavendish says that the queen on quitting the court of trial, "took her way straight out leaning on the arm of one of her servants, who was her General Receiver, called Master Griffith." Shakespeare has rendered the name of this gentleman for ever memorable by the noble eulogy which he makes him pronounce on the "great child of honour," Wolsey. Richard Griffith is mentioned in the State Papers of Henry VIII as present with Queen Katherine at Ampthill in 1553 but there is no Richard in the genealogy of Sir George Griffith, knight of the body to Henry VIII.

*Hen. VIII.* iv, ii.

GUILDFORDS, The; were a family seated for at least eight generations at Rolvenden in Kent, the then representative being Sir John Guildford, controller of the Household to Edward IV. He was one of the four persons to whom the plot against Richard III, in 1483, was revealed. He and his son, Sir Richard, in that year raised forces in Kent to support the claims of Richmond and were attainted in consequence. The son fled to Richmond in Brittany, returned with him, and fought at Bosworth. In 1485 Henry appointed him master of the ordnance, of the armoury, and also made him a privy councillor. His genius evidently lay in the control of artillery and fortifications, engineering and shipbuilding. The lands in Sussex that he reclaimed from the sea are to this day called Guildford Level. He built ships ready for the invasion of France, and accompanied Henry to Boulogne in 1492. In the following year his father died and was buried in Canterbury Cathedral. After Perkin Warbeck's attempt to land at Deal, Guildford was sent into Kent by the king to thank the inhabitants for their loyalty. In 1497 he assisted in defeating the

Cornish rebels at Bloreheath, for which service he was created a banneret. In 1506 he set sail from Rye, along with John Whitby, prior of Gisburn in Yorkshire, on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, where he died in Jerusalem in the September of that year. Guildford's chaplain prepared an account of this pilgrimage, and this was printed in 1511. By his second wife, Joan, sister of Sir Nicholas Vaux, he became the father of Henry Guildford, below.

*Rich. III.*, iv, iii, 505.

GUILDFORD, Sir Henry; son of the above, was appointed Master of the Horse to Henry VIII and standard-bearer of England for life. He was an eminent soldier in the wars against the Moors in Spain and was knighted by Ferdinand of Castile in 1511. He died in 1558. Sir Henry's elder half-brother by his father's first marriage, Sir Edmund Guildford, was the father of Jane who married John Dudley, and their fourth son was Lord Guildford Dudley, the husband of Lady Jane Grey.

*Hen. VIII.*, i, iii, 67, iv, 9.

GUISCHARD DAUPHIN, Sir; great master of France, a French knight who was slain at Agincourt.

*Hen. V.*, iv, viii, 100.

GURNEY, James. "The name Gourney, or Gurney, is of very ancient date; and is found in the roll of Battle Abbey. Hugh de Gourney, a powerful baron in France as well as in England, was the subject of a treaty between Philip of France and Richard I in 1196, and his name occurs in a treaty between Philip and John in 1204" (French).

*John*, i, i.

HARCOURT of the king's party. Courtenay does not know why Shakespeare selected Harcourt as the bearer of the news of Rokesby's success. The Harcourts were considerable persons in this reign but Shakespeare probably took the name at random. French says:

"Sir Thomas Harcourt of Stanton, Oxfordshire, was sheriff of Berkshire in IX Hen. IV, 1407, and it is possible that he is the character in this play, as he would not have held that office unless he had been "of the king's party".

II *Hen. IV.*, iv, iv.

**HASTINGS (1), LORD.** The person who took part in the Archbishop's rebellion was Sir Ralph Hastings, not "Lord". He was the eldest son of Sir Ralph Hastings by Maud, the daughter of Sir Robert de Sutton, of Sutton, Yorks. Hume, who calls him Sir Robert, says that his life was spared. Other writers, followed by Shakespeare, say that he was beheaded.

*II Hen. IV*, i, iii; iv, ii, iv, 84.

**HASTINGS (2), Sir William**; called by Stow, "a good knight and gentle but somewhat distate of living," sheriff of Leicestershire and Warwickshire, was a devoted Yorkist. He was born about 1430, being the son of Sir Leonard Hastings, whose ancestors took the name soon after the Norman Conquest from one of the Cinque Ports. His mother was Alice, the daughter of Lord Camoys. He was highly esteemed by Richard Duke of York, who recommended him to his son Edward. After his accession to the throne Edward created him Lord Hastings of Ashby de la Zouch, Leicestershire, in 1461. He also became master of the Mint, where he introduced the coinage of gold nobles, valued at 100d; Chamberlain of the Royal Household; and Captain of Calais. This latter appointment led to a quarrel between him and the queen, as she desired the post for her brother, Lord Rivers. Hastings was several times an ambassador to Burgundy and France, assisting Edward in raising fresh forces after his escape from Middleham Castle in 1467. Upon Warwick's invasion in 1470, Hastings informed the king of his danger, accompanied him on horseback as far as Lynn in Norfolk, whence Edward sailed to Holland, while Hastings returned to stir up the zeal of the Yorkists. Upon Edward's return, Hastings was instrumental in winning over Clarence to his side, while he also commanded the third division at Barnet. He is said to have taken part in the murder of the Lancastrian Prince Edward after the battle of Tewkesbury. On his deathbed, Edward IV entreated Hastings to be reconciled to the queen. When she proposed that her young son, Edward V, should be escorted to London by a large army, Hastings vehemently opposed the suggestion and passionately demanded whether the army was intended "against the people of England or against the good Duke of Gloucester." He was firmly attached to the children of his late sovereign and declined Richard's overtures, made through Catesby, for his assistance in obtaining the crown. Richard,



## HENRY III]

therefore, determined to remove him as an obstacle to his designs and Shakespeare closely follows history in the scenes in which Hastings appears. Hastings attended the council in the Tower in 1488, in spite of a warning from Stanley, was charged with treason by Gloucester, and immediately taken out and beheaded without trial. His body was buried in St. George's Chapel, Windsor, near that of Edward IV.

By his wife Catherine Neville, relict of William Lord Bonville of Harrington, Hastings left a son, Edward, who became second Lord Hastings and married Mary, daughter of Sir Thomas, Lord Hungerford. Shakespeare has been misled in ascribing the marriage of this great heiress to the father instead of the son. (*III Hen. VI*, iv, i, 47-8.)

William, Lord Hastings, "better known as one of Shakespeare's characters than by his historic fame," built the magnificent castle of Ashby-de-la-Zouch, "of which the stately ruins still interest the traveller" (Scott, *Ivanhoe*).

In most editions the stage direction in *Rich. III*, v, is "Enter Lovel and Ratcliffe with Hastings' head." Mr Theobald properly remarks that on the very same day Ratcliffe was at Pontefract carrying out the execution of Rivers, Grey, and Vaughan, to whose fate Hastings alluded while conversing with his pursuivant. The first quarto has, "Enter Catesby with Hastings' head." This agrees with the ungrateful conduct of that man towards his benefactor and with his whole language in the play, as well as with Gloucester's peremptory order for the beheading of Hastings, "Lovel and Catesby, look that it be done," as in the quarto and in some modern editions.

*III Hen. VI*, iv, i, iii, v, vi, 82, vii; v, vii.

*Rich. III*, i, i, iii; ii, i, ii; iii, i, ii, iii, 17, iv, v, 23,

vi, 1f; iv, ii, 125, iv, 69f.; v, i, 8, iii, 148.

HENRY III, king of England, eldest son of king John, was born at Winchester in 1207. He succeeded to the throne at the age of nine and was crowned without delay on the death of his father, the papal legate using a plain hoop of gold. The rebellious barons now deserted Lewis of France and rallied round the young king. At a council held at Bristol, William Marshall, Earl of Pembroke, was appointed by the lords as protector of the kingdom and of the king's person. He at once set about restoring order and settled government. In 1220 Henry was re-crowned at Westminster by Stephen Langton. When the

regent died in 1219 no one was exactly appointed to fill his place and the care of the king's person fell into the hands of Peter de Roches, bishop of Winchester. After a long struggle, Hubert de Burgh, who was supported by Stephen Langton, succeeded in wresting many of the castles from the hands of the foreigners who had received them from king John. In consequence of a rebellion among the baronage, Henry held a council in London in 1223 at which he was required by Langton to confirm the Great Charter. The next few years were occupied with insurrections of the barons and by expeditions against Wales and France to suppress which several unjust exactions were laid upon the people. In 1232, Henry dismissed Hubert de Burgh from his office of justiciar and the twenty-six years of personal rule which show the king's "insincerity and incapacity" began. In 1236 Henry married Eleanor, daughter of Raymond Count of Provence. The king at once surrounded himself with the friends and relatives of his wife and the period of wastefulness and misgovernment continued. Six years later Henry led an unsuccessful invasion of France from which he barely escaped without capture. He brought back more foreigners with him and these assisted the king to lay greater exactions upon the country, but in 1253 he was compelled to reaffirm the charters. But as Henry still continued to set these great bulwarks of English liberty at defiance, the barons attended the parliament at Westminster, 1258, in arms and appointed a committee of twenty-four to carry out necessary reforms. Civil war now broke out and for a time Henry was a prisoner. He was restored to power by the victory of his son Edward at Evesham. The young prince secured many reforms and established ordered government, so that Henry reigned for the rest of his life in peace. He died in 1272 and was buried in Westminster Abbey, which he himself had rebuilt.

"Henry was of middle height, had a well-knit frame, and much muscular strength. He had a refined mind and cultivated tastes; and was liberal and magnificent. He was sincerely religious, and when nothing else could force him to give up his own way, he would yield to a threat of ecclesiastical censure. His life was moral, and he seems to have been a great deal under the influence of his clever and devoted queen. Nevertheless, he was inordinately extravagant and squandered his subjects' money recklessly in gratifying his private tastes and

## HENRY IV]

on his foreign relatives and favourites. Though obstinate, he was infirm of purpose, and no dependence could be placed upon him. Utterly un-English in feeling, he loved to be surrounded by foreigners, and had no sympathy with the tendencies of the nation. Most of his difficulties were of his own making; some part of them, however, arose from the change which was passing over the spirit of the constitution" (Hunt).

*John*, v, vi, 34, vii.

HENRY IV, king of England, was the eldest surviving son of John of Gaunt by his first wife, Blanche of Lancaster. Henry was born in 1367 at his father's castle of Bolingbroke, near Spilsby, Lincolnshire. He was, therefore, sometimes called Henry Bolingbroke but more often Henry of Lancaster, while by the time he was ten years old he was styled Earl of Derby. About 1380 he married Mary de Bohun, younger daughter of the last Earl of Hereford and co-heiress of the earldom. When he was less than twenty Froissart praised his knightly skill. As one of the five Lords Appellant, he opposed Robert de Vere; marched on London and compelled Richard II to grant their demands in 1387. But Henry resisted Arundel's proposal to capture and depose the king. Having won back the king's favour, Henry sought renown in tournaments and crusades, proceeding against Lithuania in 1390 and going on pilgrimage to Jerusalem in 1392. On his return he became a member of the council of regency during Richard's absence in Ireland in 1395; was present with the king in France on his marriage with Isabella in the next year; and supported him in his struggle for absolute power. He joined his father in gathering troops to protect the king and in 1397 was created Duke of Hereford. In the following year he accused the Duke of Norfolk of treason and a trial by combat was appointed. But Richard stopped the proceedings and banished Hereford for ten years, later reduced to six, promising him his heritage on the death of his father. John of Gaunt died in 1399 and Richard, throwing off the mask of friendship, banished Hereford for ever and confiscated his estates. Having appointed his uncle Edmund Duke of York as regent, Richard set out for Ireland again. Shortly afterwards Bolingbroke landed at Ravenspur, not far south of Bridlington, accompanied by the Earl of Arundel, his brother the Archbishop, Sir Thomas Erpingham, and John Northbury, with only fifteen lances. The whole nation flocked

to his banner and Henry marched to Bristol Castle with scarcely any resistance. Here the Earl of Wiltshire, Bushy, and Green were executed. Meanwhile, Richard, landing in Wales, was deserted by his army and submitted to his cousin at Flint. Henry professed that he only sought his earldom, which the king promised to restore and they proceeded to London together to meet the parliament that Richard had summoned. Henry took his seat in parliament and the throne stood empty. After the reading of Richard's resignation, Henry claimed the throne and, having been accepted by parliament, he was led to the royal canopy by the two archbishops. His coronation took place in 1399, and two days afterwards he founded the Order of the Bath. In 1400 he crushed a rising of Richard's supporters, and also made expeditions against the Scots and Welsh. Two years later he married his second wife, Joan of Navarre. But the Franciscans continued to conspire against him. In 1402 he conducted an unsuccessful campaign against the Welsh. In the following year he crushed the Percies at Shrewsbury, defeating the French invaders at Dartmouth the next spring. He narrowly escaped assassination at Eltham in 1404, while in the following year he defeated the northern rebellion under Archbishop Scrope, also capturing the heir to the Scottish throne at sea. In 1406 he was compelled by parliament to nominate a constitutional council, to submit to an audit of accounts, and to reform his household. The Earl of Northumberland was finally defeated at Bramham Moor in 1408, but from that time the health of the king gradually declined and his energy departed. But he refused the overtures of the Beauforts that he should abdicate in favour of his son, and went in progress throughout the country in 1411-12. This exertion proved too much for him and he died in 1413, being buried in Canterbury cathedral. All his life he had been harassed by lack of funds; by risings in favour of his predecessor; by the distrust of his parliaments.

Henry was "of mean stature, but well-proportioned and compact" (Hall). "He was strong and handsome, proud of his good looks, with regular teeth which lasted till his death, and wearing a thick matted beard of a deep russet colour. All through his life he was brave, active, orthodox, devout, and pure. Though a keen partisan from his early youth, he long remained amenable to the influence of more experienced advisers. He seems to have been naturally merciful and

## HENRY V]

trustful of his friends. Bitter experience taught him to be reserved, suspicious, and upon occasion cruel. His courtiers resented his clemency, and urged him to bad acts. His conscience does not seem to have been quite easy in his later years. He had a retentive memory and delighted in the conversation of men of letters, increased Chaucer's pension and patronized Gower. He kept to the end his power of saying sharp things. His activity in affairs of state is seen by his answering petitions himself, and by endorsements in his own hand on state papers" (Tout).

*Rich. II.*, IV, i, 11.

*I Hen. IV.*, I, i, 11; III, ii; v, i, ii, 43, iii, iv, v.

*II Hen. IV.*, I, i, 11; IV, iv, v.

*I Hen. VI.*, I, v, 63.

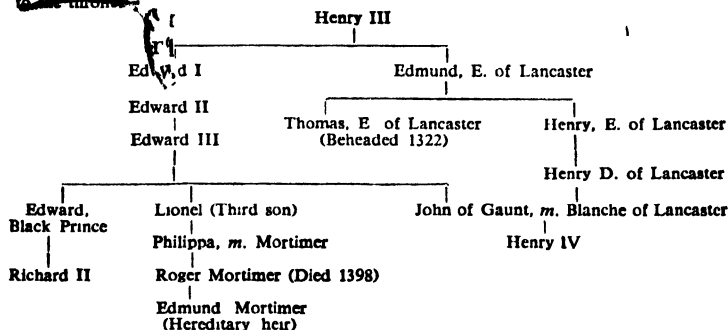
*II Hen. VI.*, II, ii, 23.

*III Hen. VI.*, I, i, 132ff.; III, iii, 83.

## CLAIM OF HENRY IV TO THE ENGLISH THRONE

Henry of Hereford claimed the throne on the grounds of:

- (1) Descent from Henry III. This plea was invalid as Edmund Mortimer, a child, was the hereditary heir. See table below.
- (2) Conquest.
- (3) Bad government of Richard II. This was a valid reason for his deposition, but not for the succession of Henry. Parliament elected Henry and this election gave him his real right to the throne.



**HENRY V**, king of England, born at Monmouth in 1387, the eldest son of Henry IV by Mary de Bohun, ascended the throne in 1418, being then in his 26th year. He is said to have been educated by his uncle, Henry Beaufort, at Queen's College, Oxford. When his father was banished in 1398, the young prince remained in England and attended on Richard II, who

took him with him to Ireland and knighted him there. When the news of the landing of Henry of Lancaster recalled Richard to England, young Henry was sent for safe keeping to the castle of Trim, whence he shortly afterwards joined his father at Chester. On his father's accession he was created Prince of Wales, Duke of Lancaster, and also of Aquitaine. He accompanied the new king on his rapid march against the Welsh rebels in 1400 and for the next six years was engaged in conquests in that country, repeatedly checking Owen Glendower. At this time the leading member of the prince's council was Henry Percy, the celebrated "Hotspur". In 1407 Henry led a force into Scotland, but the Scots yielded without fighting and made a truce for one year. Two years later he became Warden of the Cinque Ports, while for the succeeding two years he governed in the name of his father, who was disabled by illness. In 1411, the Duke of Burgundy, being hard pressed by the Armagnacs, appealed to England for help, and the prince, after overcoming his father's reluctance, sent out an expedition under Gilbert Umfraville, Earl of Kyme. On the removal of the Beauforts from power, owing to the influence of archbishop Arundel, Henry withdrew from court and his French policy was reversed. In the spring of 1413 the king was unable to transact any business owing to his failing health, and it is during this time that, if true, the well-known story of the prince entering the king's chamber and taking away the crown as he lay in a trance, belongs.

Eltham states that on the night of his father's death, the new king visited a recluse at Westminster, made a confession of the sins of his former life, and promised amendment. It is clear that Henry's conduct as a prince was marked by some youthful follies; "they were, however, the frolics of a high-spirited young man, indulged in the open air of town and camp, not the deliberate pursuit of vicious excitement in the fetid atmosphere of a court" (Stubbs). "His youth was spent on the battle-field and in the council chamber, and the popular tradition (immortalized by Shakespeare) of his notorious and dissolute conduct is not supported by any contemporary authority" (Kingsford). The most striking incident in the tradition, his defiance of Gascoigne and his committal to prison by the judge, was obtained by the dramatist from Hall, but the addition supplied by Shakespeare that the prince on becoming king bade the chief justice "still bear the balance

## HENRY V.]

and the sword," is contrary to fact, for shortly after his accession, Henry appointed Sir William Hankford to succeed Gascoigne.

Having given the remains of Richard II honourable burial, and instituted measures for the suppression of Lollardy, including the arrest of Sir John Oldcastle, Henry demanded the restoration of the French territories ceded at the treaty of Bretigny, together with the Norman and Angevin lands, as a condition of his marriage with Katherine of France. On his demands being refused he prepared for an invasion of that country and, after being delayed by the conspiracy formed by Richard Earl of Cambridge, he sailed from Portsmouth (Shakespeare says from Southampton) in 1415 and laid siege to Harfleur. After the capitulation of this town Henry sent back his brother Thomas Duke of Clarence, in charge of a large convoy of sick, and himself with the rest pushed on inland towards Calais. He intended to cross the Somme at Blanche-tache as Edward III had done before Crécy, but being falsely informed that the ford was strongly held by a superior French force, he marched higher up the river, safely crossing at Bethencourt. After futile negotiations the two armies encamped near Agincourt. The French passed the night in feasting and playing at dice for the prisoners whom they confidently expected to take on the morrow, as the English force only numbered some 15,000 men, while the French, massed in three divisions, totalled at least 50,000. The English bivouacked in the open air and occupied themselves with prayer and preparation for the battle, Henry being careful to send out scouts to examine the ground.

Next morning Henry, mounted on a small grey horse and wearing a magnificent crown on his helmet, made an inspiring speech to his soldiers, declaring that England should never pay ransom for him. After several hours fruitless waiting for the French to attack, Henry gave the order to advance, and his archers poured in a shower of shafts. For a time sheer weight of numbers gave the French knights the advantage, but their horses, maddened by the pain of their wounds, were thrown into confusion and became unmanageable, while the dense masses pouring in from behind made all attempts to rally impossible. Then, as the French line wavered, the archers threw away their bows and attacked the second division with sword in hand. The Duke of Alencon, who was

in command, broke through the English line and struck down Humphrey Duke of Gloucester, but Henry stepped over his brother's body and forced Alençon to yield, though he was slain before the king could prevent it. Henry now received a message that a fresh French force had attacked the English in the rear and, before it was discovered that they were a body of peasantry intent on plundering the camp, he had ordered all the prisoners to be slain, only a few of the more illustrious ones escaping the massacre. The third line broke and fled while the English, being too exhausted to attempt pursuit, remained on the field until evening. The king, enquiring the name of a neighbouring castle, ordered the battle to be called after it, Agincourt. Next morning the English resumed their march towards Calais, whence Henry crossed to Dover, being escorted in triumph from that port to London, where he rode to St. Paul's to give thanks for his victory.

While in England he restored the heirs of Mortimer, Percy, and Holland to their estates; made an alliance with Sigismund, king of the Romans and emperor; and laid the foundations of a national navy and army. For these he issued ordinances which entitled him to be considered the founder of our military, maritime, and international law. In 1417 he led a second invasion of France, taking Caen in person. After many other successes, on the murder of John Duke of Burgundy by the Armagnacs Henry concluded an alliance with the new duke, Philip. After much further fighting, negotiations were opened and peace signed at Troyes in 1420 by which Henry was declared the heir of Charles VI, regent of France and Lord of Normandy, and received the hand of Katherine in marriage. But the dauphin, Charles, refused to accept this treaty, and Bedford having brought out English reinforcements, the fighting continued. In 1420 Henry entered Paris in triumph and, having established equitable government in Normandy, returned with his bride to England, caused her to be crowned at Westminster, afterwards going on a progress through England. But the news of the defeat and death of Clarence at Beaugé recalled Henry to the field, and he set out for his third expedition to France in 1421. He also endeavoured to secure peace with Scotland by sending back the young King James I with an English bride.

After retaking several places and driving the dauphin across the Loire, Henry was joined in Paris by the queen with her



infant son. But his health was now failing and though, despite his great weakness, he rode as far as Melun, he was compelled to yield the command to Bedford and was carried to Bois de Vincennes, where he died in 1442, no doubt of dysentery aggravated by the hardships of war. He spent his last hours in arranging for the government after his death, and for the education of his infant son, expressing regret that he had not lived to undertake a new crusade for the delivery of Jerusalem. The funeral procession was very magnificent and the body was laid to rest in the chapel of Edward the Confessor at Westminster.

"Henry was deservedly more loved by his subjects than any English king before or since. . . . In private life he was temperate, chaste, and frugal; sincere and consistent in his devotions, generous and courteous in his dealings with others. He spoke little, but when he did—straightforwardly and to the point. . . . He was fond of music and reading, was a patron of learning, and Henry's own letters are good specimens of the English of the time. As a ruler he chiefly impressed his contemporaries with his inflexible justice. No king had a higher conception of his rights, or was more stern in their enforcement, but he showed at the same time scrupulous regard for those of all classes among his subjects. . . . In war he was full of consideration for his soldiers, and was merciful towards defenceless opponents; all plundering (cf. the punishment of Bardolph and Nym) and violence to women were strictly forbidden, and as sternly punished. As a general he far surpassed all of his own time, while as a diplomatist he was able, firm, but conciliatory. . . . In the work of civil administration he healed the animosities which had distracted the two previous reigns, and while in France he went far to reconcile the people to his rule by the contrast between the justice and firmness of his government and the turbulent violence which had gone before. His great war, though unprovoked and unjustifiable, was undertaken from a firm conviction of his own rights, and it is clear that at first he would have been content with very much less than the crown of France. The reality of Henry's intention, after restoring peace in France, to undertake a new crusade, is beyond doubt, while with the other states of Europe he established friendly relations. Henry's personal appearance was comely; his face was oval, with a long straight nose, ruddy

complexion, dark smooth hair, and bright eyes, mild as a dove when unprovoked, but lion-like in wrath. His frame was slender, his limbs were well proportioned and stoutly knit, so that he was very active, and took a keen pleasure in all manly sports." (Condensed from Kingsford.)

In King Henry V Shakespeare has depicted his ideal king, the perfect flower of chivalry and piety, "the Star of England".

II *Hen. IV*, v, ii, v.

*Hen. V*, i, ii; ii, ii; iii, i, iii, vi; iv, i, iii, vi, vii; v, ii.

I *Hen. VI*, i, i, 5ff., ii, 136, iii, 2f., iv, 79; ii, v, 82; iii, i, 196; iv, iii, 52; v, i, 81.

II *Hen. VI*, i, i, 78ff.; iv, ii, 165, viii, 17ff.

III *Hen. VI*, i, i, 107; iii, iii, 85f.

### CLAIM OF HENRY V TO THE FRENCH CROWN

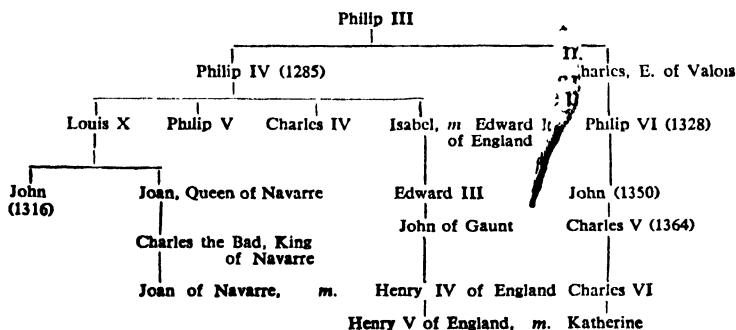
Henry V revived the claim of his great-grandfather, Edward III. The Salic Law forbade the succession of a woman to the French throne. Edward III had asserted:

(1) That a woman so excluded could pass on her claim to her son

(2) That such a son must be born within the lifetime of his grandfather.

But for this second proviso Charles the Bad, King of Navarre, would have had a better claim

For a discussion of this claim as set forth by the Archbishop of Canterbury in Henry V, see Canterbury (3).



HENRY VI, king of England, the only son of Henry V, was born at Windsor in 1421. He succeeded to the English throne when only nine months old and, on the death of his maternal grandfather, Charles VI, one month later he was proclaimed king of France. During his minority England was ruled by a Council of Regency. The early years of his reign were distracted by struggles for power among the members of this council, chief of whom were Humphrey Duke of Gloucester

and Cardinal Beaufort. Henry was crowned at Westminster in 1429 and at Paris in 1430. He was admitted to a share in the government in 1437 but was soon warned by the Council that he was using his power unwisely. He joined the peace party of Beaufort, concluded a two years' truce with France on his marriage with Margaret of Anjou in 1445, and, under the influence of Beaufort and Suffolk, ordered the arrest of Gloucester; while in the following year he ceded Maine in order to prolong the French truce. But the truce was broken in the next year and Normandy was quickly conquered, the incompetent Edmund Beaufort, Duke of Somerset, being powerless to stay the French advance. Under the influence of Margaret, Henry gave his support to Suffolk, but was forced to exile him in 1450. He attempted to suppress Cade's rebellion in person but, along with his troops, he was seized with panic and fled to London by water, whence he escaped to Kenilworth, leaving the suppression to Archbishop Kemp and Bishop Waynflete.

Richard Duke of York, who had been sent into banishment as Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland, now returned and compelled the king to banish Somerset in 1451. In the same year Guienne was reconquered by the French. Henry now travelled about the country vainly trying to quell the unrest and stem the passions of the warring factions around his throne. He temporarily lost his reason in 1453 while York, being named Protector, imprisoned Somerset and commenced to restore ordered government. Scarcely were his labours begun when the king recovered his reason, released Somerset and excluded York from the council. The birth of an heir had destroyed York's hopes of a peaceful succession and in 1455 he took up arms. The king's forces were defeated at St. Albans, where Somerset was slain, and York again became supreme, the king having once more lost his reason. York opened parliament as the king's lieutenant, and was appointed protector. Early in the next year Henry recovered his faculties, and though personally he was willing to retain York as chief counsellor, Margaret persuaded him to dismiss the duke from office. But owing to the efforts of the Duke of Buckingham, a hollow peace was maintained during the next two years, during which Henry again travelled up and down the country striving to restore order. Civil war broke out again in 1459 and, after Salisbury's victory at Bloreheath, Henry marched against York and Warwick at Ludlow, driving them from England and

afterwards attainting them at Coventry. But these lords returned early in the next year. They defeated and took the king prisoner at Northampton, compelling him to set aside his own son and acknowledge York as his heir. Margaret now took up arms on behalf of her son and defeated the Yorkists at Wakefield, where York himself fell in the battle. But York's eldest son was proclaimed king as Edward IV, and Henry fled northward, taking refuge with the Scots. He narrowly escaped capture after the defeat of Hexham, and for a year wandered in disguise on the borders of Lancashire and Yorkshire. He was captured in 1465 and remained a prisoner in the Tower for the next five years. Henry was temporarily restored by Warwick in 1470 but fell into the hands of his enemies after the defeat of Warwick at Barnet and of Margaret at Tewkesbury. He was committed to the Tower, where he was murdered soon after Edward's return. It was given out that he had died of "pure displeasure and melancholy," but both in England and abroad Richard of Gloucester was looked upon as his murderer. His body was exposed to view in St. Paul's and afterwards buried at Chertsey, whence it was removed to St. George's Chapel at Windsor in the reign of Henry VII. Henry was feeble in body and impaired in mind, and quite unfitted to rule in those strenuous days. As Shakespeare puts into the mouth of his queen, he was more fitted for a monastery than a kingdom. He was lacking in resolution, and was always under the influence of a stronger mind, though he was genuinely pious, and a liberal patron of learning, having imbibed a love of letters from his uncle, Humphrey of Gloucester. Besides taking great interest in the universities of Oxford and Caen, he founded Eton in 1440, and King's College, Cambridge in 1441. Nothing but the energy of Margaret kept him on the throne.

*Hen. V*, Epil. 9.

*I Hen. VI*, I, i, 169; II, i, 36; III, i, iii, 22f., iv; IV, i, vii, 70; v, i, ii, 20, iii, 99ff., iv, 124.

*II Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, 7ff., iii, iv, 38f.; II, i, ii, 54, iii; III, i, ii, iii; IV, i, 50, iv, viii, 53, ix; v, i.

*III Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, 10ff., iv, 97ff.; II, i, 119f., ii, v, vi, 2ff.; III, i, iii, 24ff.; IV, i, 96f., ii, 27, iii, 49f., iv, 27, vi, vii, 4ff., viii; v, i, 38f., iv, 76, vi.

*Rich. III*, I, ii, 82ff., iii, 119f.; II, iii, 16; IV, i, 67, ii, 98; v, i, 4, iii, 128.

## HENRY VII]

HENRY VII, king of England, was the son of Edmund Tudor, Earl of Richmond, by Margaret Beaufort, heiress of John of Gaunt, and grandson of Owen Tudor by Katherine, widow of Henry V. He was born at Pembroke Castle in 1457, two months after his father's death, his mother being then not quite fourteen years old. Being an only son he was Earl of Richmond from his birth. He was brought up in Wales under the care of his uncle, Jasper Tudor, Earl of Pembroke; for though Edward IV obtained the crown when Richmond was four years old, the Lancastrian party continued to hold various Welsh castles until the surrender of Harlech in 1468.

Young Henry seems to have been taken prisoner in that fortress when it fell into the hands of William, Lord Herbert (Pembroke 2), who now became his guardian, and planned to marry him to his daughter Maud. In 1470 Edward IV was driven from the throne, and Henry VI restored. Henry was now reclaimed by his uncle, Jasper Tudor, who took him up to London and presented him to King Henry. Dugdale, quoting from Polydore Vergil says: "Finding Henry Earl of Richmond in the custody of William Herbert's widow, he brought him from her and carried him to the king. Henry, looking upon him prophetically said, 'This is he who shall quietly possess what we and our adversaries do now contend for.'"

This tradition is preserved by Shakespeare in III *Hen. VI*, iv, vii, where Richmond appears under the "tender care" of the Duke of Somerset, his near kinsman, the last male of the Beauforts, through whom Henry Tudor founded his pretensions to the throne. Henry was in his fourteenth year when, in 1471, Edward IV recovered his throne. As it was now no longer safe for him to remain in Wales, his Uncle Jasper took him across the sea, meaning to convey him to France, but they were compelled to land in Brittany, where Richmond remained a refugee during the whole of Edward's reign, despite repeated efforts of that monarch to get him into his power.

With the death of Henry VI and his son, Edward Prince of Wales, Richmond became the head of the house of Lancaster while the usurpation of Richard III opened the way for his pretensions to the crown. He was prevented by a storm from joining Buckingham's rebellion against Richard in 1483. At

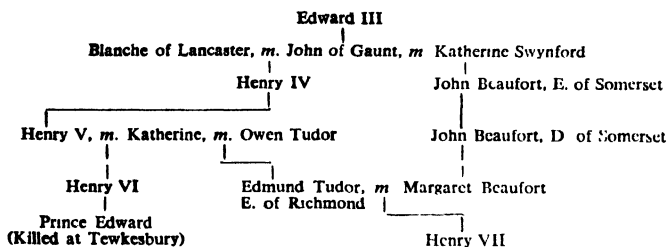
a council of refugees held at Rennes he promised to marry Elizabeth of York on obtaining the crown, thus uniting the rival houses of Lancaster and York. Being warned by Morton of a plot to betray him to Richard, he fled to France, whence he landed at Milford Haven in 1485. His company only numbered 2,000 men, but he was joined by many Welshmen on his way to Shrewsbury. He met Richard at Bosworth where, by the desertion of Sir William Stanley, the king was defeated and his rival saluted on the field as Henry VII, Lord Stanley setting Richard's crown, found in a bush, upon his head.

Richmond now proceeded to London, where his coronation took place in the October, and next month parliament met, confirmed his title to the crown, and petitioned him to marry Elizabeth of York, which he accordingly did in 1486. Lord Bacon says; "He rested on the title of Lancaster in the main, using the marriage and victory as supporters." In 1487, Henry defeated the pretender Lambert Simnel at Stoke-on-Trent and captured Perkin Warbeck in Cornwall in 1497 after the defeat of the rebels at Blackheath. Henry built for himself a sumptuous palace on the bank of the Thames, named Sheen Palace, but it was destroyed by fire soon after its completion in 1497. It was soon rebuilt with greater magnificence than before, and he then called it Richmond, by which name it was subsequently known. Henry died there in 1509.

Henry was called the Solomon of England, being accounted one of the wisest princes of his time, though he practised much extortion through his agents, Empson and Dudley. He was a great patron of commerce, and under his encouragement the Cabots discovered Newfoundland. Literature also interested him and he recommended Caxton to translate and print *The Fayts and Armes of Chivalry*. Of his magnificence in building, the chapel which bears his name at Windsor remains a witness. "An exile or a prisoner from the age of five till he won his crown, Henry grew up serious, silent, suspicious, and reserved, neither hating nor loving, but using his fellow creatures with no closer care than his own well-being, no deeper religion than a regard for his own soul. He is described as of middle height, spare built, with a long pale face, gray eyes, dark brown hair, and a red wart on the right cheek" (York Powell).

*Hen. VIII*, II, i, 112.

## CLAIM OF HENRY VII TO THE ENGLISH THRONE



Henry VII's claim to the throne, like that of Henry IV, rested on three grounds

- (1) Right of Birth.
- (2) Right of Conquest.
- (3) Choice or approval of parliament.

The first of these was not very sound, as there were several nearer claimants, the chief of whom was Edward, Earl of Warwick, the son of George, Duke of Clarence, son of Edward IV. The Yorkists claimed the throne, not only through Edmund of Langley, but also in the female line through Anne Mortimer, great-grand-daughter of Lionel of Clarence, elder brother of John of Gaunt; and in this line there were claimants in:

- (1) John, Earl of Lincoln, who had been declared heir by Richard III., and
- (2) Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV., afterwards wife of Henry VII.

**HENRY VIII**, bluff King Hal, as he was called, was the second son of Henry VII and Elizabeth of York. He thus united in his own person the claims of the two houses of York and Lancaster. The pen of Shakespeare and the pencil of Holbein have united to make him more familiar to us than any other personage of former times. Hall, the chronicler from whom the poet derives so much, was recorder of London, and attended the Field of the Cloth of Gold in 1520 at the king's express command. Henry succeeded his father at the age of eighteen, being then the handsomest and ablest of the sovereigns of Christendom. The early part of his reign was taken up by his attempts to act as balance between Francis I of France and his rival the emperor Charles V. Then succeeded the great question of the king's divorce and its protracted trial. Following upon this came the successive acts which reasserted the ancient liberty of the English church and restored the native authority of the Archbishop of Canterbury. During all this time the New Learning spread with exceeding rapidity and reforms in matters spiritual grew apace. Henry himself remained faithful to the old faith, and tried to restrain the more advanced of the reformers. His later years were troubled with the question of the succession. Henry was tall and well-proportioned, "his complexion very fair and bright, with auburn hair, combed short and straight

in the French fashion, and a round face that would become a pretty woman." He was a good musician, a capital horseman, extremely fond of hunting, delighted in masques and pageants, was devoted to tennis, and loved to set off his stately form in rich attire glittering with jewels and gold. He spoke good French, Latin, and Spanish, as well as elegant English. He was outwardly religious, attending three masses a day. His gracious smile and friendly, hearty manner concealed his utter selfishness, and won the hearts of rich and poor alike, but his anger was terrible to face. He was a shrewd judge of character, and chose his ministers well. But he used them as mere instruments, throwing them off remorselessly when they had fulfilled their purpose or ventured to cross his wishes. Ever a hard, cruel, remorseless master, he became in later life a hateful tyrant. He worked for himself, he also worked hard for England, and though he wrought much evil in his day, the good that came from the main lines of his policy lived on. Henry married his elder brother's widow, Katherine of Arragon, in 1509, and for over twenty years she remained his faithful wife. After her divorce he married five other wives, leaving a son, Edward, and two daughters, Mary and Elizabeth, who all succeeded to the throne in turn. As the second son, Henry had been educated for the church. This education enabled him to write in Latin his *Defence of the Seven Sacraments*, against Luther—a book which procured for him from Leo X, in 1521, the title of "Defender of the Faith,"—a title still retained by English sovereigns. Henry died in 1547 after a reign of thirty-eight years.

*Hen. VIII*, i, ii, iv; ii, i, 116, ii, iv; iii, i; v, i, ii, iii, v.

HENRY OF HEREFORD. See Henry IV.

*Rich. II*, i, i, 3.

HENRY BOLINGBROKE. See Henry IV.

*Rich. II*, iv, i, 180.

I *Hen. IV*, iii, i, 64.

II *Hen. VI*, ii, ii, 21.

HENRY OF LANCASTER (1). See Henry IV.

*Rich. II*, v, v, 103.

HENRY OF LANCASTER (2). See Henry VI.

III *Hen. VI*, i, i, 164.



HENRY]

HENRY PLANTAGENET. See Henry V.  
*Hen. V*, v, ii, 259.

HENRY OF MONMOUTH. See Henry V.  
I *Hen. VI*, ii, v, 23.

HENRY EARL OF RICHMOND. See Henry VII.  
III *Hen. VI*, iv, vi, 67.

HENRY PERCY. See Hotspur.  
*Rich. II*, ii, ii, 53.  
I *Hen. IV*, v, i, 87.

HENRY, LORD SCROPE OF MASHAM. See Scrope (4).  
*Hen. V*, ii, Pro. 24; ii, ii, 148.

HENRY GUILDFORD. See Guildford (2)  
*Hen. VIII*, i, iii, 66.

HENRY OF BUCKINGHAM. See Buckingham (2).  
*Hen. VIII*, ii, i, 107.

HERBERT, Sir Walter, was the second son of Sir William Herbert who was created Earl of Pembroke in 1468 (See Pembroke 2). Sir Walter married Anne Stafford, second daughter of the Duke of Buckingham in *Rich. III*, and after his death his widow married George Hastings, first Earl of Huntingdon. Sir Thomas More speaks of Herbert as a person having great influence among the Welsh. Earl Richmond (Henry VII) had intended to marry Maud, one of Herbert's daughters, to whom he had become attached during the time he was resident in her father's castle. She ultimately married Henry Percy, fourth Earl, "melancholy Northumberland," as Richard III calls him. For a time Richmond was so convinced of Richard's determination to marry Elizabeth of York that he once more turned to a daughter of his early friend, the Lady Katherine, who afterwards married George Grey, Earl of Kent.

*Rich. III*, iv, v, 9; v, iii.

HEREFORD, Earl of (1). See Henry IV.

*Rich. II*, i, i, 8f., ii, 47f., iii, 1ff., iv, 2; ii, i, 144ff., ii, 89,  
iii, 82ff.; iv, i, 184.

II *Hen. IV*, iv, i, 181f.

HEREFORD, Earl of (2). See Buckingham (3).

*Hen. VIII*, i, i, 200.

HOPKINS, Nicholas, was a monk of the Chartreux order who flattered the vanity of Buckingham (3) "with words of sovereignty" and "fed him with prophecies" of his future greatness while later he turned and gave evidence against him. The folio has "Henton" for Hopkins. Nicholas Hopkins, according to Holinshed, was a monk of Henton, a house of the Cistercian order, near Bristol. Nicholas is Theobald's correction, the folio having Michael.

*Hen. VIII*, i, i, 221, ii, 147f.; ii, i, 22.

HORNER, Thomas. Shakespeare, following Grafton and Holinshed, has missed the real names of these combatants, which are known. "William Catur, an armourer, was accused of treason by his own servant, John David, who, for want of other proof, offered to make good his charge by combat. The defendant's friends, knowing his timorous nature, fortified his spirits with plenty of wine. Catur, on entering the lists intoxicated, was killed by his servant who, being afterwards convicted of felony, confessed the falsehood of the charges against his master" (Northouck's *History of London*, quoted by French). The incident, so quaintly recorded in the play, took place at Smithfield in 1446, and the whole of the expenses incurred by the sheriffs are recorded.

II *Hen. VI*, i, iii; ii, iii.

HOTSPUR, so named by the Scots on account of the sleepless activity which he showed in repressing their border forays, was Henry Percy, eldest son of the first Earl of Northumberland. He was born in 1364, and was knighted at Windsor by the aged Edward III in 1377 at the same time as the future Richard II and Henry IV, who were both almost exactly his own age, though Shakespeare represents him as being the same age as Prince Henry, the eldest son of Henry IV. Hotspur was associated with his father as Warden of the Scottish Marches in 1384, and four years later took part in his most famous exploit—the battle of Otterburn. Hotspur and his brother Ralph were surrounded and captured, being taken by the Scottish Earl of March and Dunbar. However, he was ransomed, and by 1389 was again in command on the

## HOTSPUR]

Border. On the landing of Bolingbroke, Hotspur joined his father in placing him on the throne, and was appointed by the new king justiciary of Wales, where he waged war on Glendower. But Hotspur soon tired of his exacting and costly post and, after a dispute with the king over payment of the cost of recovering Conway Castle, he returned to the north. In 1402 a great force under Murdoch Stewart, Earl of Fife, and Archibald, fourth Earl of Douglas, harried Northumberland with fire and sword. Hotspur and his father, in company with his old antagonist George Dunbar, Earl of March, encountered them at Homildon Hill, where five earls, including Douglas and Fife, and many other noble prisoners were taken. Henry IV now gave mortal offence to Hotspur by forbidding him to ransom his brother-in-law, Sir Edmund Mortimer, who had been captured by Glendower, and by taking into his own hands all the prisoners taken at Homildon Hill that he might obtain their ransoms for himself. "Percy had an exclusive right to these prisoners, except the Earl of Fife. By the law of arms, any man who had taken any captive, whose redemption did not exceed ten thousand crown, had him clearly for himself, either to acquit or ransom at his pleasure" (Tollet). The Earl of Fife, being a prince of the blood royal, fell to the share of Henry. Hotspur refused to send Douglas up to London with the other prisoners and, in a stormy interview with the king, demanded permission to ransom Mortimer. Meanwhile Hotspur's father had been pressing Henry for the payment of the arrears of his own and his son's salaries as wardens of the Marches. Though a temporary reconciliation was effected, rebellion broke out in 1403. Hotspur set out for Wales accompanied by Douglas and the other Scottish prisoners, whom he had set free. A proclamation that Richard II was with them brought in many adherents, and they moved southward to join Glendower. The pretence that Richard lived was now dropped and Edmund Earl of March was declared the rightful king. By forced marches Henry and the royal troops came up with the insurgents at Shrewsbury, and after a desperate battle Hotspur was slain by an unknown hand, after he had cut his way through to the king's standard and slain a knight who was clothed in the king's armour. His body was exposed at Shrewsbury and afterwards decapitated, the head being fixed on one of the gates of York.

"Hotspur is the last and not the least in the long roll of

chivalrous figure whose prowess fills the pages of Froissart. He had the virtues and the defects of his class and time. A doughty fighter rather than a skilful soldier, he was instinct with stormy energy, passionate and intolerant of the shadow of a slight" (Tait).

I *Hen. IV*, I, i, 52f., iii; II, iii, iv, 114; III, i, ii, 112f.;  
IV, i, iii; V, i, 116, ii, iii, iv.

II *Hen. IV*, Induc. 25ff.; I, i, 50f., iii, 26; II, iii, 87f.

HUBERT DE BURGH; French says he was descended from Charlemagne, through his fifth son, Charles Duke of Ingelheim, and his immediate ancestor was Robert Earl of Mortaigne and Cornwall, half-brother of William the Conqueror". Such was his influence that he was regarded as the greatest subject in Europe during the reigns of John and Henry III. Hunt says, "Little or nothing is known of his descent, and there are indications that his family was at least not held to be equal with those of the great nobles of England, who saw with disgust the riches and honours that were heaped on him." He became chamberlain to King John in 1201 and in the next year custodian of the castle of Falaise where, according to Ralph Coggeshall, he became gaoler to Prince Arthur. Shakespeare represents him as having conspired with John to murder the young prince and as employing two ruffians to burn out both his eyes with hot irons, but that he relented because of the boy's pleading. Hubert afterwards became Warden of the Welsh Marches, sheriff of five counties, Seneschal of Poitou, and governor of several castles. He was on the king's side at Runnymede; was one of the royal securities to the Great Charter; and on the day that it was signed was appointed justiciary of England. Subsequently he was loaded with further honours, among them the custody of Dover Castle. This key to the kingdom was defended by Hubert with only 140 soldiers for four months, against all the efforts of the French to take it. In 1217 he destroyed a greatly superior French fleet under Eustace the Monk, off the north of France, thus gaining the first of our great naval victories. After the death of King John, Hubert served his successor with equal fidelity, and from the death of the Earl of Pembroke almost entirely ruled the kingdom, heading the national party against the foreigners and the bishop of Winchester. In 1221 he demanded the royal castles held by the nobles and

## HUGH]

defeated a plot to seize the king. In 1227 he advised Henry III to declare himself of full age and to banish the bishop of Winchester; being himself created Earl of Kent in that same year. But his vast power aroused the jealousy of the nobles and he fell under the displeasure of the king owing to their repeated attacks upon him. He was stripped of his employments, honours, and possessions, being imprisoned first in the Tower (1232) and afterwards in Devizes Castle. His outlawry was reversed and his earldom restored in 1234 and three years afterwards he was reconciled to the bishop of Winchester. He died in 1245 and was buried in the Black Friars Church, London. Hubert married as his fourth wife Margaret, sister of Alexander II of Scotland.

*John*, III, ii, iii; IV, i, ii, iii; V, i, 42, iii, iv, 40, vi.

HUGH CAPET, founder of the Capetian dynasty, was the eldest son of Hugh the Great, Duke of the Franks and Count of Paris. He was born c. 938 and succeeded to his father's numerous fiefs around Paris and Orleans in 956, thus becoming one of the most powerful of Frankish nobles. At first Hugh supported his sovereign Lothaire against the emperor Otto II but in 980 he went to Rome, where he made peace with the emperor. When King Louis V died in 987, Hugh contested the claim of Charles of Lorraine, the late king's uncle, to the vacant throne. Declaring that the crown was elective, Adalberon, Archbishop of Rheims, secured the crown for his friend Hugh Capet. His authority was recognised north of the Loire, except in Brittany, but at first he had no more power as king than as duke. He was attacked and defeated by Charles of Lorraine and was in a serious predicament when Adalberon treacherously seized his rival and delivered him into the new king's hands. In 991, Hugh Capet was excommunicated because he deposed Arnulf, whom he had appointed to Rheims, as he proved a traitor and a friend to his rival, Charles. This struggle with the pope was warmly supported by the Gallican clergy and was still in progress when Hugh died in 996 at Paris.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 69f.

HUGH MORTIMER. See Mortimer (7).

III *Hen. VI*, I, ii.

**HUME**, John; a priest who was a counsellor of Eleanor Cobham, Duchess of Gloucester. He was arrested in 1441 on a charge of treason but was afterwards pardoned.

*II Hen. VI*, i, ii, iv.

**HUMPHREY** (1). See Gloucester (3).

*II Hen. IV*, iv, iv, 12.

*I Hen. VI*, i, iii, 29; *III*, i, 3; v, i, 58.

*II Hen. VI*, i, i, 76ff., ii, 3ff., iii, 81ff.; *II*, i, 161, ii, 74, iii, 18ff., iv, 37ff.; *III*, i, 20ff., ii, 123ff.; iv, i, 76; v, i, 15.

**HUMPHREY** (2). Stafford; see Stafford (3).

*II Hen. VI*, iv, ii, iv.

**HUNGERFORD** (1). Sir Walter; first baron Hungerford, the son and heir of Sir Thomas Hungerford, was strongly attached to the Lancastrian cause at the close of Richard II's reign, his father having been steward in the household of John of Gaunt. In 1400 he entered parliament as member for Wiltshire. In the next year he was with the English army in France and is said to have worsted the French king in a duel outside Calais. In 1415 Hungerford accompanied Henry V to France and he, rather than the Earl of Westmoreland as in Shakespeare's *Henry V*, seems to have been the officer who, on the eve of Agincourt, expressed regret that the English had not 10,000 men and drew from the king his famous rebuke. He fought bravely at Agincourt, but the assertion that he captured the Duke of Orleans is not substantiated. Three years later Hungerford took part in the siege of Rouen. On the death of Henry V he became a member of the Protector Gloucester's council, was summoned to the House of Lords as Baron Hungerford in 1425, and became Treasurer in 1426, holding the office for the next five years or more. According to Shakespeare he was present with Talbot at Pataye and was there taken prisoner. He died in 1449 and was buried in Salisbury Cathedral.

*I Hen. VI*, i, i, 146.

**HUNGERFORD** (2). Sir Thomas; was the eldest son of Robert, Lord Moleyns and Hungerford. He lived chiefly at Rowden, near Chippenham, Wilts. After giving some support to

## HUNTINGDON]

Edward IV he joined in Warwick's conspiracy to restore Henry VI in 1469. He was arrested by the Yorkist king, attainted and executed at Salisbury, being buried in the chapel of Farleigh Castle. Hungerford married Anne Percy, daughter of the Earl of Northumberland and by her had an only daughter, Mary, who became the ward of Lord Hastings. In 1480 she married Sir Edward (afterwards second Lord Hastings), her guardian's son. Five years later the attainders of her father and grandfather were reversed and her husband was summoned to parliament as Lord Hungerford. Shakespeare has been misled into describing the marriage of this great heiress to the father instead of the son.

*III Hen. VI, iv, i, 48.*

HUNTINGDON, Earl of. This was John Holland, born 1395, the second son of John Holland, Earl of Exeter, who was executed in 1400 for conspiracy against Henry IV. Huntingdon took part in the trial of Richard Earl of Cambridge, and afterwards accompanied Henry V on his expedition to France. He was one of the leaders at the siege of Harfleur and distinguished himself at Agincourt, for which services his father's attainder was reversed and he was restored to the earldom of Huntingdon in 1416. He served continuously in the French wars until 1420. He was present at most of the important engagements during this period and also at the Treaty of Troyes, where he is represented by Shakespeare as being addressed by the king. In 1420 he was appointed Constable of the Tower of London. After this he accompanied Henry V on his triumphal entry into Paris. In 1421 Huntingdon was captured by the Dauphinists when Clarence was defeated at Beaugé, and remained in captivity for the next four years. In 1429 he married Anne, widow of Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March. In the following year he returned to France, was present at Henry VI's coronation in 1431, and was one of the English representatives at Arras to treat for peace with the French in 1435. He commanded an expedition for the relief of Guisnes in 1438; was appointed Governor of Aquitaine in 1440; and advanced to his father's dukedom of Exeter in 1443. He died in 1447 and was buried in the church of St. Catherine, beside the Tower.

*Hen. V, v, ii, 85.*

**IDEN, Alexander.** Hasted says, "The Idens were a family of great antiquity about Iden in Sussex." Alexander Iden was appointed Sheriff of Kent in the 28th year of Henry VI in succession to William Cromer (? Henry. See *sub* Say), who had been put to death by the rebels under Jack Cade. When Cade was deserted by his followers he concealed himself in the woods near this place and was discovered by Iden in a field near Westwell. Holinshed says he was captured at Hothfield in Sussex. Iden received the price that had been set on Cade's head as noticed in the play. He married the widow of his predecessor in office, whom some say to be Elizabeth, daughter of Lord Say in this same play.

*II Hen. VI*, iv, x; v, i.

**INNOCENT III** (Lotario de Conti di Segni) was born of a noble Italian family in 1160. After a distinguished career at Paris, Bologna, and Rome, where he gained a profound knowledge of philosophy and canon and civil law, he was made a cardinal in 1190 by his uncle Clement III. During the pontificate of Celestine III, Lotario was engaged in literary work, two volumes of which have survived. In 1198 he was elected to the papal chair. During his pontificate the temporal as well as the spiritual supremacy of the Roman see reached its culminating point. After restoring the prestige of the Holy See in Italy by shaking off the power of the emperor Henry VI, Innocent set to work to assert his suzerainty over all the sovereigns of Europe. He seized every opportunity to advance his claims and so well did he succeed that the kingdoms of Sicily, Naples, Sardinia, the states of the Iberian peninsula, the Scandinavian states, the kingdom of Hungary, the Slav states of Bohemia, Poland, Serbia, Bosnia and Bulgaria, and the Christian states founded in Syria by the crusaders of the twelfth century, all acknowledged his sway. He forced Philip II of France to dismiss Agnes of Meran and to take back his Danish wife, Ingeborg; while in Germany, he adjudicated with authority upon the claims of rival emperors. But his greatest triumph was over King John of England, after his refusal to accept the papal nomination of Langton to the see of Canterbury. In the end Innocent won the most complete victory that has ever been won by a religious potentate over a temporal sovereign, as a result of which he became, through his legates, the virtual ruler of England during the remainder of the reign



## ISABEL]

of John and the early years of Henry III. It was under the presidency of Innocent III that the celebrated fourth Lateran Council was held in 1215. Soon after this crowning exhibition of his power the great pope died in 1216. Innocent III was one of the greatest historical figures, both in the grandeur of his aims and the force of character which brought him so near to their realization. Despite his reputation for pugnacity and obstinacy, it must be remembered that it was only after exhausting every peaceable expedient that he allowed recourse to arms; even the Albigensian crusade was preceded by ten years peaceful attempt to convert the misbelievers. He was a vigorous guardian of public and private morality and a steady supporter of the weak. Dean Milman's verdict of his career is that "his high and blameless and, in some respects, wise and gentle character, seems to approach more nearly than any one of the whole succession of Roman bishops to the ideal of a supreme pontiff. In him, if ever, may seem to be realized the churchman's highest conception of a Vicar of Christ."

*John*, III, i, 139f.

ISABEL (1). The daughter of Baldwin V, Count of Hainault, was born at Lille in 1170. At the age of ten she was married to Philip II of France, bringing him the province of Artois as her dowry, and was crowned in the same year. As her father claimed to be a descendant of Charlemagne, French annalists saw in the marriage a union of the Carolingian and Capetian dynasties. Isabel failed to win the affection of her husband, who would have repudiated her in 1184 but for the intervention of his uncle. Isabel died in 1190 and was buried in Paris.

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 81.

ISABEL (2), or Elizabeth of Bavaria, the daughter of Stephen II of Bavaria, was born in 1370. In 1385 she was married to Charles VI of France and crowned in Paris four years later. After seven years of happy married life, the king became insane, while Isabel gave herself to the dissolute life of the court, using her position to gratify her own personal desires regardless of the country of her adoption. After the murder of the Duke of Orleans she joined the Armagnacs but was imprisoned ten years later owing to her scandalous life. At the end of the year she was released by John the Fearless, Duke of Burgundy, and accompanied him to Troyes, where she

established her court. In the next year she returned to Paris, which had fallen into the hands of Burgundy, and took up arms against her son, the dauphin Charles. After the murder of Burgundy, Isabel joined the English and surrendered France to Henry V by the Treaty of Troyes in 1420, giving him her daughter Katherine in marriage. She now became an object of contempt to the whole French people. Isabel died in 1485 after a miserable old age spent in poverty and ill-health.

*Hen. V*, v, ii.

JAMES (1). Gurney. See Gurney.

*John*, I, i, 230.

JAMES (2), for Capt. Jamy. See Jamy.

*Hen. V*, III, ii, 90.

JAMES (3). Cromer. See Cromer.

*II Hen. VI*, IV, vii, 117.

JAMES (4). Tyrrel. See Tyrrel.

*Rich. III*, IV, ii, 68.

JAMES (5). Blunt. See Blunt.

*Rich. III*, IV, v, 11.

JAMY, Capt. On account of the ancient feud between the English and Scots there would not be many of the latter nation in the army of Henry V though the nation was represented by the Scots captain Jamy, or James, as Fluellen called him. But there was one of the nation of the highest rank who accompanied Henry V throughout his French campaigns. This was no less a personage than James the First, King of Scots, who had been taken prisoner in the reign of Henry IV, while on his way to France in 1405. He had been kept confined in Windsor Castle but was released by the new king on condition of serving under him in the position of a private knight. James is said to have owed this concession to the intervention of Queen Joan, the English king's step-mother. But he was not allowed to return to his own land until 1423. James followed as chief mourner in the protracted funeral of Henry V. His marriage with a lady of the English blood-royal was made a condition of his final release. He married John of Gaunt's grand-daughter, Joanna Beaufort, for whom he had conceived a strong affection, which he has recorded in his poem

## JOAN OF ARC]

called, "the King's Quair". He was subsequently murdered in his own land, the queen receiving two wounds in trying to defend him. From this marriage were descended all the succeeding kings of Scotland and afterwards of Great Britain.

*Hen. V, III, ii.*

JOAN OF ARC, the "Maid of Orleans," was born between 1410-12. She was the daughter of Jacques Darc, peasant proprietor of Domremy, a village in the Vosges Mountains. In her childhood she was noted for her abounding physical energy but as she grew to womanhood she became inclined to silence, and spent much time in solitude and prayer. France was at this time torn by civil war and a visionary named Marie d'Avignon declared that the country would be saved by an armed virgin from the marches of Lorraine. But Joan's knowledge of the prophecy does not appear till 1429 while from 1424 she had been imbued with a sense of her mission to free France from her unworthy nobles and the invading English. She heard the voices of St Michael, St Margaret, and St Catherine urging her on. In 1428, after a first rebuff, she was sent by the Governor of Vaucoulers to the dauphin Charles. At first he refused to see her but after three days his courtiers prevailed upon him to do so. She is said to have picked him out though he stood in disguise among his attendants. After a committee of divines had reported that they found nothing evil or contrary to the Catholic faith in her, she was permitted to set out for Orleans with 5,000 men. She rode at the head of her band, clothed in a coat of mail, and bearing the sword with which Charles Martel was said to have vanquished the Saracens. This sword is said to have been revealed to her by her "voices" as under the altar of the church of St. Catherine de Fierbois. She carried a white standard embroidered with lilies. In April the maid entered Orleans and in less than a month had raised the siege, compelling the investing English army to retreat. In a single week, by the capture of Jargeau and the great victory of Patay, where Talbot was taken prisoner, the English were driven beyond the Loire. In July of that year Charles was crowned at Rheims, while Joan stood by his side. She now wished to return home but Charles refused to grant her permission to do so. But he played her false when Paris was attacked and Joan was wounded. Charles now disbanded his troops and Joan went to assist Alencon in

the defence of Compeigne against Burgundy. While leading a sortie she was taken prisoner, probably by a deliberate withdrawal of the troops whose leaders were jealous of her success. Charles made no effort to effect her ransom and showed no interest in her fate though he owed his throne to her intervention to save the country he himself was powerless to deliver. In 1431 Joan was sold by John of Luxemburg and Burgundy to the English, who delivered her over to the Inquisition for trial. After public examination she was found guilty of being a witch and a heretic and condemned to be burnt at the stake. This inhuman sentence was carried out in the market-place of Rouen, in May 1431.

"The nobility of her purpose and the genuineness of her belief in her mission, combined with her purity of character and simple patriotism, stand clear. She undoubtedly nerved France at a critical time, and inspired an army of laggards and pillagers with a fanatical enthusiasm comparable with that of Cromwell's Puritans." The brutal execution of Joan of Arc is the greatest blot on the English arms during the whole period of her mistaken aggression upon French soil. In the play the "Maid of Orleans" is painted according to the traditional English view, which lasted long after Shakespeare's time, as a wicked and impure woman, in league with devils, who fight for her against the righteous power of England.

I *Hen.* VI, I, ii, iv, 101, v, vi; II, i, ii, 20; III, ii, iii; iv, vii; v, ii, iii, iv.

JOHN (1). King of England, was the youngest and favourite son of Henry II. He was nicknamed Lackland when his father divided his vast dominions among his elder sons, though in 1177 he was declared king of Ireland. With his brother Geoffrey, John made war on Richard in 1184, in order to compel him to surrender Aquitaine. But a reconciliation between the brothers having taken place, John returned to Ireland, where he alienated the native princes by his insolence, and the mercenaries by spending their pay. His treachery hastened his father's death. In the next month John married Isabella, or Avice, daughter of the Earl of Gloucester, and received from his brother many grants of land. During Richard's absence in the Holy Land, John caused himself to be declared heir to the throne while he intrigued to gain immediate posses-

sion of the crown. On the news of his brother's imprisonment, John at once did homage to Philip for his French dominions and invaded Richard's English territory by the aid of foreign mercenaries. At the same time he did all in his power to prolong Richard's imprisonment. On the king's release, John sought refuge in France but was pardoned by his brother through the intercession of their mother, Eleanor, and he returned to England in 1194. Five years later he was declared his brother's heir and succeeded him in the same year at the age of 32. John was acknowledged in England and Normandy but resisted in Anjou, Maine, and Touraine by the adherents of his nephew, Arthur of Brittany. John at once led a force into Brittany and invaded Maine, which he forced Philip of France to evacuate. Obtaining possession of Arthur and Constance, his mother, at Le Mans, he determined to cast them both into prison. But they were warned and escaped in the night. Early in 1200 a truce was made between the two kings, and John's niece, Blanche of Castile, married Lewis the dauphin of France, receiving as her dowry the disputed provinces. John was now anxious to make a grander marriage. He divorced his wife, though he retained her lands, and married Isabella of Angouleme, in spite of the fact that she was betrothed to Hugh le Brum, son of the count of Le Marche and was but twelve years of age. On his return to England he received the homage of William, the King of Scots. War now broke out again in France. In 1202 John raised the siege of Mirabeau and captured his nephew Arthur and his sister Eleanor, removing them to Rouen, where the former was probably murdered. John now returned to England and shortly afterwards the whole of Normandy and Poitou were lost to the English crown. Meanwhile his exactions and cruelties had alienated both barons and people and, having refused to accept Langton as Archbishop of Canterbury, the whole country was laid under an interdict in 1208. For five years John continued his evil policy until he was deposed by Pope Innocent III, whereupon he submitted to the pope, doing homage to him even for England and Ireland and receiving Langton as archbishop. The English people were furious and, though John gained a slight success in Poitou, in spite of papal support, he was compelled to agree to the barons' demands at Runnymede and to sign the Great Charter in 1215. He now obtained letters from the pope absolving him from his promise

and declaring his opponents excommunicated. Despairing of redress, the barons invited Lewis of France to invade England and on his arrival Salisbury and many other nobles deserted the king. John was pursued from Windsor to the east, and on his way cruelly ravaged the country. While passing through Lincolnshire he lost all his baggage in the Fens. At the Cistercian abbey of Swineshead he surfeited himself with peaches and a kind of new beer. This brought on dysentery from which he died. Before the end of the century it was commonly believed that he had been poisoned by a monk of Swineshead. "Not one of the historians who wrote within 60 years after the death of King John mentions this very improbable story. The tale is, that a monk, to revenge himself on the king for a saying at which he took offence, poisoned a cup of ale, and having brought it to his majesty, drank some of it himself, to induce the king to taste it, and soon afterwards expired. Thomas Wykes is the first who relates it in his Chronicle as a report" (Malone). "John did not die at Swineshead as here represented. On the day after he arrived there, though very ill, he was conveyed in a litter to the castle of Sleaford, and thence to the castle of Newark, where he expired on 18th October, 1216, in the 49th year of his age, and the 17th of his reign" (Rolfe). His body was buried in front of the high altar of Worcester Cathedral, as he had directed.

"All the vices of his house appear in his character unredeemed by any greatness. He was mean, false, vindictive, and abominably cruel. At once greedy and extravagant, he extorted money from his subjects, and spent it in an ignoble manner. He had a violent temper and a stubborn disposition, but he lacked real firmness of mind, and was at heart a coward. Although not without capacity he was so frivolous and slothful that at the most critical times he would behave like a fool. His levity was constant, and he indulged in jesting at moments which specially demanded decorum and gravity. While he was abjectly superstitious he was habitually profane and irreligious, though he once or twice yielded to religious emotion. He was self-indulgent and scandalously immoral, and no small part of the hatred with which his nobles came to regard him was due to the injuries which his unbridled lust inflicted on them and their families" (Hunt).

*John*, I, i; II, i; III, i, iii, iv, 121ff.; IV, ii; v, i, ii, 69ff., iii, iv, 6ff., vii.

JOHN]

JOHN (2), of Gaunt. See Gaunt.

*Rich. II*, I, i, 1, iii, 76, iv, 54.

*I Hen. IV*, II, ii, 70.

*II Hen. IV*, III, ii, 49ff.

*I Hen. VI*, II, v, 77.

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 14ff.

*III Hen. VI*, I, i, 19; III, iii, 81f.

JOHN (3), Ramston. See Ramston.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 283.

JOHN (4), Norberry. See Norberry.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 284.

JOHN (5), Prince; of Lancaster. See Bedford.

*I Hen. IV*, IV, i, 89; v, v, 35.

*II Hen. IV*, I, i, 17; IV, i, 162, iv, 83, v, 228.

JOHN (6), Coleville. See Coleville.

*II Hen. IV*, IV, iii.

JOHN (7), Talbot. See Talbot (3).

*I Hen. VI*, IV, iii, 85, vi, vii, 2.

JOHN (8), Hume. See Hume. For note on the title Sir John, see *sub* Michael (1).

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 14ff.

JOHN (9), Stanley. See Stanley (1).

*II Hen. VI*, I, ii, 68.

JOHN (10) Montgomery. See Montgomery.

*III Hen. VI*, IV, vii, 42.

JOHN (11), Sir. ~~Mal~~ describes this meeting with the priest, who is addressed by Hastings as "good Sir John." He was probably his chaplain as indicated by the expression, "I am in debt for your last exercise." For the title of "Sir" addressed to a cleric see Michael (1).

*Rich. III*, III, ii.

JOHN (12), de ~~Car~~ Car or Court. See Car.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 218, ii, 162; II, i, 20.

JOURDAIN, Mary; surnamed the witch of Eye, was an old offender. In 1483 she had been summoned for sorcery before the lords of the council, but discharged on her husband

finding security for her good behaviour. The present charge was that at the request of the Duchess of Gloucester, she " had made an image in wax representing the king, which by sorcery, was little by little consumed, intending thereby in conclusion to waste and destroy the king's person, and so to bring him to death." Margery Jourdain was convicted and afterwards burnt at Smithfield.

*II Hen. VI, i, ii, 75, iv.*

KATHERINE (1) of Valois, youngest daughter of Charles VI of France, was born at Paris in 1401, and at an early age was sent to a convent at Poissy. When Henry, afterwards Henry V of England, failed in his advances for her elder sister, the widow of Richard II, he opened negotiations for the hand of Katherine. While these were in progress he succeeded to the English throne. He now demanded a dowry of two million crowns and the restoration of the Angevin and Norman possessions of the English crown in France. These extravagant demands were rejected and war broke out, ending in victory for the English. Queen Isabel tried to keep Henry in mind of his suit and, with her daughter, met him at Meulan in 1419. In accordance with the Treaty of Troyes they were married in 1420 and, after spending Christmas in Paris, proceeded to London early in the next year. In December 1421 the queen gave birth to a son (Henry VI) at Windsor, while by August 1422 she returned from France a widow. After the king's funeral she took up her residence at Windsor, but in 1423 parliament appointed Baynard's Castle as her permanent home. In the same year she tried to make peace between Gloucester and Bedford. By 1428 she was secretly married to Owen Tudor, a poor Welsh gentleman who had been an esquire of the body to the late king. Katherine lived in obscurity for many years, but in 1486 her husband was imprisoned in Newgate and she retired to Bermondsey Abbey where she died in 1487. Her eldest son by her second husband, Edmund Tudor, was created Earl of Richmond by Henry VI. He married Margaret Beaufort and became by her the father of Henry VII. Katherine's second son, Jasper Tudor, became Earl of Pembroke.

*II Hen. IV, Epil. 80  
Hen. V, iii, cho. iv; v, ii*



## KATHERINE]

KATHERINE (2) of Arragon, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain, was born in 1485. In 1501 she married Arthur, the eldest son of Henry VII. When he died in the next year she was affianced to his younger brother, Henry in order to avoid the necessity for returning her rich dowry. Within two months of his accession Henry married her. She "was a light-haired, plump lady of blonde complexion, not handsome but of a lively and gracious disposition. Though she loved her needle and her books of devotion better than court festivities or hunting, she was well-educated, had a decided will and character of her own, and was devoted to her husband" (Tout). The early death of the two sons she bore to Henry is alluded to in *Henry VIII*, II, iv, 186-199. Katherine lived happily with Henry for twenty years, having but one surviving child, Mary, who succeeded her half-brother in 1553. But Henry's fancy was captivated by Anne Bullen, whereupon he divorced Katherine in 1533. She was now known as the princess dowager and widow of Prince Arthur. Katherine now retired to Ampthill in Bedfordshire; the monastery of Kimbolton, at no great distance, becoming her religious resort. "She passed her life beloved by all around her, and respected by none more than the king himself, whose passions, rather than judgment or conscience, constrained him to prefer youth and beauty" (Fox). The incidents and speeches in the play of *Henry VIII* connected with Katherine are gathered from Cavendish and, though following history in the main, the poet has invested her with a dignity and pathos of his own, and has thus produced, in the words of Dr. Samuel Johnson, "the most perfect female character in the whole range of our drama." Miss Strickland says, "Shakespeare alone has properly appreciated and vividly portrayed the great talent as well as the moral worth of the right royal Katherine of Arragon." She died at Kimbolton in 1536 and was buried in Peterborough cathedral.

*Hen. VIII*, I, ii; II, i, 149, iv; III, i, ii, 69; IV, i, 22, ii.

KELLY, or Ketley, Sir Richard. An English knight whose retinue at Agincourt, where he fell in battle, consisted of "six lances and eight hundred archers."

*Hen. V*, IV, viii, 109.

KENT, Earl of. See Surrey (1).

*Rich. II*, V, vi, 8.

**KILDARE, Earl of.** This was Gerald Fitzgerald, who succeeded his father as ninth earl in 1513. His father, who was the head of the great Norman house of that name, had been appointed by Henry VII as his deputy in Ireland, and his son succeeded to the office almost as a matter of course. He remained deputy for practically the next twenty years, though he used his authority to revenge himself upon his private enemies and cared nothing for the welfare of Ireland. Henry VIII superseded Fitzgerald in 1520 by sending the Earl of Surrey (afterwards Duke of Norfolk) as deputy. But the arrangement broke down, because it was too costly to rule Ireland after the English fashion, and Kildare was restored. A second attempt at setting up a kinsman of Anne Bullen, the head of the House of Butler, also failed. At last in 1534, the cup of Kildare's iniquities was filled. He was angrily summoned to England and thrown into the Tower, where an early death saved him from Henry's vengeance.

*Hen. VIII*, II, i, 41.

**LANCASTER (1), House of.** This was the famous house that sprang from John of Gaunt, the fourth son of Edward III, who became Duke of Lancaster in right of his wife, Blanche, in 1362. It was long the rival of the House of York, sprung from Gaunt's younger brother, Edmund of Langley, Duke of York. There were three Lancastrian kings, Henry IV, V, and VI, while Henry VII claimed the throne as the last representative of that house.

*I Hen. VI*, II, v, 102.

*II Hen. VI*, I, i, 257; II, ii, 66; IV, i, 51.

*III Hen. VI*, I, i, 23ff., ii, 13f.; III, iii, 107; v, i, 59.

*Rich. III*, I, ii, 6, iii, 128, iv, 15; v, iii, 136, v, 827.

**LANCASTER (2), Duke of.** See Gaunt.

*Rich. II*, I, i, 1f.; II, i, 71ff., iii, 70.

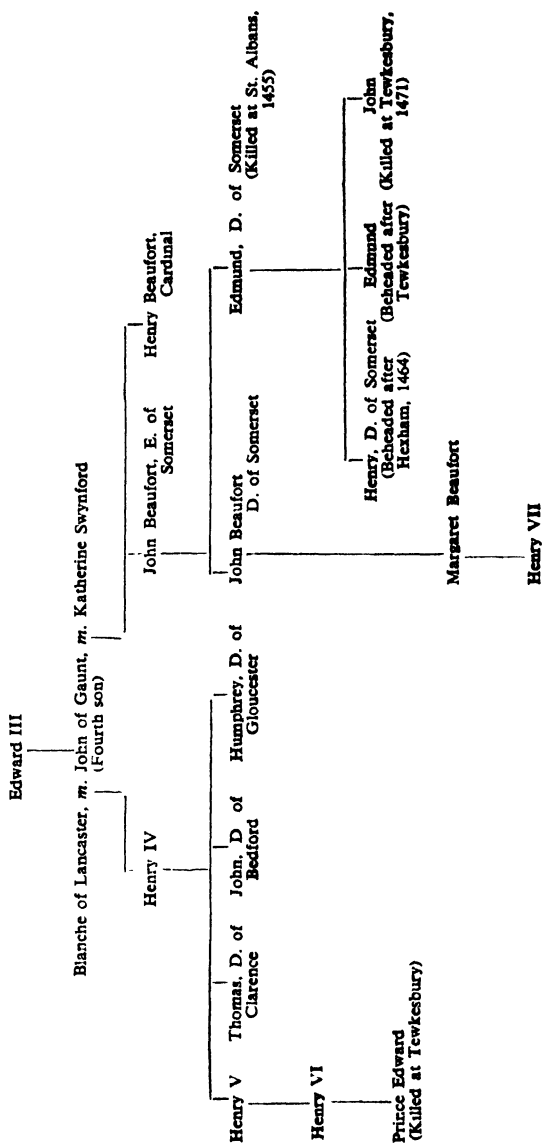
**LANCASTER (3), Duke of.** See Henry IV.

*Rich. II*, I, iii, 35f.; II, iii, 114f.; v, 103.

*I Hen. IV*, III, i, 8; IV, iii, 61; v, 45.

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 14f.

## HOUSE OF LANCASTER



LANCASTER (4), Prince John of. See Bedford.

*I Hen. IV*, III, ii, 171, iii, 219; v, iv, 8f., v, 25.

*II Hen. IV*, I, i, 134, ii, 73f.; iv, ii, 80, v, 226.

LANCASTER (5), See Henry IV.

*II Hen. VI*, I, i, 244.

*III Hen. VI*, I, i, 46ff.; II, vi, 8; v, i, 85.

*Rich. III*, I, ii, 4.

LANGLEY, Edmund of. See York (2).

*I Hen. VI*, II, v, 85.

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 46.

LANGTON, Stephen, Archbishop of Canterbury, was the son of Henry de Langton. He studied at Paris university, where he became a doctor in arts and theology. In 1206 Pope Innocent III called him to Rome and made him cardinal-priest of St. Chrysogonus. At the time of his appointment to the primacy in 1206, after John's dispute with the monks of Canterbury, Langton was the most illustrious living churchman of English birth. For five years after his appointment he lived in exile in France, owing to the fury of the king, while England groaned under an interdict. Langton tried to make peace between John and the pope, visiting Dover in the hope of effecting a settlement, but had to return into exile in 1209 on the failure of his mission. But the growing misery of his country moved him to action, and in 1212 he went to Rome taking with him the Bishops of London and Ely, to urge upon Innocent III to take active measures to put an end to this state of affairs. The pope thereupon declared the deposition of John, and called upon Philip of France to execute the sentence. In 1213 John submitted to the pope, and received Langton, who stepped at once into the old constitutional position of Primate of All England and guardian of the nation's safety, temporal as well as spiritual. He summoned the barons to St. Albans, produced the charter of Henry I, and wrung from the king a promise to establish the liberties guaranteed thereby. He opposed the demands of Nicholas, the papal legate, re-asserting the ancient freedom of the see of Canterbury, and acted as mediator between the king and the barons during the negotiations that led up to the great Charter, which he supported and is said to have himself drawn up. When the

## LEWIS]

barons took up arms, Langton remained at the king's side, not as his partisan, but as the advocate of the people's rights and liberties. After the Charter was signed, Langton resisted the papal bull which John had obtained for the excommunication of his enemies and travelled to Rome to obtain its withdrawal. On his return he applied himself to the reform of the church, translated the remains of Thomas à Becket to Canterbury, and in 1220 journeyed to Rome to obtain the right that, during his lifetime, no papal legate should be sent to England, thereby securing the political and ecclesiastical independence of his country. In 1222 Langton summoned a Church Council at Osney, which is to the ecclesiastical history of England what the assembly at Runnymede is to the political history. Its decrees, known as the Constitutions of Stephen Langton, are "the earliest provincial canons which are still recognized as binding in our ecclesiastical courts." From the establishment of ordered freedom in the Church, the archbishop turned again to the vindication of ordered freedom in the state; restored peace among the counsellors who were quarrelling for the mastery of the young king, Henry III, and acted as leader and spokesman of the barons when they demanded from that sovereign the confirmation of the great Charter. He continued to render distinguished service in both Church and state until his death at Slendon, Sussex, in 1228. Langton was a famous theologian, historian, and poet; while his political services to his country and her national Church were but a part of his work for the Church at large. He left a great body of literary remains which are still extant. The land of his birth needs no other proof of his loyalty to her than the great Charter of her freedom.

*John III, i, 143.*

LESTRELLE, Earl of. A French noble slain at Agincourt.  
*Hen. V, III, v, 45; iv, viii, 105.*

LEWIS VIII. See Dauphin (1).

*John, II, i, 149f.; III, i, 84f.; v, ii, 62, iv, 30f.,*

LEWIS I. See Emperor (2).

*Hen. V, I, ii, 76.*

LEWIS IX, king of France, known as "St. Louis," was born in 1214, being the son of Lewis VIII by Blanche of Castile. He owed his throne to his mother, who secured his coronation at Rheims in 1226, having reduced the kingdom to order during the intervening years. In 1234 Lewis married Margaret, daughter of Raymond, Count of Provence. The last rising of the reign was that promoted in 1242 by Isabella, widow of King John of England, and her husband Hugh Count of le Marche, but they were defeated and peace was restored early in the next year. During an illness in the following year Lewis took the cross, though his departure was delayed till 1248. He was disastrously defeated and captured at Mansura in 1250, and the next four years were spent in captivity in Syria. On his release he returned to France, which badly needed him, as Blanch had died in 1252. "He imposed peace between warring factions of his nobility by mere moral force, backed up by something like an awakened public opinion. His nobles often chafed under his unrelenting justice but never dared rebel." Lewis consolidated his position by resigning to Henry II of England the absolute sovereignty of many of his French fiefs, and also those of the King of Arragon, in exchange for fiefs of theirs more immediately within his own borders. He maintained peace also with his neighbours, though both England and Germany were torn by civil wars. In 1267 Lewis called a great assembly of his nobles at Paris, and publicly announced his intention of undertaking a second crusade. Few ventured to hold back from following his lead, and the next few years were spent in active preparation. They sailed in 1270, but were persuaded by Charles of Anjou, the king's brother, to attack Carthage, where Lewis died of the plague in August of that year.

"St. Louis stands in history as the ideal king of the Middle Ages. An accomplished knight, physically strong in spite of his ascetic practices, fearless in battle, heroic in adversity, of imperious temperament, unyielding when sure of the justice of his cause, energetic and firm, he was indeed 'every inch a king.' Joinville says that he was taller by a head than any of his knights. His devotions would have worn out a less robust saint." Lewis was canonized in 1297.

*Hen. V, I, ii, 77.*

(See : *the sub Capetian Dynasty.*)

LEWIS XI. See France, King of (4).

III *Hen. VI*, III, i, 84, iii; iv, i, 11ff., iii, 56.

**LIEUTENANT OF THE TOWER.** The two chief officers of this important place, which was a royal residence, a fortress, and a state prison, besides containing an armoury and the royal mint, were the Constable and his Lieutenant; the former was generally a person of very high rank, the latter usually of knightly degree. For the use of the title lieutenant as the designation of the constable, see *sub* Brackenbury.

(1) From the language used in III *Hen. VI*, iv, vi, by "master lieutenant," and the reply of Henry VI to his apology, we may infer that this officer is intended for John Tiptoft or Tibetoft, born 1427, succeeded his father, Baron Tiptoft, in 1448, and created first Earl of Worcester of that name in 1449. He was a zealous Yorkist, and during York's protectorate was appointed joint commissioner to keep guard by sea, and deputy of Ireland in 1457. On the accession of Edward IV he was appointed Constable of the Tower, sentencing to death John de Vere, Earl of Oxford, and his son Aubrey Vere soon after his appointment. As deputy of Ireland, in 1467 he executed the Earl of Desmond and his two infant sons. In 1470 he hanged and impaled twenty of Clarence's party taken at sea, whence he was ever afterwards called "the butcher of England." On the flight of Edward IV, Tiptoft sought refuge with some herdsmen in Huntingdonshire, but was discovered, thrown into the Tower and executed, his body being buried in Blackfriars church. Despite his cruelties Worcester is famous for his scholarship and interest in learning, and is eulogized by Caxton.

III *Hen. VI*, iv, vi.

(2) Tiptoft's successor was John Sutton, sixth Baron Dudley, who was born in 1401. He served under Henry V in France, and bore the royal standard at his funeral in 1422. Dudley was Viceroy of Ireland from 1428-80, being afterwards employed on various diplomatic missions. In 1455 he was taken prisoner at the first battle of St. Albans, and later was taken into favour by Edward IV. He would be the "lieutenant" who was ordered by Gloucester to depart and leave him alone with Henry VI. Dudley died in 1487.

III *Hen. VI*, v, vi.

**LINCOLN, Bishop of.** This was John Longland, who was born at Henley-on-Thames, Oxfordshire, in 1476. He was confessor to Henry VIII, and became Bishop of Lincoln in 1528, retaining the see until his death in 1547. Longland was the first to suggest to Henry the possibility of a divorce. He was a great lover of architecture, and designed the beautiful chapel at Lincoln. He was also of great help to Wolsey in founding Cardinal College, Oxford, and Ipswich Grammar School. In the administration of his see, Longland was active and vigilant, strenuously asserting the rights and privileges of the church. Whilst sternly repressing new doctrines, he was a staunch supporter of the royal supremacy and, though he afterwards bitterly repented of it, of the king's divorce. He wrote and published several volumes, among them a volume of his sermons.

*Hen. VIII, II, iv.*

**LIONEL.** See Clarence (1).

*I Hen. VI, II, iv, 88, v, 75.*

*II Hen. VI, II, ii, 18.*

**LORD CHAMBERLAIN.** At the time of the early scenes of this play, Charles Somerset was Lord Chamberlain for life. He was a natural son of Henry Beaufort, third Duke of Somerset. In his youth he was carefully looked after by Henry VII, who married him to Elizabeth, the daughter of William Herbert, second Earl of Pembroke. He was created Earl of Worcester in 1515 and accompanied Mary Tudor, daughter of Henry VII, to France on her marriage with Louis XII. Owing to his office as Lord Chamberlain, Worcester bore the chief part in the arrangements for the Field of the Cloth of Gold, and afterwards was present at the meeting of Henry and Charles V at Gravelines. He took part in the trial of the Duke of Buckingham, and helped to arrange the treaty between France and England, signed in 1525, after the battle of Pavia. But he was now old and feeble, and died in 1526. At his death the appointment was bestowed upon Sir William Sands, the Lord Sands of the play, and he held the office at the time when the king went in masquerade to Wolsey's house, and throughout the rest of the period occupied by the play. But probably the poet intended to represent the Lord Chamberlain throughout by Worcester.

*Hen. VIII, I, iii, iv; II, ii, jii; III, ii.*



## LORD]

**LORD CHANCELLOR.** There were three different persons who occupied this position during the period covered by the action of the play of *Henry VIII*.

(1) The first of these was the learned and upright Sir Thomas More, who became chancellor in 1529 on the disgrace of Wolsey, but resigned in 1532. He was a firm friend of Cranmer, and was the first Lord Chancellor not in Holy Orders.

*Hen. VIII*, III, ii, 296.

(2) Four days after the resignation of More, Henry gave the Great Seal to Sir Thomas Audley with instructions to perform all the duties of the office, though for a time he was only called Keeper of the Great Seal. But he was formally appointed to the office in January 1533. He was, therefore, the Lord Chancellor at the time of the coronation of Anne Bullen, and took part in that ceremony. He died in 1544.

*Hen. VIII*, IV, i.

(8) Audley was succeeded by Sir Thomas Wriothesley, the grandfather of Shakespeare's patron, who held the Great Seal at the time of the attack on Cranmer, of whom he was a bitter enemy. Shakespeare probably intended Sir Thomas More to fill the position throughout the play, although he was beheaded in 1535.

*Hen. VIII*, v, iii.

**LORD CHIEF JUSTICE.** This upright magistrate to whose "bold, just, and impartial spirit," the poet bears tribute, was Sir William Gascoigne. He was born at Gawthorpe, Yorks, about 1350. The future judge appears to have been known to Bolingbroke before the deposition of Richard II, for we find the name of William Gascoigne as one of the "attornies" to the banished Duke of Hereford, 1398 (Rymer's *Foedera*). In *Rich. II*, II, i, 203, he is referred to by York as Bolingbroke's "attornies general." Gascoigne was created Lord Chief Justice in 1400. After raising forces against the insurgent Northumberland in 1403, he received the submission of his adherents in 1405, being appointed a member of the court for their trial. Clement Maidstone asserts that Gascoigne was to have tried Archbishop Scrope, but that he refused to do so on the grounds that he had no jurisdiction over spiritual persons. The king, therefore, commissioned Sir William

Fulthorpe, "a knight and not a judge," to try the case, and so it was he who passed sentence upon the archbishop. This story is improbable, as Gascoigne would have been punished for such refusal either by removal or suspension from office. French says, "his action, recorded by Shakespeare, of committing the prince to prison is strictly in accordance with history." But Lee says, "the story, taken by Hall from Sir T. Elyot's *Governor* (1531) of his committing Henry V when Prince of Wales, is without foundation." Both Elyot and Hall agree that the occasion of the prince's insult was the arraignment of one of his servants before the chief justice. But Elyot represents the prince as at first merely protesting and, when protest proved unavailing, endeavouring to rescue the prisoner. Hall adds that the prince struck the judge a blow on the face with his fist and that the king showed his approval of Gascoigne's action by banishing Henry from court. Shakespeare draws on both accounts, identifying the servant with Bardolph. Gascoigne ceased to be chief justice soon after the accession of Henry V. Rigg says, "the latter scene (*II Hen. IV*, v, ii.), where the new king calls upon the chief justice to show cause why he should not hate him, and after hearing his defence bids him 'still bear the balance and the sword', is not only unfounded in fact, but is inconsistent with historical fact. It seems probable that Henry's first intention was to continue him in his office, but that at his own request his patent was not renewed." Fuller gives the date of his death as 1412 and that date is inscribed on his tomb in Harwood church, Yorks, but his will was dated 1419. "He was clearly regarded as the ideal of a just judge, possessed with a high sense of the dignity of his office, and absolutely indifferent in the discharge of his duty to his personal interest or even safety" (Rigg).

*II Hen. IV*, v, ii, iii, 145, v.

LORD MARSHAL. This was Thomas Holland, Duke of Surrey. See Surrey (1).

*Rich. II*, I, i, 204, iii.

LORD MAYOR OF LONDON (1). This is the first time that this important functionary is introduced into Shakespeare's plays. The title "Lord Mayor" was first allowed by Edward III in 1354. The events recorded in *I Hen. VI*, I, iii, and *III*, i, both

**LORD]**

really occurred in 1425, during the time that the Lord Mayor was John Coventry, citizen and mercer. It is recorded in history that he behaved manfully on these occasions and put the bishop of Winchester's faction to flight.

*I Hen. VI, I, iii; III, i.*

**LORD MAYOR OF LONDON (2).** This was Sir Edmund Shaw or Shaa, son of John Shaw of Dukinfield in Cheshire. He was a wealthy goldsmith and a prominent member of the Goldsmiths' Company. Both he and his brother (See Shaw, Dr.) were great partisans of the House of York and he appears to have had financial dealings with Edward IV. On his death Shaw was largely instrumental in persuading the citizens to support the Protector and to accompany him to persuade Richard to ascend the throne. In 1482 he founded and endowed a free Grammar School at Stockport, in which place his parents were buried. He died about 1487.

*Rich. III, III, i, v, vii.*

**LORD MAYOR OF LONDON (3).** Introduced into the coronation procession of Anne Bullen and in the christening procession of the Princess Elizabeth, was Sir Thomas Peacock.

*Hen. VIII, IV, i; v, iv.*

**LOVEL (1).** Sir Francis; born 1454, was the son of Sir John Lovel, eighth baron Lovel of Tichmarsh, Northamptonshire. Francis was knighted by the Duke of Gloucester in 1480 for his services on an expedition against the Scots. After the death of Edward IV, Lovel was a strong supporter of the claims of Richard. He had been one of the latter's companions at Middleham Castle and was created Viscount Lovel in 1483. When Richard came to the throne he appointed Lovel Chamberlain and Chief Butler of England. He was commissioned to levy troops against Buckingham in 1483 and two years later was sent to Southampton to fit out a fleet against Richmond but failed to prevent him landing at Milford Haven. Lovel is one of the persons alluded to in the rhyme which William Collingbourne posted on his parish church door and for which he was executed by Richard III.

"The Catte, the Ratte, and Lovel our dogge,  
Rulyth all Englande under a Hogge."

Lovel took part in the battle of Bosworth, afterwards taking

sanctuary at Colchester. Thence he escaped to Yorkshire, and after an abortive rising of the Staffords in that county, fled to Flanders. He returned with Lambert Simnel and was present at Stoke in 1487. Some say that he was killed there, others say that he escaped to a secret chamber in his manor-house of Minster Lovel, Oxfordshire, where a skeleton supposed to be his was discovered in 1708. It was seated before a table whereon were a book, papers, and pen. All crumbled to dust soon after the air was admitted.

*Rich. III.*, III, iv, v.

LOVEL (2). Sir Thomas; was the fifth son of Sir Ralph Lovel of Burton-Bendish, Norfolk. He was Esquire of the Body to Henry VII, for whom he had fought at Bosworth. Henry made him Chancellor of the Exchequer for life in 1485 and knighted him at Stoke in 1487. He became Marshal of the Horse to Henry VIII and Constable of the Tower. At the time of the arrest of Buckingham, Lovel was the Constable with Sir Richard Cholmondeley as his lieutenant. In *Hen. VIII.*, II, i, Sir Thomas appears in the discharge of his high office, while Sir Nicholas Vaux seems to act as his subordinate officer. Lovel was held in the highest esteem for valour and wisdom by Henry VIII and married Isabel, daughter and co-heiress of Edward, Lord Ros of Hamlake. The rise of Wolsey seems to have affected his position and in 1516, Lovel withdrew from public affairs. He was a great benefactor of the priory at Haliwell. His funeral, in 1524, was conducted on a splendid scale with full Romanist ceremonies and was attended by the mayor and aldermen of London. He was an ardent Romanist and Gardiner alludes to their common faith in the play.

*Rich. III.*, IV, iv, 520.

*Hen. VIII.*, I, ii, iii, iv; II, i; III, ii; v, i.

LUCY (1). Sir William. This character may be intended for Sir William Lucy of Charlecote, Warwickshire, where he was born in 1398. He was of Yorkist sympathies; was Sheriff of Warwickshire in 1435 and 1439; and died in 1466. He was buried in the church of Stratford-on-Avon. His lineal descendant, Sir Thomas Lucy, is the person celebrated by Shakespeare for all time as "Justice Shallow", placing him, however, in the reign of Henry IV, though he flourished in Queen Elizabeth's day.

Another Sir William Lucy, of a different family, was killed

## LUCY]

at the battle of Northampton in 1460 at the age of forty. He had married Elizabeth, the daughter of Hotspur's nephew, Thomas. This Sir William might be the person intended though he would only be 33 years old at the time of the death of the Talbots.

I *Hen. VI*, iv, iii, iv, vii.

LUCY (2), LADY; "was the daughter of one Wyat of Southampton; a mean gentleman if he were one, as mean a man as Wyat." (Bucke.) By Elizabeth Lucy, Edward IV had a son, Arthur Plantagenet, created by Henry VII, in 1588, Viscount Lisle. He died in 1541. It appears from Malone's note that the king was not affianced to Lady Lucy, and the only parliament assembled by Richard III declared the children of Edward illegitimate on account of his having secretly married Lady Eleanor Butler, but no mention was made of Lady Lucy. Gairdner is inclined to believe the story of Edward's "pre-contract" with Lady Eleanor Butler, the more so from the fact that after the marriage of Henry VII to Elizabeth, the daughter of Edward IV and Elizabeth Woodville, any allusion to the pre-contract was treated as disloyal. French says, "the alleged marriage of Edward IV to Lady Eleanor Boteler, daughter of John Talbot, third Earl of Shrewsbury, rests only on the very suspicious evidence of Stillington, Bishop of Bath and Wells, who stated that he performed the ceremony, 'no person being present but they twain and he'. But the Earl of Shrewsbury's only daughter was Anne Talbot, who married Thomas Boteler, Lord Sudeley, and she did not become a widow till 1473, i.e., nine years after Edward's marriage with Elizabeth Woodville. Moreover, Bishop Stillington did not speak of this secret marriage until after the death of Edward IV, i.e., twenty years after its presumed occurrence. His motive for making the assertion was revenge, for he had been disgraced by Edward IV; moreover he had also ambitious views, for he is said to have bargained with the protector, that the hand of the Princess Elizabeth, when she should be reduced to the grade of a private gentlewoman, should be given to his own base-born son, who perished miserably in France."

"The ecclesiastical theory of pre-contracts, which prevailed before the Reformation, was the cause of great abuses. Marriages that had been publicly acknowledged, and treated for a long time as valid, were often declared null on account of

some previous contract entered into by one or other of the parties" (Gairdner).

*Rich. III.*, III, vii, 5.

LYMOGES. As mentioned under Austria, this Lymoges is confused with that duke. Vidomar, Viscount of Lymoges, had discovered a treasure upon his estate. As his suzerain Richard I demanded the whole, though a portion had been offered to him. On his refusal Richard besieged his vassal in his castle of Chaluz. After famine had set in, the garrison offered to surrender if their lives were spared but Richard contemptuously refused the request. As he was riding with Mercades to reconnoitre a position, he was shot in the left shoulder by an archer named Gourdon. The signal for assault was immediately given; the castle was taken by storm and, with the exception of the archer, the garrison were hanged as robbers who had detained the property of their sovereign. Richard ordered Gourdon to be brought into his presence and, when he learned that his father and two brothers had fallen by the king's own hand, generously gave him his liberty and a gift of 100/-. But Mercades secretly detained and flayed the unhappy youth alive. Lymoges was slain by Falconbridge in 1200.

*John*, III, i, 114.

MACBETH (1). Sir Walter Scott says, "While the works of Shakespeare are read, History may say what she will, but the general reader will only recollect Macbeth as a sacrilegious usurper," and again "as a king, the tyrant so much exclaimed against was in reality a firm, just, and equitable prince." Macbeth, the son of Finley or Finlegh, Thane of Ross (Shakespeare says of Sinel Thane of Glamis), was apparently one of the sub-kings who submitted to Canute in 1032. He was Mormaer, or district chief, in Moray and became commander-in-chief of the forces of King Duncan. But he rebelled, slew his sovereign in fair fight at Dunsinane in Perthshire, and seized the kingdom in 1040; his ally being the Norse jarl Torfin. French says Duncan was slain at Bothgowran, near Elgin. Macbeth seems to have represented the Celtic and northern element in the population as against Duncan and his family, who were gradually drawing south and connecting themselves by intermarriage and customs with the Saxons of the Lothian and northern England.

In 1050 Macbeth went to Rome on a pilgrimage and distributed money broadcast among the poor. In 1054 Siward invaded the country by land and sea, defeated Macbeth and established Malcolm as king of Cumbria. Macbeth maintained his power in the north for three years longer but in 1057 he was defeated and slain by Malcolm at Lumphanan in Aberdeenshire. He was succeeded by his step-son, or some say, his nephew, Lulach, as his own son, Luctacus, had fallen along with his father. But Lulach was slain by Malcolm in the next year, who thus became undisputed king of the realm.

See George Chambers "Caledonia" for vindication of Macbeth.

"The reign of Macbeth forms a noticeable period in our history. He had a wider dominion than any previous ruler, having command over all the country now known as Scotland, except the Isles and a portion of the W. Highlands. He is the first ruler of Scotland known to have opened communications with Rome, and the first who appears in ecclesiastical records as a benefactor of the church. With him, too, ended the mixed or alternative royal succession . . . and from Macbeth downwards, a son, where there is one, succeeds his father" (Burton).

In those days the succession was neither strictly hereditary nor strictly elective, but was regulated by what has been termed the law of Tanistry. According to this law the person in the family of the reigning prince, whether son, brother, or even more remote relative, who was judged best qualified, either for abilities or experience, was chosen under the name Tanist, to lead the army during the life of the king, and to succeed him after his death.

"The rule of succession was that the crown went alternately to a descendant of the House of Constantine, son of Kenneth MacAlpine, and to a descendant of Constantine's brother, Aodh (Hugh). These alternations went on till the crowning of Malcolm II (1005-34) and then ceased, for Malcolm II had slain the unnamed male heir of the house of Aodh, a son of Boedhe, in order to open the succession to his own grandson, 'the gracious Duncan'. Boedhe had left a daughter, Gruach; she had by the Mormaer, or under-king of the province of Murray, a son, Lulach. On the death of the Mormaer she married Macbeth, and when Macbeth slew Duncan (1040), he was removing a usurper—as he understood it—and ruled in

the name of his stepson, Lulach. The world will always believe Shakespeare's version of these events and suppose the gracious Duncan to have been a venerable old man, and Macbeth an ambitious thane with a bloodthirsty wife, he himself being urged on by the prediction of witches" (Andrew Lang).

"Of the defamatory legends that supplied the materials of the poet the explanation is at once simple and satisfactory. With the Scottish historians who followed the War of Independence it was a prime concern to produce an unbroken line of Scottish kings stretching to the fathers of the human race. As an interloper in this series Macbeth was a monster, whose origin and whose actions must alike have been contrary to nature. In the hands of Wyntoun, therefore, improved by Hector Boece, Macbeth was transmuted into the diabolic personage whom Holinshed presented to the genius of Shakespeare" (Hume Brown).

Macbeth appears to have been in reality a just and equitable prince, and there is reason to believe that his administration was conducted with great ability, and to the general satisfaction of the people.

*Macb.*, I, i, 7, ii, 16ff., iii, iv, v, vi, vii; II, i, ii, iii, iv, 23f.; III, i, ii, iii, 2, iv, v, 4, vi, 4f.; IV, i, iii, 18f.; v, iii, v, vii.

MACBETH (2), LADY; wife of the above, was the daughter of Bodhe, the eldest son of Kenneth IV, who fell in battle with his father. She first married Kilcomgain, Thane of Moray, and afterwards Macbeth. Her real name was Gruoch and she had deadly injuries to avenge upon the reigning monarch. Her grandfather had been dethroned and killed by Malcolm II, her brother assassinated, and her first husband burned in his castle along with 50 of his friends, whilst she herself had to fly for her life along with her infant son to Ross, where she was received by Macbeth. Sir Walter Scott considers that Macbeth's claim to the throne was better than Duncan's, but that of Lady Macbeth must have been more valid than either Duncan's or Macbeth's title. Both historian and dramatist are silent as to the fate of Lady Macbeth, though it is probable that she died by her own hand.

*Macb.* I, v, vi, vii; II, ii, iii; III, i, ii, iv; v, i.





MALCOLM III (Canmore), was the eldest son of Duncan I, king of Scotland. On the death of his father he fled to England in 1040, from where he returned and was crowned at Scone in 1057. In 1070 he married as his second wife Margaret, the sister of Edgar the Atheling, the Saxon heir to the English crown. He now became engaged in almost incessant, successful warfare which guaranteed the independence of his kingdom. In 1070 he aided his brother-in-law against William the Conqueror, and ravaged Northumberland. Two years later William invaded Scotland by land and sea and compelled Malcolm to do homage at Abernethy. The English claimed that this was for Scotland, but the Scots maintained that it was only for Cumbria and Lothian, which Malcolm held of the English king. In 1091 Edgar repaired to Scotland and Malcolm invaded England. William Rufus invaded Scotland on his return from Normandy, but a reconciliation was effected without fighting. Malcolm was present at the foundation of Durham Cathedral in 1093, and visited William II at Gloucester. But when the English king demanded homage for Scotland they parted in anger. As soon as he returned home, Malcolm harried Northumberland and was slain near Alnwick in 1093, and three days later his wife, the "sainted Margaret," died of grief.

"A prince of vigour and talent and, having been bred in the school of adversity, he had profited by the lessons taught in that stern seminary" (Sir Walter Scott). Though he was not altogether free from the fierceness and barbarity of his age, he was a man of undaunted courage, and of a noble and generous disposition. Lord Hailes says, "From his early youth to his last invasion of England, his conduct was uniform. He maintained his throne with the same spirit by which he won it. Though he was the ruler of a nation uncivilized and destitute of foreign resources, and had such antagonists as William the Conqueror and William Rufus to encounter, yet for twenty-seven years he supported this unequal contest, sometimes with success; never without honour. That he should have so well asserted the independence of Scotland is astonishing when the weakness of his own kingdom, and the strength and abilities of his enemies, are fairly estimated."

*Macb.*, I, ii, iv, vi; II, iii, iv, 25; III, vi, 9; IV, iii;  
v, ii, 1, iii, 8, iv, vi, vii

## MARCH]

MARCH (1), Earl of; Edmund Mortimer. See Mortimer (1).  
II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 36; IV, ii, 144.

MARCH (2), Earl of; Roger Mortimer. See Mortimer (2).  
II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 37.  
III *Hen. VI*, I, i, 106.

MARCH (3); Edmund Mortimer. See Mortimer (3).

In I *Hen. IV*, the title is misapplied to Sir Edmund Mortimer, younger brother of Roger, fourth earl, whose sister Elizabeth married Hotspur. Sir Edmund, who married Glendower's daughter, was the guardian of his nephew, the young Earl of March, whose title is wrongly applied to the uncle. Shakespeare has followed Holinshed in the mistake. The young Earl of March does not appear in the play of *Henry IV* but is mentioned in I and II *Henry VI*.

I *Hen. IV*, I, iii, 84.

MARCH (4), Earl of. This was the title of Edward IV before the death of Richard Duke of York, his father. The title came to him through his grandmother, Anne Mortimer, sister and heiress of the last male of that house, Mortimer (4).

III *Hen. VI*, II, i, 192; IV, iii, 93; V, V, 40.

MARGARET OF ANJOU, Queen Consort of Henry VI,<sup>1</sup> daughter of Rene of Anjou, was born in 1430 and was betrothed to Henry in 1444 after the truce of Tours. She was married with great splendour at Nancy in 1445—Suffolk standing as proxy for the absent bridegroom—and afterwards conducted to London, where she was crowned in Westminster Abbey. This match was brought about by Beaufort and the peace party, and Margaret, therefore, attached herself to the Beaufort-Suffolk party. "Unluckily for her and for the nation, she never got beyond the partisan's view of her position. A stranger to the customs and interests of her adopted country, she never learned to play the part of a mediator, or to raise the crown above the faction fight that constantly raged round Henry's court. In identifying her husband completely with the one faction, she almost forced the rival party into opposition to the king and to the dynasty, which lived only to ratify the will of a rival faction" (Tout). Moreover, the surrender of the English possessions in Maine was obnoxious

to Englishmen. Margaret greedily appropriated part of Duke Humphrey's estates on his decease in 1447. She shared the unpopularity of Suffolk, but the suggestion that she had improper relations with him is absurd, for Suffolk was an elderly man and his wife was a firm friend of the queen both during his life and after his death. On Suffolk's fall in 1450 Margaret transferred her confidence to Somerset, who incurred great unpopularity by his loss of Normandy and Guienne. When he was thrown into prison in 1450, Margaret released him and restored him as chief of the council. In 1453 Henry became insane and York was appointed protector. Margaret now gave birth to a son, Edward, and thus York's hopes of a peaceful succession to the throne were destroyed, while the rivalry between the queen and himself was intensified. The protector had barely established a settled government when, in 1455, Henry recovered his senses and, under the influence of Margaret, restored Somerset and dismissed York. Fearing that Margaret would try to compass his death, York took up arms. The royal forces were defeated at St. Albans. Somerset was killed and York again became protector. Margaret left her husband in disgust and busied herself seeking support in various parts of the country, though a hollow reconciliation with York was made in 1458. But in the next year both parties were again in arms, while in 1460 Henry was defeated at Northampton. The lords now decided that Henry should reign for life, while York should succeed him, meanwhile ruling in his name as protector. The setting aside of her son's succession to the throne roused Margaret to fury, and she fled with him to Harlech Castle, whence she took ship to Scotland. Here she signed a treaty for Edward's marriage with Mary, sister of James III, and she also agreed to the surrender of Berwick in return for Scottish help. Meanwhile the battle of Wakefield had been fought and won by the Lancastrians. As Margaret was still in Scotland the stories of her inhuman treatment of York's remains, told by later writers, are obvious fictions. The queen, with a motley army of Scots, Welsh, and wild northerners who plundered as they advanced, marched southward and defeated Warwick at the second battle of St. Albans in 1461 and the king fell into her hands. But Warwick was able to rejoin Edward, the new Duke of York, who, fresh from his victory at Mortimer's Cross, entered London and claimed the throne as Edward IV. He afterwards

## MARGERY]

followed the retreating Margaret to Yorkshire, where he inflicted a crushing defeat on her at Towton. Margaret fled with Henry to Scotland, surrendering Berwick to the Scots. This act of treason and the misconduct of her troops greatly strengthened Edward's position. In 1462 Margaret went to Brittany, whence she invaded Northumberland. Failing to raise the Lancastrians her troops were dispersed and, after she and her son had been protected by a robber, she returned destitute to Sluys. For the next seven years Margaret lived in obscurity on the Continent, but on Warwick's quarrel with Edward IV she became reconciled to that noble and landed at Weymouth in 1471. Meanwhile Warwick had been slain at Barnet and shortly afterwards Margaret herself was defeated at Tewkesbury. Her son was slain on the field of battle, her husband and herself taken prisoner. Margaret remained in confinement for the next five years, being moved about from one prison to another. She was released by the treaty of Pecquigny in 1475 and conveyed to France. She was pensioned by Louis XI but compelled to surrender all her rights of succession to her father's French possessions. But Louis soon ceased to pay her pension and she died in great poverty in Anjou in 1482, being buried in Angiers cathedral.

I *Hen. VI*, v, iii, v, 2ff.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, 39, iii; II, iii, 39; III, i, ii; IV, i, 58, iv, ix; v, i, ii.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, iv; II, ii, v, vi, 75; III, i, 35f., iii; IV, i, 115, vi, 60; v, iv, v, vii, 37.

*Rich. III*, I, i, 93, iii; III, iii, 15, iv, 94; IV, i, 46, iv, 8f.; v, i, 25.

MARGERY JOURDAIN. See Jourdain.

II *Hen. VI*, I, ii, 75, iv.

MARLE, Earl of. A French noble who fell at Agincourt.

*Hen. V*, iv, viii, 105.

MARY TUDOR, afterwards Queen of England, was the only surviving child of Henry VIII by Katherine of Arragon. She was born at Greenwich in 1516; was carefully educated, and wrote and spoke three languages. Before the divorce of her mother there was some talk of a match between her and the Duke of Orleans, but nothing came of it. Mary was declared illegitimate in 1534 and restored to her rights in 1544, suc-

ceeding to the throne on the death of her half-brother, Edward VI, in 1553 at the age of 37. In the next year she married Philip II of Spain. This match led to the revolt of Sir Thomas Wyatt and on its failure Lady Jane Grey was executed. England was now formally reconciled to the papacy, and shortly afterwards the Marian persecution broke out and the fires of Smithfield were relighted. Among the sufferers were Cranmer, Hooper, Ridley, and Latimer. In 1558 the French retook Calais, the last vestige of the Norman dominions of the English crown. Mary's persecutions had alienated the hearts of her subjects, her husband neglected her, and this last blow was too much for her. She died in November 1558, leaving only a soiled memory and a humiliated country. She was succeeded by her half-sister, Elizabeth.

Mary "was of low stature, thin, and delicate, with grave and sedate looks, and plain features, though her piercing eye commanded respect, and her deep-toned masculine voice could speak eloquently and strongly. Her kindness and charity made her beloved by her servants and intimates. Though the fierce Tudor will and temper flamed up from time to time, she had learned by adversity to keep them under strict control. She was proud of her Spanish descent and kinship to the emperor, no less than of her unblemished orthodoxy and ardent devotion to the ancient faith" (Tout).

*Hen. VIII*, II, iv, 175.

MATTHEW GOUGH. See Gough.

II *Hen. VI*, iv, v, 11, vii, (s.d.)

MAYOR (1), of St. Albans. This town in reality was not incorporated until the reign of Edward VI, when John Locky was appointed first mayor. At this date probably the chief officer of the town would be a bailiff in the service of the prior.

II *Hen. VI*, II, i.

MAYOR (2), of York. This was Thomas Beverley, merchant of the Staple, who was mayor for the second time in 1471. He was at first inclined to resist the entrance of Edward IV, but the Yorkist king gained admission on the plea that he sought the restoration of his dukedom alone. The title of "Lord Mayor" was first bestowed on the chief magistrate by Richard II on his visit to York in 1389, on which occasion he presented his own sword to the then mayor.

III *Hen. VI*, iv, vii.

MAYOR]

MAYOR (3), of Coventry. This was a town much devoted to the interests of Henry VI and his queen. Just before the battle of Barnet, the mayor was John Brett, who served from 1470–71. For his adherence to Henry VI he was deprived of his sword of state by Edward IV and the citizens were compelled to pay a fine of 500 marks to recover the sword and their franchise. Four years later Edward IV kept the festival of St. George at Coventry, and became the sponsor of the infant child of the then mayor.

III *Hen. VI*, v, i.

MELUN. “The Viscomte de Melun is named in history as an adherent of the dauphin, and who, falling sick in London, sent for his friends among the English barons who had joined the French, and gave them timely warning, as in the play, of the dauphin’s secret intentions against their lives and estates. The ‘Count de Melun’ is mentioned in a treaty dated A.D. 1194, between the kings of England and France, and is probably the person in this play. It would be interesting to discover whether Shakespeare, following the old play, had any authority for deriving Melun from an English ancestor; he states one of the reasons for warning the barons of their impending fate :

‘For that my grandsire was an Englishman.’

Robert de Melun, Bishop of Hereford from 1168–66, was one of the chief opponents of Thomas à Becket” (French).

*John*, iv, iii, 15 ; v, ii, iv, v, 10.

MENTEITH was one of the titles held by Murdock Stewart, as well as that of Fife, his mother having been Countess of Menteith in her own right. See Mordake.

I *Hen. IV*, i, i, 78.

MICHAEL, Sir. A friend of the Archbishop of York. There is nothing to indicate the particular rank or calling of this gentleman but, from the manner in which he is addressed by the archbishop, we may reasonably conclude that he was his chaplain. The title “Sir” properly belonged to such ecclesiastics as had taken the university degree of “Bachelor of Arts,” and is frequently found attached to the lists of incumbents of livings. In some of his comedies Shakespeare introduces clerical, though not very reverend, characters with the prefix “Sir.”

I *Hen. IV*, iv, iv.

MILAN, Cardinal of. See Pandulph.

*John*, v, ii, 120.

MONMOUTH, Harry of; see Henry V.

I *Hen. IV*, v, ii, 50, iv, 59.

II *Hen. IV*, Ind., 29; I, i, 19f., iii, 83; II, iii, 45.

*Hen. V*, iv, vii, 84ff.

I *Hen. VI*, II, v, 23; III, i, 198.

MONTACUTE, LORD. This was Henry Pole, who was born in 1492. He was the brother of Reginald Pole, cardinal and archbishop of Mary's reign. Henry was the eldest son of Sir Richard Pole and Margaret Countess of Salisbury, daughter of George Duke of Clarence, the brother of Edward IV. He distinguished himself in the French campaign of 1513, in which year he was knighted and an old family title, the barony of Montague or Montacute, forfeited by the Nevilles under Edward IV, was conferred upon him. He married Joan, daughter of Lord Abergavenny, who was himself the son-in-law of the Duke of Buckingham. When Buckingham was arrested in 1521, Abergavenny and Montacute were arrested also, but were soon afterwards released. Lord Montacute was deeply grieved at the overthrow of the papal authority and the dissolution of the monasteries, though for a time he remained loyal. Later he was arrested along with his brother Geoffrey, and both were beheaded for treason on Tower Hill in 1538.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 217.

MONTAGUE, Marquis of. This was John Neville, third son of Richard Neville (Salisbury 4. q.v.), by Alice, daughter and heiress of Thomas de Montague, fourth Earl of Salisbury. John Neville was knighted in 1449 and played a prominent part in the armed conflicts between the Nevilles and the Percies in 1453. After having been suppressed by York during his term of office as protector, these tumults broke out again in 1457, when John Neville carried off Lord Egremont and his brother Richard Percy to his father's castle of Middleham in Wensleydale after defeating them at Castleton in Cleveland. In company with his father, John joined his elder brother Warwick at the battle of Bloreheath. But John and his brother Thomas pursued the flying Cheshireman with such thoughtlessness that



## MONTGOMERY]

they were captured by Sir John Daune and confined in Chester castle, being attainted after the Yorkist defeat at Ludlow. They were released after the Lancastrian victory at Northampton in 1460 and John was raised to the peerage as Baron Montague. He was in London at the time of the battle of Wakefield, thus escaping his father's fate, but fell into Margaret's hands at the second battle of St. Albans. Though his life was spared, he remained in custody at York until the new king, Edward IV entered that city. Montague now raised the siege of Carlisle and continued to help Warwick in the north, having been appointed Warden of the East March. In 1464, Montague assisted to defeat utterly the Lancastrians under the Duke of Somerset and Sir Ralph Percy at Hexham, for which service he was rewarded with the estates and earldom of Northumberland. Neville did not escape all suspicion of complicity in the rebellion of 1469. The pardon and release of Henry Percy, whose earldom he held, and the insult offered by the king to the family of his brother Warwick, caused him to join the Lancastrians. Though he allowed Edward to land in Yorkshire unmolested, he fought against him at Barnet in 1471, where both Montague and Warwick were slain. The bodies of the two great brothers, after having been exposed to public view in St. Paul's cathedral, were removed to the ancient burial place of the Montagues, Bisham Abbey, Berks., where their father was buried.

"Montague seems to have been a man of mediocre talents and hesitant temper, who was drawn rather reluctantly into treason by the stronger will of his brother and the family solidarity." (Tout.)

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, ii; II, i, ii, vi; III, iii, 164; IV, i, vi, viii; v, i, ii, 3ff., iv, 14, vii, 10.

**MONTGOMERY, Sir John.** The name of this knight, who has been mistaken for his brother, should be, as given by Holinshed, Sir Thomas Montgomery. He was the second son of Sir John Montgomery of Falkbourn, Essex and had been an "esquire of the body" to Henry VI. His declaration "I came to serve a king, and not a duke" (III *Hen. VI*, iv, vii, 49), is recorded in history. He joined Edward IV at Nottingham with a considerable force, and was also with him at Barnet. Montgomery became one of the most intimate councillors of Edward IV, who appointed him Treasurer of Ireland and captain of

Caernarvon Castle. He accompanied the king on his invasion of France and was afterwards employed as an ambassador to Louis XI. Sir Thomas was selected to escort Queen Margaret to France in 1475 when she left England for ever, though her departure in the last scene is made to take place much earlier. After the death of Edward, Montgomery attended the coronation of Richard III, to whom he became one of the "knights of the body", and died in 1495.

III *Hen. VI*, iv, vii.

MORDAKE. This was Murdac or Murdock Stewart, second Duke of Albany and Earl of Fife, the eldest son of Robert, first Duke of Albany, by Margaret, Countess of Menteith.

Murdock could not, therefore, be "the eldest son of beaten Douglas" as Shakespeare represents. "Mordake is here called the son of Earl Douglas, through a mistake into which the poet was led by the omission of a comma in the passage of Holinshed from whence he took this account of the Scottish prisoners" (Steevens). The eldest son of Earl Douglas as well as James, the son and heir of Douglas, lord of Dalkeith, was also taken prisoner.

On the death of his father in 1420, Albany became governor of Scotland, its king, James I, being then a prisoner in England. But his rule was corrupt and incompetent and he was suspected of delaying the king's liberation, which did not take place until 1424. In the next year Albany and his sons were arrested for treason and, after a short imprisonment, condemned and executed, his titles and estates being forfeited to the crown.

I *Hen. IV*, i, i, 71f.; II, iv, 391; IV, iv, 24.

MORE, Sir Thomas; Lord Chancellor of England and author, was the son of Sir John More. He was born in 1478 and educated at St. Anthony's school, Threadneedle Street, London. He was placed in the household of John Morton, Archbishop of Canterbury, and steadily rose in favour. In 1516 he completed his description of the imaginary island of Utopia. More was treated by Henry VIII, into whose service he entered, with exceptional familiarity during his residence at court. He was present at the Field of the Cloth of Gold. While he was speaker of the House of Commons in 1523 he pleaded the privilege of the House against Wolsey. On the fall

## MORTIMER]

of the latter, More succeeded him as Lord Chancellor and was noted for the rapidity with which he dispatched the business of that office. But he vexed the king by his opposition to the relaxation of the heresy laws, resigned the chancellorship, and lived for some time in complete retirement. In 1534 he was summoned before four members of the council to explain why he declined to acknowledge the wisdom of Henry's attitude towards the pope and, though willing to swear fidelity to the new Act of Succession, he refused to take any oath that should impugn the pope's authority or to acknowledge the validity of the king's divorce from Katherine. He was committed to the Tower, where he spent his time in literary work. After several examinations he was tried for high treason and sentenced to be hanged at Tyburn, but the sentence was commuted to decapitation and he was beheaded in 1535; his body being buried in St. Peter's in the Tower, while his head was exhibited on London Bridge. Catholic Europe was shocked by the news, for he was regarded as one of the glories of English literature. More formed with Erasmus, Colet, Grocyn, and Linacre the noble band of "Oxford Reformers" who established the New Learning in England.

*Hen. VIII, III, ii, 398.*

MORTIMER (1). Edmund de; third Earl of March, born 1352, became the ward of Edward III and was closely associated with that king's sons. He succeeded to the earldom of March in 1360 and eight years later married Philippa, only daughter of Lionel Duke of Clarence, second son of Edward III. On Lionel's death, Mortimer succeeded to his vast estates. The descendants of Philippa became the nearest representatives of the line of Edward III, and handed on to the House of York that claim to the throne which resulted in the Wars of the Roses. This marriage is cited by Richard Plantagenet, Duke of York, when he asserted his claim to the crown; while Jack Cade, the rebel, claimed to be a grandson of Philippa, alleging that his father was a twin brother of Roger Mortimer, but stolen away in infancy and meanly brought up.

Edmund Mortimer became Marshal of England in 1369 and Ambassador to France and Scotland in 1373. Three years later he led the constitutional and popular party in the "Good" parliament against the court and John of Gaunt. After the death of the Black Prince, Gaunt tried to obtain from parlia-

ment a settlement of the succession through males only, thus openly setting up the claims of his own family against those of the Countess of March, but in vain. March carried the sword and the spurs at the coronation of Richard II but failed to obtain any great share in the administration. In 1379 he was appointed lieutenant in Ireland and established himself in eastern Ulster. He caught cold when crossing a river in winter time while on an expedition into Munster and died at Cork in 1381. His eldest daughter, Elizabeth, married Henry Percy, surnamed Hotspur.

II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 36f. ; IV, ii, 144.

MORTIMER (2). Roger de ; fourth Earl of March, eldest son of the above, was born in 1374 and succeeded to the earldom when only seven years old. He was brought up as a royal ward and publicly declared heir-presumptive by Richard II in 1385, marrying the king's niece, Eleanor Holland, in 1388. He was knighted in 1390 and accompanied the king to Ireland in 1394, becoming lieutenant of that country three years later, where he waged war successfully against the native tribes. Richard II became suspicious of his popularity but his death at Kells in 1398, while leading an attack on some of the Leinster clans, prevented his arrest. It was the death of Roger Mortimer that induced Richard II to undertake his last fatal expedition to Ireland, during which absence Bolingbroke landed. Mortimer left two sons, the elder of whom succeeded him in the title. Of his two daughters, Anne, the elder, married Richard Earl of Cambridge, and after the death of her two brothers without issue, transmitted the estates of the Mortimers and the representation of Lionel of Clarence in the succession to her son, Richard Duke of York.

II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 37f.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, 106.

MORTIMER (3). Edmund de ; Shakespeare, following Holinshed, has confused the two Mortimers (3) and (5),<sup>o</sup> uncle and nephew, making them one and the same person.

The Mortimer of I *Hen. IV*, was Sir Edmund Mortimer, second son of Edmund Mortimer, third Earl of March, and younger brother of Roger, fourth Earl. Sir Edmund was born at Ludlow in 1374 and portents are said to have attended his birth. These stories are very generally, as indicated by Shake-

spear, but erroneously transferred to Owen Glendower. Edmund's father died when he was five years old but left him well provided for. On the death of his elder brother, Sir Edmund became, by reason of the minority of his nephew, the young Earl of March, the most prominent representative of the family interests in the Welsh Marches, and attached himself to the rising fortunes of Henry Bolingbroke. On the revolt of Owen Glendower, Sir Edmund was closely associated with his brother-in-law, the famous Hotspur, in opposing the Welsh rebel. In 1402, he marched from his town of Ludlow and attacked Glendower, who had taken up a position on a hill called Brynglas. Sir Edmund was defeated and captured, Glendower taking him to Snowdon, where he treated him kindly. The Percies set about procuring his ransom but sinister rumours were abroad that Mortimer had sought the captivity into which he had fallen and Henry IV forbade Hotspur to effect his liberation, at the same time seizing his plate and jewellery. Mortimer was probably then wavering and the king's action precipitated him into the arms of his enemy, whose daughter he married. He at once joined in an invasion of Radnorshire, declaring his intention of restoring Richard II, or if he were dead, of placing his own nephew on the throne. Angered by the king's refusal to ransom Mortimer and by his claim to the ransom of the Scottish prisoners taken at Homildon, the Percies joined the rising. The famous treaty partitioning the country into three parts, signed in the house of the Archdeacon (Dean) of Bangor (See *sub* Archdeacon) in 1405, was the work of Mortimer and his brother-in-law and father-in-law, and by it the claims of young Mortimer were entirely ignored. Hotspur was defeated at Shrewsbury before Glendower could join him, and the failure of the latter's attack on Henry IV, reduced the revolt to a native Welsh rising and Mortimer was soon in great distress. He was finally besieged in Harlech Castle and perished miserably during the siege in 1409. By Glendower's daughter, Mortimer had one son, Lionel, and three daughters, but by 1413 they were all in the hands of Henry in London and before the end of that year Lady Mortimer and her daughters were dead, being buried at St. Swithin's church, London.

In *I Hen. IV*, i, iii, 80, the poet correctly refers to Mortimer as the brother-in-law of Hotspur but in line 156 Hotspur's reference is a confusion of Sir Edmund with his brother, the

father of the young Earl of March. In II, iii, 84, Lady Percy correctly speaks of this character as her "brother Mortimer", but she is wrong when she expresses her fear that he "doth stir about his title" to the crown, line 85. The heir to that was their nephew Edmund, a lad of ten years at the time of the rising who "though a mere boy, took the field with his followers, fell also into Glendower's hands, and was carried by him into Wales" (Hume). Malone says, "If he was present at the battle of Shrewsbury, he was probably there against his will, to grace their cause, and was under the care of the king soon after."

*I Hen. IV*, I, i, 38, iii, 80ff.; II, iii, 26ff.; III, i, ii, 119;  
IV, iv, 22.

MORTIMER (4). Dame Elizabeth. This was the daughter of Edmund, third Earl of March, who married Henry Percy, surnamed Hotspur. She was put under arrest after the death of her husband at Shrewsbury in 1403 but was subsequently released and married Thomas, lord Camoys. She died in 1444. She left one son by her first husband, Henry, who was restored to his grandfather's title and estates as second Earl of Northumberland by Henry V, in 1414.

*I Hen. IV*, II, iii, iv, 124; III, i.

MORTIMER (5), Edmund de; fifth and last Earl of March of that male line, was born in the New Forest in 1391 and succeeded his father in the title at the age of seven. As Richard II had already recognized his father as heir-presumptive to the throne, the young earl was now looked upon as the future king. But the accession of Henry IV changed his prospects and, along with his younger brother Roger, who died in 1409, he was placed under guard at Windsor. The fact that his aunt was the wife of Hotspur was in itself sufficient to secure for him honourable treatment during the early years of Henry IV's reign. But the defection of the Percies and the flight of the young Earl of March in 1405 led to his being placed under restraint. He was now committed to the custody of the Prince of Wales, afterwards Henry V, and thus grew up a remarkable friendship between these rival heirs to the throne. On his accession Henry V released Mortimer and restored him to his estates, while March repaid Henry's generosity by fidelity which withstood the severest temptations, refusing to claim his

rights though repeatedly urged to do so by his friends. "History does not present an instance of more devoted friendship than that felt by the Earl of March for Henry V" (French). In 1415, Richard Earl of Cambridge, who had married Edmund's sister Anne, formed a plot to carry March into Wales and there proclaim him king as soon as Henry sailed for France. But Mortimer revealed the plot to Henry and Cambridge and his accomplices were taken and executed. Immediately afterwards March accompanied Henry V to France, where he rendered distinguished service. After that king's death March returned to England and was appointed a member of the council of regency but, owing to the jealousy of Humphrey of Gloucester, he retired to Ireland in 1424, of which country he had been appointed lieutenant two years previously. He was suddenly taken with the plague early in the next year and died at the ancient seat of his family, the stately Trim Castle, being only thirty-two years old. Trim Castle had come to the Mortimers by marriage with one of the Grenvilles, who were lords of Trim. By his wife Anne, daughter of the Earl of Stafford, Edmund left no family and, as his younger brother had predeceased him, the male line of the Mortimers became extinct and the estates and the titles of March and Ulster passed to his nephew, Richard Duke of York.

The scene in *I Hen. VI*, II, v, in which Mortimer is introduced, is difficult of explanation but, as Rolfe says, "the accounts of the chroniclers are so confused that the poet has not committed any violation of historical truth, such as it presented itself to him." Shakespeare dramatises the following passage of Hall (third year of Henry VI). "During which season, Edmund Mortimer, the last Earl of March of that name (which long time had been restrained from liberty, and finally waxed lame), deceased without issue, whose inheritance descended to Lord Richard Plantagenet, son and heir of Richard Earl of Cambridge, beheaded, as you have heard before, at the town of Southampton. Which Richard, within less than thirty years, as heir to this earl, Edmund, in open parliament claimed the crown and sceptre of this land."

The name Mortimer and his relationship to Richard of York are historically correct, except that he refers to his mother as daughter to Clarence when he meant grand-daughter. But as pointed out above, the last male of the house of March died

at Trim in early manhood, 1424, whereas the Mortimer in the scene is described as bowed down with age and detained within a loathsome dungeon, the place of his imprisonment and death being represented as the Tower of London. The best solution is to accept his introduction in *I Hen. VI*, II, v, as a dramatic fiction used to support the claims of York.

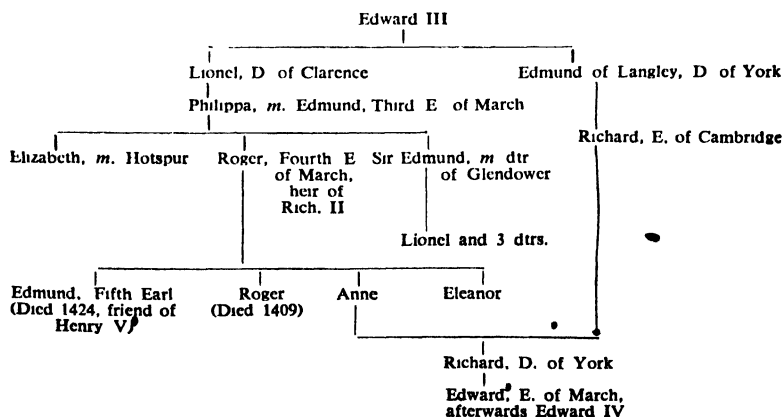
French has added to the confusion by identifying this Mortimer with Sir Edmund, who married Glendower's daughter. It may be possible that the son of this Sir Edmund and Glendower's daughter, who had been imprisoned in the Tower from the time of his capture with his mother and sister soon after the taking of Harlech Castle, died about now, and was confused with Edmund, the last Earl of March. But this Mortimer's name was Lionel and he would be the cousin of Richard of York's mother and, therefore, not his uncle.

In *II Hen VI*, II, ii, 39-42, after York has correctly recounted his descent, Salisbury creates the same confusion as before by identifying the fifth Earl of March with his uncle Sir Edmund, who married Glendower's daughter. If these five lines spoken by Salisbury could be omitted it would entirely obviate the confusion in this passage.

*I Hen. VI*, II, v.

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 38f.

### HOUSE OF MORTIMER





**MORTIMER]**

**MORTIMER (6)**, John ; a name claimed by Jack Cade, who pretended to be descended from a twin brother of Roger, fourth Earl of March, stolen away in infancy and meanly brought up. The claim was entirely baseless.

*II Hen. VI*, III, i, 859f. ; iv, ii, 41f., iv, 28, vi, 1f., vii, 33.

**MORTIMER (7)**. Sir John ;

**MORTIMER (8)**. Sir Hugh ;

uncles to the Duke of York, both of whom fell at Wakefield in 1460. It does not appear who the father of these characters was. Courtenay says, "bastard uncles by the mother's side."

*III Hen. VI*, I, ii.

**MORTIMER (9)**. Lord, of Scotland ; Shakespeare makes the mistake of giving the family name of Mortimer, which belonged to the English earls of March, to the Scottish family of Dunbar, who also held the title of earls of March in that country. The character intended was George, eleventh Earl of Dunbar and March, born 1388 and succeeded to the estates on his father's resignation in 1368. He supported the Stewart claim to the throne in 1371. Five years later the earl, who was one of the most powerful and turbulent of Scottish nobles, massacred the English traders and merchants at Roxburgh Fair because the governor of the castle of Roxburgh, which was then held by an English garrison, had refused to compensate him for the loss of one of his retainers, who had been killed during a brawl at the fair in the previous year. In 1388, Dunbar bore a share in the Scottish victory of Chevy Chase. His daughter Elizabeth was affianced to Prince David, the heir to the Scottish throne but, through the influence of the Duke of Albany, this alliance was broken off and one with Margaret, the daughter of Archibald Earl of Douglas, made. No apology or explanation was made to Dunbar, who naturally resented this affront. As his estates lay on the frontiers of both kingdoms, the bonds which united his allegiance to the Scottish throne were never strong and he accordingly submitted to Henry IV of England. At the battle of Homildon Hill, March fought with Percy on the English side and, by prudently checking Hotspur's fiery charge, won the victory by means of the English archers. He was the first to warn the English king of the conspiracy of the Percies and attended him at Shrewsbury, where he rescued

Henry from the fierce onslaught of Douglas and carried him out of danger. But he was now weary of his exile and disappointed of his revenge, and in 1409 he returned to his allegiance to Scotland, his estates being restored to him. He died in 1420.

*I Hen. IV*, III, ii, 165.

MOWBRAY (1), Thomas. See Norfolk (1).

*Rich. II*, I, i, ii, 46f., iii.

*II Hen. IV*, III, iii, 29.

MOWBRAY, (2), LORD; Earl Marshal and third Duke of Nottingham. This was Thomas Mowbray, elder son of Norfolk (1). He was born in 1386 and was twelve years old at the time of his father's banishment after his quarrel with Hereford. At the time of his father's death in 1399, Thomas was a page in attendance upon Isabella, the child-queen of Richard II, but he was never advanced to the superior title. Smarting under the humiliation of his exclusion from his father's honours, Mowbray joined in the treasonable movements of 1405 and was privy to the Duke of York's plot to carry off the young Earl of March. After a quarrel for precedence with the Earl of Warwick, Mowbray fled to the north, where he joined Archbishop Scrope in drawing up a list of grievances, one of which styled Henry IV, his father's old antagonist, a usurper. Scrope and Mowbray, being joined by Northumberland, raised the standard of revolt in 1405. The rebels marched to Skipton Moor, five and a half miles north of York, where, against Mowbray's wishes, the archbishop consented to the fatal interview with Westmorland, who induced him to dismiss his followers, on the promise of pardon and redress of grievances. Immediately afterwards the leaders were arrested and condemned to death. Mowbray is said to have shown some natural fear of death on his way to execution but was encouraged by his companion, the archbishop, to keep a stout heart. His body was buried in the Greyfriars church, York, and his head set up on Bootham Bar. He was succeeded by his younger brother John, who married Westmorland's daughter, Catherine.

The title "lord marshal", by which Shakespeare makes the archbishop correctly address him in *II Hen. IV*, I, iii and IV, i, was hereditary in his family and he was allowed to retain the title, though it was dissociated from the office of

## MURRAY]

Earl Marshal of England, which office had been granted to Westmorland. One of Mowbray's grievances was that he had been left only a barren title.

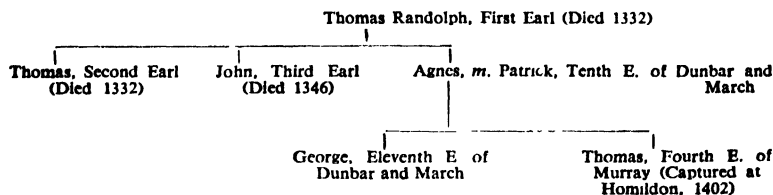
II *Hen.* IV, I, iii; IV, I, ii, iv, 84.

**MURRAY, Earl of.** This was Thomas Dunbar, younger son of Patrick, tenth Earl of Dunbar and March by Agnes (Black Agnes of Dunbar), daughter of Sir Thomas Randolph, who was created first Earl of Murray by Robert Bruce. Randolph died at Musselburgh in July 1332 and was succeeded by his sons, Thomas who was killed at Dupplin in August 1332, and John, killed at Durham in 1346. As both of these died without issue the earldom of Murray passed to this sister, Agnes. She transferred the title to her younger son Thomas, the Earl of Murray captured by Percy at Homildon.

Holinshed gives his name as Thomas Earl of Murray and French identifies him as Thomas Dunbar. The latter writer, however, says that he married Agnes, daughter of Thomas Randolph, first Earl of Murray, and succeeded him as second earl. But as will be seen by the table below, Agnes was really his mother. Thomas succeeded his uncles as fourth Earl of Murray and not his grandfather, as second earl.

I *Hen.* IV, I, i, 73.

### EARLS OF MURRAY



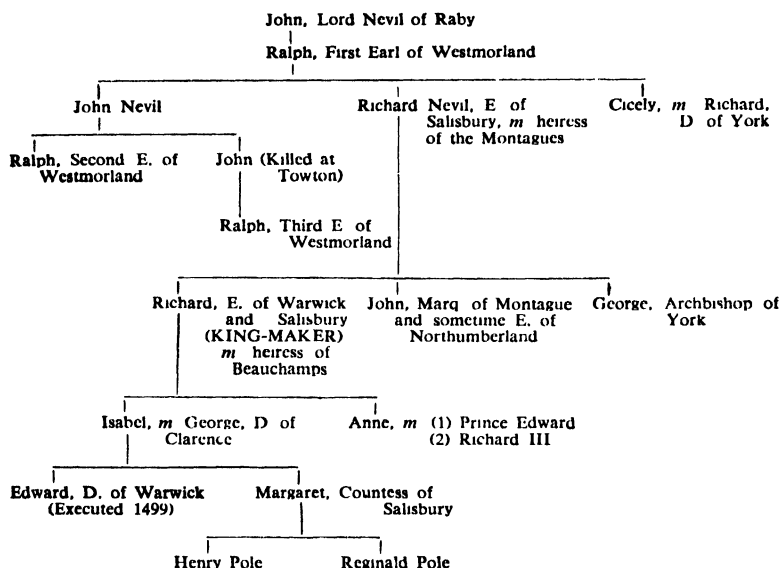
**NEVIL (1).** This is a mistake for Richard Beauchamp. See Warwick (1).

III *Hen.* IV, III, i, 66.

**NEVIL, House of.** This was the famous baronial house sprung from John, Lord Nevil of Raby, many of whose immediate descendants figure in the pages of Shakespeare.

II *Hen.* VI, I, i; 240, iii, 76; II, ii, 8; III, ii, 215;  
IV, i, 91; V, i, 202.

## HOUSE OF NEVIL



NICHOLAS (1). Gawsey. See Gawsey.  
*I Hen. IV*, v, iv, 45.

(2). Hopkins. See Hopkins.  
*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 221, ii, 147.

(3). Vaux. See Vaux (2).  
*Hen. VIII*, II, i, 96.

NOBLEMAN, A. In the sixteenth century, the title "nobleman" was not strictly confined to the peerage but often applied to persons of knightly degree. The person intended was Sir James Harrington, who captured Henry VI at Waddington Hall. Edward IV bestowed on "Sir James Harrington knight, for taking the great rebel Henry, lately called Henry VI, the castle, manor, and lordship of Thurland with other lands in Lancashire, Yorkshire, and Westmorland" (Rymer, 1465).

*III Hen. VI*, III, ii.

## NOBLEMEN]

NOBLEMEN, Two ; with great standing bowls as christening gifts for the Princess Elizabeth.

(1). Sir Robert Radcliffe or Ratcliffe, first Earl of Sussex, first Viscount Fitzwalter, and second Baron Fitzwalter, was the son of John, first Baron Fitzwalter, who was attainted in 1495 for taking part in Perkin Warbeck's rebellion. Robert was born in 1483, obtained the reversal of his father's attainder in 1506, and became a prominent courtier under Henry VIII. He died in 1542.

(2). Henry Somerset, second Earl of Worcester, born in 1499, was the eldest son of Charles, first Earl of Worcester (see *sub* Chamberlain). He succeeded to his father's title in 1526 ; took part in most of the court ceremonies—including the baptism of Elizabeth—and state trials of the period ; received, among other grants of the estates of dissolved monasteries, that of Tintern Abbey. He died in 1548.

*Hen. VIII, v, v.*

NOBLEMEN, Four ; with canopy :

(1). LORD ROCHFORD. This was George, son of Sir Thomas and brother of Anne Bullen. He was knighted and created Viscount Rochford in 1530, being appointed Warden of the Cinque Ports in 1534. In 1536 he was arrested and taken to the Tower on the same day as the queen, his sister. He was arraigned for acts of incest and high treason and executed two days before his sister.

(2). LORD HUSSEY ; Sir John ; was comptroller of Henry VII's household. He was employed by Henry VIII on diplomatic service abroad. In 1521 he became Chief Butler of England and chamberlain to Princess Mary in 1533. He was executed in 1537 on the charge of complicity in the " Pilgrimage of Grace ".

(3). LORD WILLIAM HOWARD ; first baron Howard of Effingham, was the eldest son, by his second wife, of Thomas Howard, second Duke of Norfolk of that house. He was convicted of treason in connection with Queen Katherine Howard in 1541 but was pardoned. For his defence of London against Wyatt he was created a peer by Mary. In 1554, he remonstrated against the harsh treatment meted out to Elizabeth and visited her when she was brought a prisoner to Hampton

Court. Under Elizabeth he was reappointed Lord Chamberlain and took the queen's part against the rebellion of the northern earls in 1569. He died in 1573 and was buried in Reigate church.

(4). LORD THOMAS HOWARD, brother of the above, became third Duke of Norfolk of the Howard house. See *sub* Surrey (4).

*Hen. VIII*, v, v.

NORBERY, Sir John; one of the companions of Bolingbroke, became Governor of Guisnes on the accession of his patron as Henry IV. He was also treasurer of the exchequer. The family seat was Stoke D'Abernon in Surrey.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 284.

NORFOLK (1), Duke of. This was Thomas Mowbray, born 1366, son of John tenth baron Mowbray and Elizabeth, daughter of Margaret Countess of Norfolk. He succeeded his brother John as twelfth baron Mowbray in 1383 and Richard II at once revived, in favour of his young kinsman, the title of Earl of Nottingham. In the next year the king invested him for life with the office of Earl Marshal of England, which had been held by his great-grandfather, Thomas of Brotherton, Earl of Norfolk and Earl Marshal. He served in Richard II's expedition against the Scots in 1384 and shared with his brother-in-law, Arundel, in the naval victory of 1387. Mowbray joined the Lords Appellant in their proceedings against the king's favourites. But after he had shaken off their control, Richard conciliated Nottingham, making him Warden of the Scottish Marches in 1389, and Captain of Calais two years later. He accompanied the king to Ireland in 1394 and assisted in the negotiations for his marriage with Isabella of France in 1396, thereby increasing his own popularity. In the following year he helped the king to arrest Gloucester, Arundel, and Warwick. As Captain of Calais he received Gloucester into his custody in that town but when called upon to produce his prisoner for trial he asserted that Gloucester had died in prison. Mowbray received part of Arundel's estates and was created Duke of Norfolk in 1397. But the king had not forgotten that Norfolk had once been his enemy, while the royal favourite, the Earl of Wiltshire, was urging his removal. Norfolk is said to have confided his fears to Bolingbroke as they rode from

## NORFOLK]

Brentford to London and the latter laid a written account of the conversation before the king. Both were summoned to appear at the parliament at Shrewsbury and it was while on his way here that Norfolk is said to have laid an ambush for John of Gaunt. (*Rich. II*, i, i, 135-7.) Hereford accused Mowbray of treason and it was decided that the matter should be decided by combat, at Coventry. But, after the combatants had actually entered the lists, the king stopped the trial and banished Norfolk for life and Hereford for ten years. Norfolk reached Venice in 1399, where he made preparation for a pilgrimage to Palestine, but he died in Venice in September of that year.

“It is not possible to pronounce a final verdict upon Mowbray’s character while we have to suspend our judgment as to what part he played in the mysterious death of the Duke of Gloucester. But at best he was no better than the rest of the little knot of selfish, ambitious nobles, mostly of the blood royal, into which the older baronage had now shrunk, and whose quarrels already preluded their extinction at each others’ hands in the Wars of the Roses. Mowbray had some claim to be a benefactor of the Church; for besides confirming his ancestors’ grants to various monasteries he founded and handsomely endowed in 1396 a Cistercian priory at Epworth in Axholme.” (Tait.)

*Rich. II*, i, i, 29f., iii, 37ff.; iv, i, 80ff.

*II Hen. IV*, iii, ii, 29; iv, i, 111.

**NORFOLK (2), Duke of.** This was John Mowbray, third Duke of Norfolk and hereditary Earl Marshal of England. He was born in 1415 and was the only son of John, second Duke by his wife Catherine Nevil. John was knighted by Henry VI in 1426 and succeeded his father in 1432. Being a minor, his estates were placed in the care of Humphrey of Gloucester until 1436. In that year he served under his guardian in the expedition sent to relieve Calais. Next year he was appointed warden of the East Marches, and two years later he was a member of the peace conference which met at Gravelines. In 1443 he was thanked by the council for the part he had played in settling the Norwich disturbances. Three years later he went on a pilgrimage to Rome. On his return he supported the Duke of York in his struggle for the direction of the royal policy. York, whose wife was the youngest sister of Norfolk’s

mother, was thus his uncle by marriage. But his influence with his uncle was overshadowed by that of the Nevils and he did not receive any office on York becoming protector in 1454. He was not present at the first battle of St. Albans, and when York, Warwick, and Salisbury again took up arms in 1459, Norfolk kept aloof from them, taking the special oath of allegiance to the Lancastrian succession at Coventry, when these nobles were attainted by the parliament that met in that town. After the Yorkist victory at Northampton, Norfolk espoused that cause. He shared Warwick's defeat at the second battle of St. Albans. But he escaped and was present at the meeting of Yorkist lords in Baynard's Castle, when it was decided that Edward, the new Duke of York, should be proclaimed king, and accompanied him to his enthronement at Westminster. Shortly afterwards he went north with the new king and fought at Towton, in 1461, "like a second Ajax;" afterwards officiating as Earl Marshal at Edward's coronation. He was rewarded with the offices of Steward, Chief-Justice of the royal forests south of the Trent, and Constable of Scarborough Castle. But Edward refused to sanction his forcible seizure, from John Paston, of Sir John Fastolfe's castle of Caistor, to which Norfolk had not a vestige of claim and compelled him to withdraw from it. Norfolk died in 1461 and was buried in Thetford priory. By his wife Eleanor, he left a son John, who became fourth duke. This son figures largely in the "Paston Letters," maintaining his father's claim to Caistor Castle, which he seized and held for a short time in 1469. The fourth duke left an only daughter, Ann, who was betrothed to Richard, second son of Edward IV. The young prince was created Duke of Norfolk, but he was murdered before the marriage was consummated, and on Anne's death the title and estates passed to Margaret, eldest daughter of Norfolk (1). Margaret had married Sir Robert Howard, and their son, John Howard, was created Duke of Norfolk and Earl Marshal in 1483. (See below.) This creation is an indirect proof that the young princes were murdered soon after Richard III's usurpation, as he would not have created his friend Duke of Norfolk had his nephew been still alive.

French identifies the Norfolk of III *Hen. VI* with the fourth duke, but my opinion is that the Norfolk of this play was the third duke, as he lived until 1461, was a supporter of the Yorkist claims, and is last mentioned by Shakespeare just



## NORFOLK]

after the second battle of St. Albans, at which the third duke was present. He escaped after this defeat, and was present at Baynard's Castle as stated above. Moreover the third duke brought up fresh troops which he had been raising in Norfolk, and turned the scale in Edward's favour at Towton. This was probably the incident referred to by the poet in *III Hen. VI*, II, i, 142-144, though somewhat advanced in time.

*III Hen. VI*, I, i; II, i, 188f.

**NORFOLK (8), Duke of.** This was John Howard, the first duke of that family. He was the son of Sir Robert Howard by Margaret, daughter of Thomas Mowbray, first duke. John Howard was present at the battle of Chatillon in Guienne, 1453, and afterwards entered the service of his relative, John Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, and became the knight of the shire for the county. It is evident that he was of service to the Yorkist cause, for on the accession of Edward IV in 1461, Howard was knighted and appointed Constable of Colchester Castle. He took an active part in his patron's quarrel with John Paston. In 1462 he was appointed Constable of Norwich Castle, received grants of several manors forfeited by the Earl of Wiltshire, and continued to rise in the king's favour. He served against the Lancastrians and in Brittany, but was created Baron Howard by the restored Henry VI in 1470. Nevertheless he remained faithful to the Yorkist cause, commanded a fleet against the Lancastrians, and on Edward's landing in 1471, proclaimed him king in Suffolk. Howard was probably present at Barnet and Tewkesbury. In 1471 he was appointed Deputy-Governor of Calais, and employed several times in negotiations with the French king. Although he swore to maintain the succession of the young Prince of Wales, Howard supported Richard of Gloucester. On his accession, Richard created him, in 1483, Duke of Norfolk and hereditary Earl Marshal of England, thus reviving the dignities held by the Mowbrays. Norfolk took part in persuading the queen to deliver up her younger son, the Duke of York, that he might be lodged in the Tower with his brother. When Richmond landed in 1485, Norfolk summoned his retainers to meet him at Bury St. Edmunds to fight for Richard III. The night before he marched to join the king, several of his friends tried to persuade him to remain inactive, and one of them wrote on his gate:

“ Jack of Norfolkke be not to bolde,  
For Dykon, thy maister, is bought and solde.”

But he refused to desert the king, and commanded the vanguard, mainly consisting of archers, at Bosworth where he was slain, being afterwards attainted by the new king, Henry VII. “ Norfolk was a wise and experienced politician, and an expert and valiant soldier, careful in the management of his own affairs, and a faithful adherent of the House of York; but his memory is stained by his desertion of the interests of the son of his old master and by his intimate relations with the usurper” (Hunt).

*Rich. III.* II, i, 101; IV, iv, 440; V, iii, iv, v, 13.

#### NORFOLK (4), Duke of.

There is a personal confusion between the Duke of Norfolk (*Hen. VIII.* I, i), who was present at the Field of the Cloth of Gold, but who died in 1524, and was therefore not living at the time of Wolsey's overthrow in 1529; and the Duke of Norfolk who became so in 1524, and was in 1520 deputy in Ireland. [III, ii, 260, see Surrey (4).] Shakespeare has rolled two Norfolks into one, also two Surreys. It is impossible to separate them as the real Surrey, represented as present with his father (III, ii), was only a lad of thirteen. Shakespeare intended this character to be Thomas Howard, Earl of Surrey in *Rich. III.* Duke of Norfolk in 1514.

Thomas Howard, second Duke of Norfolk of that house, born in 1443, was the only son of John Howard, first duke of that house. He was educated at Thetford School, and began his career at the court of Edward IV, but took sanctuary at Colchester when that monarch was driven out of the country by Warwick in 1470. On Edward's return in the next year, Howard fought by his side at Barnet. Soon afterwards he married Agnes, daughter and heiress of Sir Philip Tilney and widow of Humphrey, Lord Berners. He now took up his abode at his wife's house of Ashwellthorpe Hall, Norfolk, where he lived the life of a country gentleman. Howard was knighted in 1478, and in 1483 was created Earl of Surrey at the same time that his father was created Duke of Norfolk. He now took his place at court, and was distinguished by loyalty to the actual wearer of the crown, whoever he might be. He acquiesced in Richard III's usurpation and held one of the chief com-

mands in his army at Bosworth, where he behaved with great gallantry. Thus Sir John Beaumont records his valour in his *Bosworth Field* :

“ Young Howard single with an army fights.”

Attempting to avenge his father's death, he was hemmed in by his foes. Sir Richard Clarendon and Sir William Conyers were slain while coming to his rescue. After fighting until he was faint, Howard yielded his sword to a noble enemy, Sir Gilbert Talbot, who led the right wing of Richmond's army. He was attainted by Henry VII and imprisoned in the Tower for three years, but refused the chance to escape offered to him at the time of the invasion of the Earl of Lincoln in 1487. Two years later Henry VII released him and restored him to his earldom of Surrey. In the same year he was sent to subdue the rising in Yorkshire and, having quickly done so, was appointed Lieutenant of the North. In 1497 James IV of Scotland laid siege to Norham Castle, but retreated before the rapid advance of Surrey, who retaliated by a raid into Scotland. At the close of 1501 Surrey was sent to arrange the terms of peace with James IV and to negotiate the marriage treaty between that monarch and Margaret, daughter of Henry VII, conducting that princess to Edinburgh for her marriage in 1503.

On the accession of Henry VIII, Surrey's age, position, and experience marked him out as the chief adviser of the new king and he remained the most influential member of the Privy Council until ousted from power by Wolsey in 1512, when he left court. When, in the next year, Henry led his army into France, Surrey was left as Lieutenant-General of the North, and won the decisive victory of Flodden Field over James IV. This victory was due to Surrey's energy in raising troops and organizing his army, as well as to the strategical skill which he showed in his preparations for the battle; and is the more remarkable when we remember that he was then in his 70th year. In recognition of this important victory he was restored to his father's rank as Duke of Norfolk in 1514. After struggling in vain against Wolsey's policy, he gradually resigned himself to it. Norfolk was left in charge of the kingdom when the king went to the Field of the Cloth of Gold in 1520. Next year a painful task awaited him, when he was appointed Lord High Steward for the trial of the Duke of Buckingham on a charge of treason. With tears streaming down his face, Norfolk

passed sentence of death on a man who was his friend and with whose sentiments he entirely agreed. In spite of his great age he remained at court two years longer, retiring in 1523 to his castle at Framlingham, where he died in May of the following year, and was buried at Thetford priory, of which he was patron.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, ii; II, ii; III, ii; IV, i; V, iii, v.

NORFOLK (5), old Duchess of, godmother to Princess Elizabeth, was Agnes, daughter of Sir Philip Tilney, second wife and now widow of the Duke of Norfolk in this play.

*Hen. VIII*, IV, i; v, iii, 169, v.

## HOUSE OF NORFOLK

### Hugh Bigot, First Earl

**Roger Bigot, Second Earl (probably the Bigot  
of the play of King John)**

His descendant Roger, Fifth Earl, died in 1306 without issue, having appointed the King his heir and in consequence, his estates and dignities became invested in the Crown. They were conferred on the youngest son of Edward I.

Edward I. *m.* Margaret of France (second wife)

Thomas (born at Brotherton in 1300)  
Earl of Norfolk

Margaret, Countess of Norfolk and hereditary  
Earl Marshal of England, 1338

Elizabeth, *m.* John, Tenth Baron Mowbray

**John, Eleventh Baron Mowbray**

Thomas Mowbray, First Duke  
(1366-99)

Thomas, Lord Mowbray  
(1386-1405)

**John Mowbray, Second  
Duke (1389-1432)**

Margaret, m Sir Robert  
Howard

**John, Third Duke (1415-**

John Howard, D. of  
Norfolk

**John, Fourth Duke**

Thomas Howard, D. of  
Norfolk, m. Agnes  
Tilney

Anne, infant daughter,  
betrothed to Richard  
of York, brother of  
Edward V

**NORTHAMPTON, Earl of**; a title of Edward Stafford, Duke of Buckingham, which he inherited through his ancestress Eleanor, daughter of the last de Bohun, Earl of Hereford and Northampton. See Buckingham (8).

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 20Q.

## NORTHUMBERLAND]

**NORTHUMBERLAND (1)**, first Earl of. This was Henry Percy, born 1342, elder son of Henry, third baron Percy of Alnwick. In 1359 he married Margaret, daughter of Ralph Neville of Raby and took part in the French war of that year, being knighted in France in the succeeding year. On his return he was appointed Warden of the Scottish Marches. In 1376 he was one of the lords who, in the "Good Parliament," supported the commons in their resolve to make supplies depend on redress of grievances. But he was won over from the popular cause by John of Gaunt, whom he joined in supporting Wycliffe. As a result of this desertion, Percy was attacked by the London populace in 1377. In this year he was created Earl of Northumberland by Richard II and appointed Earl Marshal. He was recalled to the north by a Scottish invasion to which he retaliated by a foray into Scotland and by retaking Berwick. After a second Scottish invasion, Percy was preparing to inflict punishment when John of Gaunt made a truce with the Scots and the Warden was forbidden to proceed. This caused a violent quarrel between the two nobles which was only composed by the intervention of the king. Northumberland was continually engaged in affairs on the Scottish border until 1397, when he supported Richard II in his assumption of despotic power. But he was soon disgusted by the king's violent behaviour, and spoke strongly against his misgovernment. Just before he sailed, Richard sent a special summons to the earl for his attendance in the expedition to Ireland, and as he did not obey, sentenced him and his son to banishment. Northumberland, therefore, on Bolingbroke's landing, joined him with a large force and it was asserted that, at Conway, he received from Richard a declaration that he was ready to resign the crown. He brought Richard as a captive to Henry at Flint, and rode between them to London. Henry rewarded him by making him Constable of England, giving him the Isle of Man in fief, and by other grants of lands. To Northumberland, Henry owed the success of his attempt on the crown, and for long he remained one of the new king's chief supporters. He was again employed on the Scottish marches, and in 1401 he and his son "Hotspur" inflicted a crushing defeat on the Scots at Homildon Hill. The Percies were exhausted for supplies which the king could not or would not grant. His refusal to allow them to recoup themselves by retaining the ransoms of their Scottish prisoners or to help

them to ransom their kinsman, Sir Edmund Mortimer, taken prisoner by Glendower, exasperated them and in 1403 they rose in revolt. "The impatient spirit of Henry Percy and the factious disposition of the Earl of Worcester inflamed the discontent of that nobleman, and the precarious title of Henry tempted him to seek revenge by overturning the throne which he had first established" (Hume). Hotspur was defeated and slain at Shrewsbury, and his uncle, the Earl of Worcester, was beheaded, whereupon Northumberland submitted and, after being kept in custody for a short time, was pardoned and restored to most of his offices and lands. But he still remained discontented, and in 1405 excused himself from parliament on the plea of age and ill-health. But before the end of the year he was again in revolt. After an abortive attempt to surprise and capture his rival, Ralph Neville, first Earl of Westmorland, he was joined by Lord Bardolph and Sir William Clifford. When the rebellion was crushed Northumberland and Bardolph fled first to Scotland, then to Wales, and thence to France. In 1408 they relanded in Scotland and crossed the border, putting out a proclamation that they had come to relieve the people from unjust taxation. The insurgents were met by Sir Thomas Rokeby, the Sheriff of Yorkshire, and defeated at Bramham Moor, near Tadcaster. Northumberland was slain and his head placed upon London Bridge.

"Northumberland was magnificent in his daily life, gracious in manner, and given to courting popularity. Over a large part of northern England, where the feudal tie was stronger than in the south, he had almost kingly power. Prompt and fearless in war, he was the hero and champion of the English of the Northern Marches in their almost ceaseless strife with the Scots. He probably desired good and vigorous government, and was not wholly insincere in his profession of anxiety for the public welfare. At the same time his actions were really the results of selfish motives, of ambition, jealousy of the rival house of Nevil, anger, pride, and mortification. Though he was exceedingly crafty, his temper was violent, and his policy devoid of wisdom. Proud, passionate, unstable, and faithless, he was never to be relied on, except when his own interests were to be served or his feelings gratified by his adherence to the cause which he had adopted. His desertion of the popular cause in 1377 was shameful. For his desertion of Richard II there were valid reasons, but his conduct

## NORTHUMBERLAND]

towards his fallen master was base, and merely dictated by his wish to place the new king under overwhelming obligations, and reap a rich harvest from his gratitude. . . . That he had a cause for discontent seems certain but . . . when he found that the king had learnt to distrust him, saw his rivals advancing in favour and power, and knew that his greatness was slipping from him, his heart became bitter; and, though he retained his capacity for guile, he lost his judgment and acted with a lack of wisdom and a recklessness that reached their highest point in his last expedition" (Hunt).

*Rich. II.*, II, i, ii, 54, iii; III, i, iii; IV, i; V, i, vi.

*I Hen. IV.*, I, i, 70, iii; II, iv, 376; IV, iii, 67, iv, 14; V, v, 87.

*II Hen. IV.*, Ind. 36; I, i, iii, 13f.; II, iii; III, i, 44ff.; IV, i, 8.

**NORTHUMBERLAND (2), Lady.** Shakespeare does not intimate that this lady was the mother of Hotspur. She was in reality the earl's second wife, Maud, daughter of Thomas de Lucy of Cockermouth, and widow of Gilbert de Umfraville, Earl of Angus.

*II Hen. IV.*, II, iii.

**NORTHUMBERLAND (3), second Earl of.** This was Henry Percy, son and heir of Hotspur. He was born in 1394 and accompanied his grandfather on his flight to Scotland in 1405, where he was detained in honourable confinement. On the petition of Joan Countess of Westmorland, whose daughter Eleanor he had married in 1414, he was restored to his dignities and estates by Henry V. He was subsequently appointed Warden of the East Marches and, after repelling a Scottish invasion in 1417, ravaged their southern borders. Upon the death of Henry V, Northumberland was appointed a member of the council of regency, but was kept constantly occupied in repelling the forays of the Scots. His later years were much disquieted by the breaking out afresh of the old quarrel between the Nevilles and the Percies. When the Duke of York took up arms in 1455, Northumberland joined the royal forces and was slain at the first battle of St. Albans, his body being buried in the Lady chapel of the abbey there.

*III Hen. VI.*, I, i, iv; V, vii, 8.

NORTHUMBERLAND (4), third Earl of. This was Henry Percy, eldest son of the above. He was born in 1421 and knighted by Henry VI in 1426 on the same day that the little king was himself knighted. In 1439 he was appointed Warden of the East Marches. Seven years later he married Eleanor, granddaughter and heiress of Robert, Lord Poynings, thereby adding largely to his estates. In 1448 he invaded Scotland and burnt Dunbar. The Scots retaliated by burning his father's castles at Alnwick and Warkworth, whereupon he invaded Scotland, but was taken prisoner near the River Sark. After he had regained his freedom he was one of the ambassadors at the truce signed at Newcastle in 1451. He succeeded his father as Earl of Northumberland in 1455; attended the parliament at Coventry in 1459, when the Yorkist leaders were attainted; and defeated and slew the Duke of York at Wakefield in 1460. After helping to raise an army for Queen Margaret, he marched south and assisted her to overthrow Warwick at the second battle of St. Albans. At the battle of Towton he led the van of the Lancastrian army and fell, sword in hand, on that fatal field.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, iv; II, i, 3f., ii; v, vii, 8.

*Rich III*, I, iii, 187.

NORTHUMBERLAND (5), fourth Earl of. This was Henry Percy, born 1446, son of the above. On his father's attainder, Edward IV confined him first in the Fleet and afterwards in the Tower of London. In 1469 the king restored him to his earldom and appointed him Warden of the Eastern Marches. He recognized Richard III, asking and receiving many favours from him; but this did not keep him loyal. He obeyed Richard's summons and was at Bosworth, apparently in command of the right wing, but his troops never came into action. Malone says, "Richard calls him 'melancholy' Northumberland because he did not join heartily in his cause." He was taken prisoner, but at once received into favour by Henry VII, who confirmed him in his offices and employed him in negotiations with Scotland. In 1489 he was killed in a riot led by one John à Chambre, near his manor of Topcliffe, Thirsk. Some say that the people had not forgiven him for his desertion of King Richard, who had been very popular in Yorkshire. He was buried in the Percy chantry at Beverley Minster.

*Rich. III*, v, iii, 68f.



## NORTHUMBERLAND]

NORTHUMBERLAND (6), sixth Earl of. This was Henry Algernon Percy, eldest son of the fifth earl of the same name. He was born in 1502 and sent, when quite young, to be a page in Wolsey's house. Here he fell in love with Anne Bullen, then a young lady at the court, but Wolsey scolded him and separated them, as his father had destined him for the daughter of the Earl of Shrewsbury. Percy gave way, but there is little doubt that the attachment lasted throughout life. As the Earl of Northumberland he had many misfortunes. He was constantly ill from a kind of ague; was burdened with debt, yet had to keep up a vast establishment and engage in much fighting on his own account as Warden of the Marches towards Scotland. Wolsey treated him like a boy so long as he was in power. To add to his other distresses he disagreed with his wife, who returned to her father, and hated her husband heartily for the rest of his short life. In 1530 he received a message from the king ordering him to go to Cawood and arrest Wolsey. He seems to have acted as humanely as he could in executing this command. In 1536 he formed one of the court for the trial of Anne Bullen, but when he saw her he was taken ill and forced to leave the room. Anne is said to have confessed a previous contract with him in the hope of saving her life. When his mother and brothers openly sided with the rebels in the Pilgrimage of Grace, Northumberland remained loyal, though the rebel leader himself, Robert Aske, came to him at Wressel where he lay ill in bed. He died in 1537, leaving no issue, and was buried in Hackney church.

*Hen. VIII*, iv, ii, 12.

For genealogical table see *sub* Percy.

NORTHUMBERLAND (7). See Siward.

*Macb.*, iii, vi, 31.

NORWAY, King of. See Sweno.

“ *Macb.*, i, ii, 50f., iii, 112.

OLDCASTLE, Sir John; Lollard leader, came of a Herefordshire family, and was known as Lord Cobham, owing to having married, as his second wife, Joan Lady Cobham in 1409. He had been in the employ of Henry IV in the Welsh Marches,

and personal friendship between Oldcastle and the Prince of Wales doubtless dates from the years in which Henry was his father's lieutenant in Wales. In 1411 Oldcastle was appointed one of the leaders of the troops sent by the prince to help the Duke of Burgundy. On his return, Sir John seems to have been attached to Prince Henry's household, and stood high in his favour; but contemporary authorities lend no support to the view adopted by the Elizabethan dramatist that he was one of Henry's boon companions. He is said to have attempted the conversion of the prince to Lollardism. After vain attempts by Henry V to win him from his faith, he was tried and condemned as a heretic. But he escaped from custody in the Tower of London, remained in the city during a Lollard rising, and in 1415 was in hiding near Malvern. He was believed to have engaged deeply in intrigues with the Scots but, after a desperate resistance during which he was severely wounded, he was captured near Welshpool. It is generally supposed that he was suspended horizontally in chains and burnt alive. Oldcastle was extravagantly execrated by contemporary writers, but described as a martyr by Bale and Foxe in the next century. "But on the Elizabethan stage the old contempt of the heretic knight still lingered, and, on the strength of his friendship with Henry in his wild youth, he was pictured in Fuller's words as 'a boon companion, a jovial royster, and yet a coward to boot'. He appears in the anonymous "Famous Victories of Henry V", written before 1588, as a cynical comrade of the prince in his robberies; and Shakespeare, it seems clearly proved, elaborated the character into the fat knight of Henry IV, retaining the name in his first draft, and only substituting that of Falstaff in deference, so we learn on the authority of Richard James, writing about 1625, to the protests of the Lord Cobham of the time, and perhaps of the growing Puritan party. . . . But *Henry IV* seems to have been acted with the name of Oldcastle even after Shakespeare had made the change, and 'fat Sir John Oldcastle' makes an occasional appearance in the literature of the first half of the 17th century" (Tout).

II *Hen. IV*, Epil. 33.

ORLEANS (1), Charles Duke of, was the eldest son of Louis Duke of Orleans, brother of Charles VI of France. He was born in 1391, and in 1406 married his cousin Isabella, the widow

of Richard II of England. The bride was two years older than her husband, and is thought to have married him unwillingly, but she brought him a great dowry. She died three years later leaving Charles, at the age of 18, a widower with an infant daughter. He was already Duke of Orleans, for his father had been assassinated two years before by the Burgundians. He soon saw himself the most important person in France, except the Duke of Burgundy and Brittany, the king being a cipher. This position his natural temperament by no means qualified him to fill. His mother desired vengeance for her husband, and this Charles promoted by helping to fill France with internecine war. Of this, however, he was only nominally one of the leaders, the real guidance of his party lying with Bernard VII, the great Count of Armagnac. Five years of confused negotiations, plots and fightings passed before the English invasion and the battle of Agincourt, where Charles was joint commander-in-chief. According to one account he was dangerously wounded and narrowly escaped with his life, being dragged forth from a heap of slain when he was found to be alive in his armour. He was certainly taken prisoner and carried to England, where he resided for fully a quarter of a century. He was here maintained in the state of one who ranked high in the order of succession to the crown. He hunted, hawked, and enjoyed ample society, though the very dignities which secured him these privileges made his ransom the greater and his release difficult to arrange. Above all he had leisure to devote himself to literary work. This work consists wholly of short poems in the peculiar artificial metre then common in France. It was not until his hereditary enemy, Philip of Burgundy, interested himself on his behalf that the government of Henry VI, which had by this time lost most of its hold on France, released him. He returned in 1440, and almost immediately cemented his friendship with Duke Philip by marrying his niece, Mary of Cleves, who brought him a considerable dowry to assist in paying his huge ransom. Orleans resided chiefly at Blois, where he held a miniature court of the best known French men of letters. His son, afterwards Louis XII, was not born until 1462, three years before Charles' own death at Amboise in 1465.

*Hen. V*, II, iv, 5; III, v, 41, vii; IV, ii, v, viii, 81.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, 7.

ORLEANS (2), Bastard of; the famous Dunois, was that bastard son of the above. He was born in 1403 and was brought up in the Duke's house along with his legitimate children. He became a celebrated French commander, and was present at Beauge in 1421 and Verneuil in 1424. His earliest feat of arms was the surprise and rout in 1427 of an English force then besieging Montargis—the first successful blow against the English power after a long series of French defeats. In 1428 Dunois defended Orleans with the greatest spirit, and enabled the place to hold out until the arrival of Joan of Arc, when he shared with her the honour of defeating the enemy there in 1429. He then accompanied Joan to Rheims and shared in the victory of Pataye. After the death of the Maid, he raised the siege of Chartres and of Ligny in 1432, and engaged in a series of successful campaigns which culminated in his triumphal entry into Paris in 1436. Dunois continued to carry on the war against the English, and gradually drove them north, though his work was to some extent interrupted by the civil disorders of the time, in which he also played a conspicuous part. Finally, in 1450 he completed the re-conquest of northern France, and in 1451 he attacked the English in Guienne, where he took the towns of Bordeaux and Bayonne, the former of which had been held by them for 300 years. After the expulsion of the English, Dunois was constantly employed on the highest diplomatic and military missions. He died in November 1468. Dunois figures largely in Scott's *Quentin Durward*.

I *Hen. VI*, I, i, 93, ii; II, i; III, ii, iii; IV, iv, 26, vi, 14ff., vii; v, ii, iv.

ORLEANS (3), Duke of. This was Charles, the third son of Francis I of France, to whom it was at one time proposed to marry Mary, the daughter of Henry VIII of England. Shakespeare represents the Bishop of Bayonne as coming over to arrange the match and then expressing doubts as to her legitimacy, which was the beginning of the doubts of Henry VIII, and culminated in his divorce from Katherine.

*Hen. VIII*, II, iv, 174.

For genealogical table see *sub* France, King of (4).

OXFORD (1), Earl of. The Globe Edition substitutes the name of Oxford for that of Spenser, given by Dyce and others,

## OXFORD]

in *Rich. II*, v, vi, 8. That Oxford was not among the rebels executed in 1399 will be seen by the following.

Aubrey Vere, tenth Earl of Oxford, the second son of John, seventh earl, was born in 1340. He entered the service of the Black Prince, who rewarded him with several grants of land. Under Richard II he received charge of several of the royal parks and, as uncle of the royal favourite, soon secured further advancement. Early in 1381 he became chamberlain to the king's household. He was compelled to abjure the court by the "Merciless" parliament of 1388, which condemned his nephew Robert, ninth Earl of Oxford and Duke of Ireland, as a traitor. In 1393, the king revived, in Vere's favour, the dignity of Earl of Oxford, but he pleaded in vain for the restoration of the Lord-Chamberlainship of England. In the first parliament of Henry IV, the Commons petitioned for the restoration of this latter dignity to Oxford, pleading that he had only abandoned it under menaces from Richard. But Henry refused the petition, as he intended the dignity for his half-brother, John Beaufort. Oxford died in April 1400, and was succeeded by his son Richard, who became one of the commanders at Agincourt.

*Rich. II*, v, vi, 8.

OXFORD (2), Earl of. This was John de Vere of Castle Hedingham, Essex, thirteenth earl. He was the son of John, twelfth earl, his elder brother Aubrey having been executed along with his father in 1462. He was born in 1443, and obtained the reversal of his father's attainder in 1464. Four years later he was arrested and thrown into the Tower under suspicion of conspiring with the Lancastrians, but was released in the next year and fled to France. He returned with Warwick and helped to restore Henry VI in 1470. A most able captain and a man of high character, he led the van of the Lancastrian army at Barnet, routing Lord Hastings. But his men fell to plundering and he was unable to assist the hard-pressed Warwick. After the loss of the battle he fled again to France. In 1473 he fitted out a small squadron, landed in Cornwall, and seized St. Michael's Mount. But he was compelled to surrender, and was sent as a prisoner to Hammes Castle, near Calais. After Oxford had been three years in captivity, Richard III ascended the throne. Oxford now escaped, joined the Earl of Richmond in Paris, landed with him in England,

and, as Captain-General of his army, commanded the right wing at Bosworth. It was a successful movement of his which decided Lord Stanley to abandon his attitude of neutrality. Henry VII reversed his attainder, created him hereditary Lord Chamberlain of England, and enriched him with many grants, appointing him Constable of the Tower in 1485. He commanded the royal army at Stoke in 1487, commanded in Picardy in 1492, and cut off the retreat of the Cornish rebels at Blackheath in 1497. Next year he entertained the king for a week, and it was then that the well-known story of his having incurred a heavy fine for collecting retainers to receive Henry with proper honour arose. Oxford was High Steward for the trial of the Earl of Warwick in 1499, and died in 1513. His first wife was Margaret Neville, daughter of the Earl of Salisbury and, their only son John having died a prisoner in the Tower during his father's exile, he was succeeded by his nephew.

III *Hen. VI*, III, iii; IV, ii, iii, vi, viii; V, i, iii, 15, iv, v.  
*Rich. III*, II, i, 112; IV, v, 11; V, ii, iii.

PAGE, Dr. Richard; private secretary to the king, "was vicar of Stepney, and died there at the age of about 40, in the year 1532, if the inscription on his monument, which is given by Weaver . . . but has long since disappeared, is to be trusted. He succeeded Colet as Dean of St. Paul's in 1519" (Wright). Dr. Pace was much employed abroad by Henry VIII, who sent him to Rome in 1524 to procure the papal crown for Wolsey. Holinshed says, "He was a learned man, courteous, pleasant, delightful in music, and highly in the king's favour." He adds; "The king received into favour Dr. Stephen Gardiner, whom he employed in services of great secrecy and weight, admitting him in the room of Dr. Pace, the which being continually abroad in ambassages (and the same often times not much necessary) of the cardinal's appointment, at length took such grief therewith, that he fell out of his right wits." Shakespeare represents his death as taking place before the queen's trial, whereas it did not take place until three years after it.

• *Hen. VIII*, II, ii, 122. •

PAGE, A. The page who introduced James Tyrrel to Richard III is no doubt intended for John Green, an Esquire of the Body to that king, and who, for the share he had in the

## PANDULPH]

transactions which led to the murder of the young princes, was appointed receiver of the Lordship of the Isle of Wight, and of the castle of Porchester. He had been employed to tamper with Brackenbury, who plainly answered that he would never put the children to death. An anonymous writer asserts that John Green was walled up alive by order of Henry VII.

*Rich III*, iv, ii.

PANDULPH, Cardinal; Roman ecclesiastical politician, a native of Pisa, was appointed "Cardinal of the Twelve Apostles" in 1182. He first came to England in 1211, when he was commissioned by Innocent III to negotiate with King John about the instalment of Stephen Langton as Archbishop of Canterbury. As he received no satisfactory concessions, he pronounced the sentence of excommunication in the very presence of the king. In May 1213 he again visited England to receive the submission of John to Rome, the ceremony taking place at Dover. Pandulph now did all in his power to avert the threatened invasion of Philip of France. French says, "The place where John yielded up the circle of his glory to Cardinal Pandulph is said to be the Preceptory of the Knights Templars, at Swingfield, five miles north of Folkestone, in Kent, of which some ruins exist, though now used as a farm house. It was not Pandulph, but Cardinal James Gaulo, who opposed the intention of the Dauphin to invade England." By 1215 Pandulph was back again at John's side at Runnymede, excommunicating the great barons who compelled the king to grant Magna Charta. For his aid, John rewarded him with the bishopric of Norwich. As representing the pope, Pandulph claimed control over Hubert de Burgh and the other ministers of the young Henry III. His arrogance was tolerated until 1221, when Hubert and Langton were successful in securing his recall. Pandulph retained the see of Norwich until his death in 1226, and his body was brought thither for burial.

*John*, III, i, iv; v, i, ii, vii, 82.

PATIENCE, a fellow country woman of Katherine of Arragon, was really Mary de Salucci, of an illustrious Spanish family. She had married William Lord Willoughby de Eersby, but was now his widow. She was the faithful attendant of her royal mistress, who expired in her arms. Katherine's other maids

were Blanche and Isabel de Vergas, two Spanish ladies, and "Mistris Elizabeth Darell," a lady of an old Kentish family.

*Hen. VIII, iv, ii.*

PECK, Sir Gilbert; chancellor to Edward Duke of Buckingham, was arrested at the same time as his master. "The name is given as Perke both in Hall and Holinshed. Both are apparently wrong. In the papers connected with the trial of the Duke of Buckingham, now in the Record Office, the name of the duke's chancellor appears as Robert Gilbert, Clerk. Possibly Perke and Peck are corruptions of clerk" (Wright).

*Hen. VIII, i, i, 219; ii, i, 20.*

PEMBROKE (1), Earl of. This was William Marshall, first earl of that line, who obtained the title by his marriage with Isabel de Clare, daughter of Earl Richard Strongbow. Marshall accompanied his uncle, Earl Patrick of Salisbury, to Poitou in 1168, was wounded and captured, but at length was ransomed by Queen Eleanor. He was chosen by Henry II as the guardian of his eldest son Prince Henry and sided with that prince on his rebellion against his father. On the death of young Henry, Pembroke went on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land and on his return was received into high favour by the king, to whom he remained faithful until the last. He was appointed to high office under Richard I. Though he took up arms against Prince John when he attempted to seize the throne on the news of Richard's captivity in 1193, he joined with Hubert de Burgh in securing his peaceful succession to the throne in 1199 on the death of his brother. Pembroke invaded Wales in 1204 and later in the year, with John's consent, did homage to Philip of France for his Norman lands. In the next year he refused to accompany John on his expedition to Poitou but was entrusted with the defence of England during the king's absence. He visited the Irish estates of his wife in 1207 for the first time but was recalled, whereupon these lands were ravaged by John's orders. Marshall again set out for Ireland, where he soon obtained full possession of his lands, remaining on them for two years, owing to his estrangement from the king, and joining with the Irish nobles in their protest in 1212 against the papal encroachments. But as John's difficulties increased he turned for aid once more to Pembroke and in the next year the earl returned again to England, where he became one of the king's chief advisers, witnessed the deed of resignation to the pope, and was appointed guardian of the kingdom



and of the heir to the throne. In 1215 Marshall conveyed to the barons the overtures which led to the meeting at Runnymede and his name appeared as one of the counsellors of Magna Charta and as one of those who swore to observe its provisions. But he still remained faithful to the king, refusing to fall away to the French interest on the invasion of Lewis, as represented in the play. Pembroke's eldest son, of the same name, sided with Lewis and captured Worcester for him, hence the mistake of the poet. After the king's death, Marshall became regent and it was chiefly through his valour, aided by Hubert de Burgh, that England was cleared of her foreign foes. After re-establishing good order in the kingdom, Marshall died at Caversham in 1219, having assumed the habit of a Templar shortly before his death.

"Uncompromising fidelity appears, indeed, to have been the most marked feature of Marshall's character. For fifty years he served Henry II, his three sons, and his grandson, and to each in the hour of his bitterest need proved himself the most faithful of friends. In his youth and to his contemporaries he was the most perfect type of chivalry; in his old age and in history he appears as one of the noblest of mediæval soldier-statesmen. From the time that he acquired his earldom he filled the foremost place in England and Ireland, but, while he never faltered in his loyalty he never, even in the worst days of John, compromised his honour. His regency was the worthy finish of his long life. In the attainment of the Great Charter he did not play a specially prominent part, for though he wisely recognized its need, he belonged, by training and sympathy, more to the age that was past than to that which was just beginning. His great and special work was the pacification of the realm after the period of disorder. This task he accomplished by the firm but conciliatory policy of his three short years of rule, and it is because he thus made possible the realization of the Charter that he deserves an honourable place among the founders of English liberty. In person, Marshall was tall and well made with comely features and brown hair; so dignified in carriage that he might have been an emperor of Rome. One chronicler calls him 'a most valiant soldier of world-wide renown'. Marshall's fame was hardly less great in France than at home." (Kingsford.) His five sons were all successively Earls of Pembroke and Marshals of England.

*John*, I, i; IV, ii, iii; V, ii, iv, vii.

PEMBROKE (2), first earl of the Herbert creation. This was William, elder son of Sir William Herbert of Raglan Castle, who had fought in France under Henry V. His mother was Gladys, daughter and heiress of Davy Gam. (See Gam.) Herbert was a warrior from his youth and was knighted by Henry VI in 1449, afterwards going on active service in France under the Duke of Somerset. He played a prominent part on the side of the Yorkists during the Wars of the Roses, doing notable service against Jasper Tudor, Earl of Pembroke. In 1461, Edward IV made him a Privy Councillor, Chief Justice of North Wales, and created him Baron Herbert. In 1468, after he had taken Harlech Castle, the last Lancastrian stronghold, and the attainder of Jasper Tudor, Herbert was created Earl of Pembroke. He was now appointed guardian of the young Earl of Richmond (afterwards Henry VII), whom he had taken in Harlech Castle. Herbert quarrelled with the Earl of Warwick and did all in his power to widen the breach between that nobleman and the king. In 1469 a rebellion, which was largely fomented by Warwick, broke out in the north and the rebels declared for Henry VI. Herbert marched against them with his Welshmen but was defeated and captured at Edgecote, near Banbury. He was executed along with his younger brother, Richard, at Northampton; his corpse being buried in Tintern Abbey. He married Anne, daughter of Sir Walter Devereux, Lord Ferrers, and was succeeded by his eldest son William, while his second son is the Sir Walter Herbert of the play of *Richard III.* (See Herbert.)

III *Hen. VI.* iv, i, iii, 54.

PEMBROKE (3), Earl of; was Jasper Tudor, born 1431, the second son of Owen Tudor by Katherine, widow of Henry V. He was knighted by his half-brother Henry VI in 1449 and in 1453 was created Earl of Pembroke. He fought on Henry's side at the first battle of St. Alban's and it was at his residence that Henry, afterwards Henry VII, was born. In 1461, Pembroke and the Earl of Wiltshire were defeated by Edward at Mortimer's Cross. He took part in the invasion of the north in 1462, fled to Scotland, and was attainted, his lands and title being granted to William Herbert. (See above.) Jasper landed with Warwick in 1470 and assisted him to restore Henry VI to the throne; recovered his nephew Henry Earl of

## PEMBROKE]

Richmond, and presented him to Henry VI. After the battle of Tewkesbury, Pembroke fled, taking Richmond with him, first to Wales and thence to Brittany. On the restoration of Edward IV, Jasper Tudor was again attainted. He accompanied Henry of Richmond to Milford Haven and fought for him at Bosworth, being created Duke of Bedford and restored to his earldom of Pembroke. He was of peculiar importance to Henry when he landed, owing to his great influence in the west. Pembroke occupied many high offices under the new king. In 1492 he was created Earl Marshal of England and took a prominent part in suppressing the rebellions of Lovel and Lambert Simnel. He was one of the commanders of the army which invaded France in 1492. He died three years later and was buried in the abbey church of Keynsham, near Bristol. He married Katherine Woodville, youngest daughter of Richard Earl Rivers, widow of the Duke of Buckingham in *Rich. III.*

*Rich. III.*, iv, v, 11; v, iii, 29.

PEMBROKE (4), Marchioness of. A title bestowed upon Anne Bullen by Henry VIII in 1532.

*Hen. VIII.*, ii, iii, 63f.; iii, ii, 90.

PENKER, Friar; one of the popular preachers of Richard III's time, was a provincial of the Augustin Friars. He and Dr. Shaw were sent for by Richard at the time of his usurpation and were probably the two clerics with him at the time of the arrival of the Lord Mayor and citizens, though the stage direction, following Hall, has in iii, vii;

“Enter Gloucester aloft between two bishops.”

Both had been hastily summoned to Baynard's Castle and Richard is bidden by Buckingham to “stand betwixt two Churchmen,” and is also represented as “meditating with two deep divines.” Sir Thomas More says they were “both great preachers, both of more learning than virtue, of more fame than learning, and yet more learning than truth.”

*Rich. III.*, iii, v, 104.

PEPIN, surnamed “The Short” was the second son of Charles Martel and for six years ruled as Duke of the Neustrian territories of northern France in the name of the Merovingian king. In 751, after consulting with pope Zacharias, Pepin took

the title of king and removed the feeble Childerich III to a monastery, thus becoming the founder of the Carolingian dynasty. He was crowned in Paris by St. Boniface in 751, taking the title *Gratia Dei Rex Francorum*. When Pope Stephen II was hard-pressed by the Lombards, he paid a personal visit to Pepin, who led an army into Italy, defeated the pope's enemies, and laid the foundation of the temporal power of the papacy by conferring upon Stephen the exarchate of Ravenna. He also placed the independent Gallican church under the dominion of the popes. Pepin drove the Saracens over the Pyrenees in 757 and, after a war of nearly eight years' duration, took Aquitaine from its duke in 768. He died in that same year and was succeeded by his sons Charlo-man and Charlemagne.

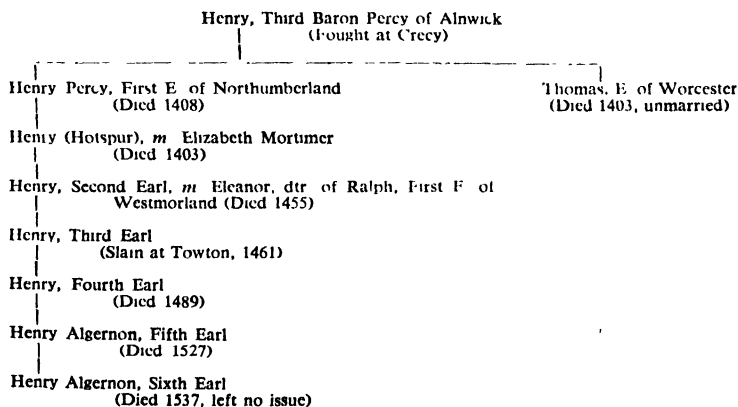
*Hen. V*, I, ii, 65f.

*Hen. VIII*, I, iii, 10.

**PERCIES.** This was the famous house sprung from Henry, third Baron Percy of Alnwick. He was descended from William de Perci, a follower of the Conqueror, who made him large grants of land in the north.

I *Hen. VI*, II, v, 67.

### HOUSE OF PERCY



**PERCY (1).** See Northumberland (1).

*Rich. II*, v, vi, 11.

II *Hen. IV*, II, iii, 4f.; III, i, 61.

PERCY]

PERCY (2). See Hotspur.

*Rich. II.*, II, ii, 53, iii; III, i, iii; IV, i; V, iii, vi.

I *Hen. IV.*, I, i, 53ff., iii, 24ff.; II, iii, 111, iv, 114ff.; III, i, 7ff., ii, 96ff., iii, 227; IV, ii, 81, iv, 19ff.; V, i, 87, ii, 97, iii, 48ff., iv, 21ff., v, 19.

II *Hen. IV.*, I, i, 42ff.

PERCY (3), LADY. See Mortimer (4).

I *Hen. IV.*, II, iii.

II *Hen. IV.*, II, iii.

PETER of Pomfret foretold that John would resign his crown before Ascension Day 1213. "This man was a hermit in great repute with the common people. Notwithstanding that the event is said to have fallen out as he had prophesied, the poor fellow was inhumanly dragged at horses' tails in the streets of Warham and, together with his son, who appears to have been more innocent than his father, hanged afterwards on a gibbet." (Douce.)

*John*, IV, ii.

PHILIP of France. See France, King of (1).

*John*, I, i, 7ff.; II, i, 531, ii; III, i, 191ff., ii, 4f.

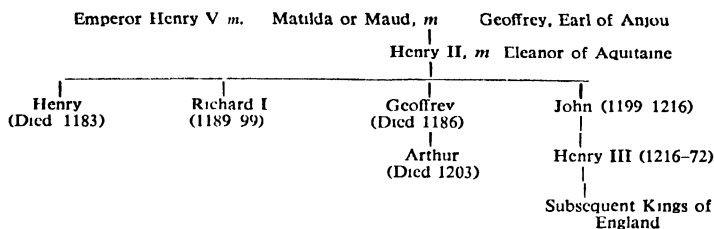
PHILIPPE, or Philippa, was the daughter of Lionel, Duke of Clarence, third son of Edward III. She married Edmund Mortimer and thus transmitted the claim of Lionel to the House of York.

II *Hen. VI.*, II, ii, 35f.

PIERCE of Exton. See Exton.

*Rich. II.*, V, v, 100.

PLANTAGENET (1), House of. This "was not a family name but a nickname, by which a grandson of Geoffrey, the first Earl of Anjou, was distinguished, from his wearing a broom-stalk in his bonnet. But this name was never borne either by the first Earl of Anjou, or by King Henry II, the son of that earl by the Empress Maud; he being always called Henry Fitz-empress; his sons, Richard, Coeur de Lion and John Sansterre." (Malone.) In spite of Malone's dictum the descendants of Henry II are commonly called Plantagenets.



*John*, I, i, 162; v, vi, 11.

I *Hen. IV*, I, i, 89.

II *Hen. VI*, IV, ii, 44.

*Rich. III*, I, ii, 118.

PLANTAGENET (2). Arthur Earl of Richmond. See Arthur.  
*John*, I, i, 9f.; II, i, 238.

PLANTAGENET (3). Henry V, q.v.  
*Hen. V*, v, ii, 259.  
I *Hen. VI*, I, iv, 95.

PLANTAGENET (4). Richard Duke of York. See York (4).  
I *Hen. VI*, II, iv, 36ff., v, 18ff.; III, i, 61ff.  
III *Hen. VI*, I, i, 40, iii, 49, iv, 30f.; II, i, 35f.

PLANTAGENET (5). Edward, son of Henry VI. See Edward  
(6).  
III *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 161.  
*Rich. III*, I, iv, 227; IV, iv, 19.

PLANTAGENET (6). Edward IV, q.v.  
*Rich. III*, IV, iv, 19.

PLANTAGENET (7). Edward V, q.v.  
*Rich. III*, IV, iv, 146.

PLANTAGENET (8). Richard III, q.v.  
*Rich. III*, I, ii, 142; III, vii, 100.

PLANTAGENET (9). Lady Margaret. See Clarence (5).  
*Rich. III*, IV, i, 1.

POMFRET, Peter of. See Peter.  
*John*, IV, ii.

## PONTON]

PONTON DE SANTRAILLES, a famous French leader who captured John Talbot at Pataye in 1429. He was himself captured in 1481 and was exchanged for Talbot two years later.

I *Hen. VI*, I, iv, 28.

POOLE, or Pole; the surname of the Duke of Suffolk. See Suffolk (2).

I *Hen. VI*, II, iv, 78ff.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, 44, ii, 20, iii, 53; IV, i, 45ff.

PUCELLE, Joan de la. See Joan of Arc.

I *Hen. VI*, I, ii, 110, iv, 101f., v, 36, vi, 3f.; II, i, 20;

III, ii, 20ff., iii, 40f.

QUEEN OF RICHARD II. This was Isabella of Valois, daughter of Charles VI of France, who was the second queen of Richard II. His first queen, Anne of Bohemia, had died in 1394, before the date of the opening of the play. Shakespeare makes Isabella speak and act as an adult though she was only twelve years of age at the time of Richard's deposition. She was married to Richard in 1396, being then less than seven years old, and crowned at Westminster in the following January. Richard showed remarkable attachment to her but learnt from her French friends a strong love of display and a keen desire to make himself absolute. He parted from her after an affectionate farewell on his departure for Ireland and they never met again, though Shakespeare represents them as doing so. On the usurpation of Henry IV she was confined at Sonning near Reading, and was not allowed to see her husband, whose death was concealed from her for a time. After her return home, Henry tried to gain her hand for his eldest son, now Prince of Wales, but her family refused to acknowledge his succession and declined the alliance. When Isabella was allowed to return home in 1401, her marriage portion was withheld. In 1406 she was married to her cousin Charles, Count of Angoulême, and died in childbirth at Blois in 1409.

*Rich. II*, I, i, 181; II, i, ii, iii, 25; III, i, 12ff., iv; v, i.

QUINT, Francis. This was the last name on the list of those who accompanied Bolingbroke on his landing at Ravenspur. In some editions, following Holinshed, he is called Francis

Point. The family of Pointz or Points was one of great antiquity, the name being found in Domesday Book under Gloucestershire; a descendant being sheriff of the county in the time of Richard II.

*Rich. II.* II, i, 284.

RAINOLD, or Reginald, Lord Cobham; one of the companions of Bolingbroke on his return from exile, was the eldest son of Reginald Cobham who had commanded the van at Crécy and Poitiers, and was created first Baron Cobham of Sternborough, Surrey, in 1342. Some commentators take the words "his brother" in *Rich. II.* II, i, 282—as there was no relationship between the primate and the Duke of Exeter—to refer to the affinity between the archbishop and Reginald Cobham. The archbishop's brother, Sir John Arundel, had left a widow who was now the wife of Reginald Cobham and who was thus in some sort "brother" of the archbishop.

*Rich. II.* II, i, 279.

RAMBURES; the master of the French cross-bows at the battle of Agincourt, where he was slain.

*Hen. V.* III, v, 43; IV, viii, 99.

RAMSTON, Sir John; whose Christian name, according to Holinshed, should be Thomas, was one of the companions of Bolingbroke when he landed at Ravenspur. He was appointed Warden of the Tower of London while Richard II was confined there and afterwards became Constable of that fortress and Admiral of the Fleet. He was drowned in the Thames during his progress to the Tower.

*Rich. II.* II, i, 283.

RATCLIFFE, Sir Richard; chief adviser of Richard III, was the son of Sir Thomas Ratcliffe, a younger son of the Ratcliffes of Radcliffe Tower, Lancs. He became Lord Derwentwater and Keswick through his marriage with the heiréss of John de Derwentwater. Richard was knighted by Edward IV on the field of Tewkesbury. Acting under the Protector's orders, he seized and executed Hastings and others of the queen dowager's party at Pontefract in 1483. He was the "ratte" referred to in Colingbourne's rhyme and, though he did not hesitate to tell Richard III to his face that he must publicly disavow the



RECORDER]

idea of marrying his niece, Elizabeth, he was loaded with honours and grants from that king. Of this ready minister of Richard's cruel designs, Sir Thomas More says: "a man, having experience of the world, and a shrewd wit, short and rude in speech, rough and boisterous of behaviour, as far from pity as from all fear of God." Ratcliffe fell, sword in hand, fighting for the cause of his master at Bosworth.

In defiance of time and space Ratcliffe is introduced in *Rich. III.*, iv, as present at the council held in the Tower in 1483, on the very day on which he was carrying out the execution of Rivers, Grey, and Vaughan, at Pontefract Castle, of which he was then governor. In some modern editions this violation of truth has been corrected by placing the name of Catesby for Ratcliffe, who was Richard's agent in all his dealings with Hastings, and by this change of name everything will read consistently. Moreover, had Ratcliffe been in London, Richard would not have needed to employ Tyrrel to perform his behest on the young princes, who perished nine days after their faithful friends and relatives.

*Rich. III.*, iii, iii, iv, v ; iv, iv, ; v, iii.

RECORDER. The mayor tells Buckingham that the people are not accustomed to be spoken to except by the recorder. This official was Thomas Fitzwilliam, "a sad man and honest, which had newly come to office in 1483" (Hall).

*Rich. III.*, iii, vii, 30.

REGNIER ; in reality Rene I, Duke of Anjou, Lorraine, and Bar ; King of Naples, Sicily, and Jerusalem ; was born in 1409. He joined the French army in 1429 and was present at the coronation of Charles VII in that year. In 1431 he was defeated and captured by Burgundy and remained a prisoner for the next year, after which he was released on parole. He was compelled to surrender to Duke Philip again in 1434 and remained in confinement for two years more until the payment of a heavy ransom. Rene's captivity enabled Alphonso of Arragon to over-run Naples and, though Rene visited the kingdom in 1488, he was compelled to return to France in 1441. He still retained the title of King of Naples though his effective rule was never again recovered. He took part in the negotiations with the English at Tours in 1444, as a result of which his younger daughter, Margaret, married Henry VI of England. Rene had

the confidence of Charles VII and was closely associated with him in his military undertakings against the English. He entered Rouen with the French king in 1449 and was also present with him at Formigny and Caen. After his second marriage he took a less active part in public affairs but devoted himself to artistic and literary pursuits. The fortunes of his house declined in his old age. Rene died in 1480. His fame as an amateur painter has led to the attributing to him of many old paintings of Anjou and Provence, in many cases simply because they bear his arms. He encouraged the performance of mystery plays, wrote several poems, while other works were compiled by secretaries under his direction.

I *Hen. VI*, I, i, 94, ii, vi; II, i; III, ii; IV, iv, 27.  
v, ii, iii, v, 47.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, 47f.

III *Hen. VI*, v, vii, 38.

RICE, or Rhys ap Thomas; was born in 1449. He possessed extensive property in south-west Wales and, though never more than a knight, was little less than a prince in his native county of Carmarthen. During the reign of Edward IV he organized his tenants and neighbours into a fighting force of several thousand men. He was in receipt of an annuity from Richard III, who seems to have suspected nothing until the last moment, though the author of the "Cambrian Register" represents Rice ap Thomas as favourable to Richmond at the time of Buckingham's rebellion in 1483, and asserts that Richard demanded his son as a hostage. Early in 1485 he entered into negotiations with Henry and finally promised to support him if he landed in south Wales. Gairdner says that Rice ap Thomas appears to have temporized at first in order to secure as good a price as possible for his services. He bargained to transfer them to Henry on condition that he would make him chief governor of Wales. When Richmond landed, Rice took up arms and a meeting soon took place. The story of a meeting at Milford, when Rice, in literal fulfilment of an oath, allowed the earl to step over his body, deserves credit. At Bosworth, he and his forces rendered valuable aid, and he was knighted by Henry on the field. The new king also bestowed upon him many honours and preferments. Rice led a troop of horse at the battle of Stoke and was one of the captains in the abortive expedition to France in 1492. At the

## RICHARD I]

battle of Blackheath he held command of 1,500 horse and took Lord Audley prisoner. Later in the year he helped to drive Perkin Warbeck into Beaulieu Abbey. He died in 1525 and was buried in the Greyfriar's church at Carmarthen.

*Rich. III, iv, v. 12.*

RICHARD I, King of England ; surnamed *Coeur de Lion*, was the third son of Henry II by his queen Eleanor. He was born in 1157 and by the time he was sixteen years of age was waging war upon his father and brothers in Aquitaine. Succeeding to the English crown in 1189, he immediately began his preparations for the Third Crusade, raising money for it by the sale of crown domains and rights. He joined Philip of France at Messina in 1190 and next year plundered and conquered Cyprus. Here he married Berengaria of Navarre, who had been brought to him there by his mother. The crusaders reached Acre in 1191 but soon afterwards Philip returned home. Richard now advanced on Ascalon, defeated Saladin near Arsuf, and at the end of the year was at Beit-Nuba, only twelve miles from Jerusalem. Judging it too late in the season to commence the siege, he retired to Ascalon. He reached Beit-Nuba again in June 1192, only to retire again, though he effected the relief of Jaffa by defeating Saladin beneath its walls. But troubles in his English and French domains imperatively demanded his return and he concluded a three years truce with the infidel. Many of the crusaders were allowed to visit Jerusalem, but Richard retired without a sight of it. He set sail for England in October of 1192. While travelling in disguise, he was arrested near Vienna and handed over to the Duke of Austria, whom he had offended in the East. The duke handed him over to the emperor Henry VI and before his release he was compelled to pay a ransom of 150,000 marks besides doing homage for England. He was set free in 1194 and on his arrival in England found that his brother, John, was attempting to seize the supreme power by the aid of Philip of France. Richard defeated Philip several times but was mortally wounded while besieging the Castle of Chaluz, in 1198, in order to seize a treasure found by his vassal. His body was buried at Fontevrault and his heart at Rouen.

“ Richard was a ‘ splendid savage ’, with most of the faults and most of the virtues of the semi-savage age in which he lived ; and it is only those who test mediæval heroes by a

modern standard that will judge him with extreme severity. As a brother, his relations to John were something more than generous and to his mother he seems to have been a dutiful son. He was a stern ruler and, when he was in Sicily, men contrasted his firmness with Philip's laxity. In warfare he seems to have combined dash and prudence to a remarkable degree. As a general he was a stern disciplinarian though, where not responsible for the safety of others, he was the very type of a reckless knight-errant. Through his military career one feature is prominent—a tendency to rely upon mercenary troops. As a statesman he may, at least for the last seven years of his reign, be credited with a judicious choice of ministers. It is true that he drained England of her treasure for objects in which she was not primarily interested; but he did not spend the money thus gathered ignobly, and if he took his people's wealth he at least did not force them to shed their blood in a foreign quarrel. He was sincere in his desire to free the Holy Sepulchre, though his energy in this direction was doubtless strengthened by the lust of military fame and the passion for adventure. He left behind him a reputation unique among English kings." (Archer.)

*John*, I, i, 90ff.; II, i, 8.

RICHARD II, King of England, the younger son of Edward the Black Prince, was born at Bordeaux in 1367 and succeeded his grandfather, Edward III, in 1377. The actual control of the government was at first in the hands of Parliament and was afterwards seized by Lancaster. The young king met the insurgents under Wat Tyler at Smithfield and pacified them, granting a general pardon after the execution of their leaders. In 1382 he married Anne, sister of Wenceslaus, King of Bohemia, and in the same year attained his majority. He now appointed Michael de la Pole as Chancellor without reference to Parliament and opposed his uncle, John of Gaunt, getting rid of him by allowing him to proceed on his long-delayed expedition to Spain. But Lancaster's departure left the leadership of the nobles to a more dangerous person, the king's youngest uncle, Gloucester, who was angered by the king's favoritism of De la Pole and Robert de Vere, Earl of Oxford. In 1389, Gloucester, Arundel, and Warwick took up arms. They were joined by Henry Earl of Derby and Thomas Mowbray, then Earl of Nottingham. The united forces de-

feated De Vere at Radcotbridge and the leaders forced themselves into the king's presence, threatening him with deposition. But the proposal was defeated by the opposition of Derby and Nottingham, the youngest of the Lords Appellant, as they were called. The king's friends were now condemned by the "Merciless Parliament" and the Appellants governed in the king's name. At the end of the year Richard asserted his independence, being now twenty-one years of age. He replaced the Appellants by counsellors of his own choice, issuing promises of better government by proclamation. His queen Anne died in 1394 and his grief was so excessive that he had Sheen palace, where she died, razed to the ground. The king now lost popularity by his marriage with Isabella of France and the discontent was fanned by Gloucester. In 1397 the king arrested Gloucester, Arundel, and Warwick. His difficulties were now further increased by the action of Henry of Lancaster in accusing the Duke of Norfolk of treasonable designs. It was arranged that the matter should be settled by combat but Richard stopped the trial and banished them both. He now ruled with great arbitrariness, exacting heavy fines and contributions from his subjects to gratify his love of pomp. On the death of John of Gaunt, Richard seized his lands and deprived Hereford of his succession to them. Immediately afterwards, the king set sail for Ireland to avenge the death of the Earl of March. He was recalled by the news of the landing of Hereford at Ravenspur. Richard was deserted by his army and, after wandering about north Wales with a small force, surrendered at Flint. Henry treated his captive with outward respect, conveyed him to London and lodged him in the Tower, where his resignation of the crown was received. This has been expanded into a magnificent scene by Shakespeare. After the accession of Henry IV, Richard was sent as a prisoner, first to Leeds Castle in Kent and afterwards to Pontefract. In 1400, Richard's friends conspired to murder Henry and spread the rumour that the ex-king had escaped from custody. Creton asserts that he was impersonated by Richard Maudelyn, one of his favourite chaplains, who bore an extraordinary resemblance to his royal master. Richard died at Pontefract early in 1400. According to the official version, on hearing of the death of his supporters, Richard declined food and drink and gradually pined away. Others assert that the unhappy king was starved

to death by his keepers. Shakespeare follows the tradition that he was murdered by an unknown knight, Sir Pierce of Exton. His body was brought to London and exposed to common view after which it was buried at King's Langley.

"Richard's short life contains all the elements of tragedy. Neither by natural disposition nor by youthful training was he well fitted to come through the troubles bequeathed to him by his grandfather. With the pleasure-loving temperament which he inherited from the 'Fair Maid of Kent', along with her physical beauty, Richard united a firmness of will and capacity for sustained action when aroused which, under a more fortunate star, might have done England good service. Unhappily these powers were diverted to schemes of revenge and arbitrary power, which lost him the allegiance of the nation. Abrupt and stammering in speech, hasty and subject to sudden gusts of passion; Richard's was a nature neither patient of restraints nor forgetful of injuries. His yellow hair fell in broad masses on either side of his face, which was round and somewhat feminine. His moustaches which were small and sprang from the corners of his mouth, accentuated the weary and drawn look which begins to appear in his face as early as 1391, and is so striking in the effigy on his tomb." (Tait.)

*Rich. II.*, I, i, iii, iv; II, i, ii, 9, iv, 17; III, ii, iii; IV, i; v, i, ii, 6ff., v, vi, 33.

*I Hen. IV.*, I, iii, 146ff.; III, ii, 94; v, i, 85.

*II Hen. IV.*, I, i, 205, iii, 98f.; III, i, 58ff.; IV, i, 58.

*Hen. V.*, IV, i, 312f.

*I Hen. VI.*, II, v, 64f.

*III Hen. VI.*, I, i, 138.

*Rich. III.*, III, iii, 12.

RICHARD III, King of England, the eleventh child of Richard Duke of York, was born at Fotheringay Castle, in 1452. Civil war was imminent at the time of his birth owing to his father's pretensions to the crown. After the Yorkist disaster at Wakefield, Richard and his brother George were sent to France for safety. They were recalled by their brother Edward, now king, in 1461, and Richard was created Duke of Gloucester. Warwick, the 'king-maker' succeeded in seducing Clarence from his allegiance to his brother but Richard remained firm and when, after Warwick's invasion, in 1470, Edward fled to

Holland, Richard accompanied him. They returned together and Richard commanded the van of the Yorkist army at Tewkesbury and Barnet, behaving with both skill and valour though but a youth of nineteen. He was commonly reported to have murdered young Edward, the son of Henry VI, and a fortnight later to have put that unhappy monarch himself to death in the Tower of London. Edward rewarded him with large grants of land, but a quarrel arose between Gloucester and his brother Clarence about the partition of Warwick's vast estates, the latter having married Isabel, the elder, and the former, Anne, the younger, of that noble's daughters. Richard continued to receive new grants of land but when in 1478 his brother Clarence was put to death, there was a strong suspicion, which Shakespeare has endorsed and amplified, that Richard was responsible for it, though Sir Thomas More says distinctly that he openly opposed the execution of the capital penalty. In 1482, Richard successfully invaded Scotland, taking Berwick and marching on Edinburgh and for this service he was thanked by Parliament. The next year, Richard, who had been appointed by his brother protector of the young king and his kingdom, arrested Rivers, Grey, and Vaughan, and conveyed the young king to the Tower of London. He had joined hands with Hastings to overthrow the power of the Woodvilles but when Hastings, who now feared the Protector's designs, tried to get Edward V out of his uncle's power he had Hastings arrested and summarily executed. Lord Stanley, with Bishop Morton and Archbishop Rotherham, was also arrested. Armed men now came up from Yorkshire and Wales to the capital and preparations were made for his usurpation of the throne. Dr. Shaw preached a sermon at St. Paul's Cross in which he declared not only the illegitimacy of Edward's children but also of Edward and his brother Clarence. The next week, the Duke of Buckingham delivered an eloquent speech at the Guildhall in favour of Richard's claims and a deputation of citizens, led by the Lord Mayor, waited upon him and begged him to accept the crown. Buckingham was spokesman and, after feigning reluctance, Richard accepted the honour and next day commenced his reign. But his usurpation alienated many of the nobles and disaffection spread throughout the country, soon to be intensified by the rumour of the murder of the Princes in the Tower. A rebellion against him, headed by the Duke of Bucking-

ham, in 1483, proved abortive owing to the floods and the storms which prevented the landing of Richmond, and Buckingham was taken and executed. In the next year, Richard's only son Edward, the heir-apparent, died. The king now took up his residence at Nottingham, where he collected the army and awaited the invasion of Richmond. Among others, he summoned Lord Stanley out of Lancashire, but he was so slow in coming that the king arrested his son, George, as a hostage. Richmond now landed and the two armies met at Bosworth in 1485. Richard summoned Lord Stanley, who had pitched within a short distance of either camp, to join him at once. Stanley refused and Richard ordered his son, George, to be at once beheaded, but the order was not executed owing to the immediate preparation for battle. When the issue was joined both the Stanleys openly supported Richmond. Richard, seeing that the day was lost, surrounded by his knights, led a desperate charge into his enemy's centre. After striking down William Brandon, his rival's standard-bearer, Richard was slain while fighting bravely. After the battle his corpse was flung across the back of a horse and carried to Leicester, where it was interred in the church of the Greyfriars.

That Richard was an undersized humpbacked man, with his left shoulder, as More tells us, higher than his right, has always been the tradition; but the deformity could scarcely have been very marked in one who performed such feats upon the battlefield, nor does it appear very distinctly in a contemporary portrait of him. Richard has been represented as a monster of iniquity by Sir Thomas More and other historians who wrote under the Tudors and Shakespeare has heightened and enforced, for all time, this unfavourable verdict. Unscrupulous, cruel, and violent as Richard was, he was probably no worse than contemporary princes and statesmen. His capacity was undoubted, and he seems to have made an effort to govern well. He attempted to restore order, to check the tyranny of the nobles, and to develop commerce. But he lacked the astuteness that enabled Henry VII to accomplish, in a great measure, the work he attempted.

Shakespeare has been accused of having drawn Richard's character under the influence of Lancastrian prejudice but he is supported by the contemporary writers of Richard's own day and he could also consult the portrait by Rous, who had been a priest in the household of the great Earl Warwick and



## RICHARD ]

also had described his person in the “ Rous Roll ”. But if the poet in his masterly sketch has shown Richard as entirely without scruple in clearing away all obstacles in the path of his ambition, he has done ample justice to his wit, his eloquence, his vigorous intellect, and his intrepid courage. The statement of Sir Thomas More that Richard, after the murder of his nephews, “ never had quiet in his mind ” and that the night before the battle “ he had a dreadful dream ”, has been expanded by Shakespeare into the magnificent tent-scene wherein the ghosts of his many victims appear to him and to his rival, bidding the one to “ despair and die ”, but speaking of “ success and happy victory ” to the other.

*II Hen. VI*, v, i, ii, iii.

*III Hen. VI*, i, i, ii, iv, 9f.; ii, i, ii, iii, iv, vi; iii, ii, 146; iv, i, 19f., iii, vi, 81, vii, viii; v, i, 101, iv, 27, v, 43ff.

*Rich. III*, i, i, iii, 12f.; iii, ii, 40ff., iii, 16f., iv, 105, vii, 22ff.; iv, i, 38ff., ii, iii, iv; v, i, iii, iv, v.

*Hen. VIII*, i, ii, 196; ii, i, 108.

**RICHARD (1), Earl of Cambridge.** See Cambridge.

*Hen. V*, ii, Cho., 23, ii, 66f.

*I Hen. VI*, ii, iv, 909.

*II Hen. VI*, ii, ii, 45.

**RICHARD (2). Ketley or Kelly.** See Kelly.

*Hen. V*, iv, viii, 109.

**RICHARD (3). Plantagenet.** See York (4).

*I Hen. VI*, ii, iv, v; iii, i; iv, i, 82.

*II Hen. VI*, i, iii, 186; ii, ii, 63f.; v, iii.

*III Hen. VI*, i, i, 49f.; ii, i, 87.

*Rich. III*, iv, iv, 44.

**RICHARD (4), son of Edward IV.** See York (6).

*Rich. III*, iii, i, 96; iv, iv, 48.

**RICHARD (5), Grey.** See Grey (4).

*III Hen. VI*, iii, ii, 2.

**RICHARD (6), Ratcliffe.** See Ratcliffe.

*Rich. III*, iii, iii, 2.

RICHARD (7), Vernon. See Vernon (1).

*I. Hen. IV*, v, ii, 1.

RICHMOND (1), Earl of. See Arthur.

*John*, II, i, 152.

RICHMOND (2), Countess of. Margaret Beaufort, daughter and heiress of John, first Duke of Somerset, was born in 1441, being only three years old at the time of her father's death. In 1455 she married Edmund Tudor, Earl of Richmond, half-brother of Henry VI, but he died in the next year leaving her with an infant son, afterwards Henry VII. On the outbreak of the Wars of the Roses, Margaret retired to her brother-in-law's castle at Pembroke. The victory of Tewkesbury rendered her son Henry the Lancastrian claimant to the throne, and he fled to Brittany. Margaret remained at home, though keeping up a correspondence with her son, and during his absence married as her third husband, Lord Stanley, the trusted minister of Edward IV. On the accession of Richard III, she took an active part in arranging for the marriage of Henry with Elizabeth of York, and in aiding the abortive rebellion of 1484. Though Richard dare not alienate her husband, he committed Margaret to close confinement in her husband's care. But she was able to influence Stanley, and his defection from Richard's side at Bosworth secured the throne for her son. After his accession, Margaret lived chiefly in retirement at Woking in Surrey. The king deferred to her opinion, and his letters show the respect that he bore her. Nor did he forget that he derived his title through her, who, had there then existed a precedent for female succession, might herself have mounted the throne. During her retirement she came under the influence of John Fisher, who became her confessor, and through him she instituted the foundations bearing the name of "Lady Margaret" at Oxford and Cambridge, as well as Christ's and St. John's Colleges at the latter place. Although her own contributions to literature are confined to translating part of the "*Imitatio Christi*", she was a valuable and early patron of Caxton and Wynkyn de Worde. She was one of the few worthy and high-minded members of the aristocracy in an essentially selfish and cruel age. She died, much regretted, in 1509.

*Rich. III*, I, iii, 20.

## RICHMOND]

RICHMOND (8), Earl of. See Henry VII.

III *Hen. VI*, iv, vi, 67ff.

*Rich. III*, iv, i, 43f., ii, 47ff., iii, 40ff., iv, 43ff., v, 1f. ;

v, iii, 84ff., iv, 5f., v, 8f.

RIVERS, Earl. This most accomplished knight and learned man, born 1442, was Anthony, eldest son of Richard Woodville, first Earl Rivers, by Jacquetta, widow of John Duke of Bedford. He married Elizabeth, the heiress of Lord Scales, and this marriage is bitterly alluded to by Gloucester in *Rich. III*, iv, i, where he upbraids his brother, Edward IV, for permitting it. After fighting on the Lancastrian side at Towton, Scales transferred his allegiance to the victorious Yorkist king, who confirmed him in his father-in-law's title in 1462. After the marriage of his sister to the king, his advance was very rapid. At Smithfield in 1467, he fought a celebrated tournament with Anthony, the Bastard of Burgundy, but when Edward saw that Woodville was getting the better of his opponent, he threw down his warder and declared the battle drawn. Scales was a member of the embassy which arranged the match between the Duke of Burgundy and Edward's sister Margaret in 1467, and in the next year he conducted the bride to Bruges, where he took part in a brilliant tournament. He escaped the fate of his father and brother at Edgcote in 1469, and succeeded as second Earl Rivers. Being appointed Lieutenant of Calais, he is credited by Waverin with a victory over Warwick's fleet in the Seine. He shared Edward's exile in Holland, returned with him in 1471, helped him to secure the victory of Barnet, and beat off the Bastard Fauconberg's attack on London. In 1473 he became the guardian of the young Prince of Wales, and Chief Butler of England. He went on a pilgrimage to Rome in 1475, where he was invested by Pope Sixtus IV with the title of Defender and Director of Papal Causes in England. During his absence his first wife died. A marriage was now arranged for him with Margaret, sister of James III of Scotland, but the match was suddenly broken off owing to Edward's intrigues with Scottish subjects. Rivers was looked upon with great dislike by Gloucester, who scornfully styles him "that man of worship". When the king died, Rivers was at Ludlow with the young prince, and at once set out with him for London, being accompanied by his half-brother, Richard

Grey. When the company had reached Stony Stratford, learning that Gloucester was at Northampton, Rivers and Grey rode back to meet him. They were cordially received, but were next day sent under arrest to Sheriff Hutton Castle, near York. From this place they were removed to Pontefract, where they were beheaded for treason, probably without any form of trial, in 1483. Rivers has been deservedly characterized as the noblest and most accomplished of Richard III's victims. He was a continuous patron of Caxton, and translated for him the first dated book printed in England. The portrait of Rivers shows a clean-shaven, intellectual face.

III *Hen. VI*, iv, iv.

*Rich. III*, I, iii; II, i, ii, iv, 11f.; III, ii, 67; IV, iv, 69f.;  
v, i, 3, iii, 140.

ROBERT (1), Waterton. See Waterton.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 284.

ROBERT (2), Brackenbury. See Brackenbury.

*Rich. III*, v, iv, 14.

ROCHESTER, Bishop of. This was Dr. John Fisher, eldest son of Robert Fisher, mercer. He was born at Beverley in 1459. In 1497 he became confessor to Margaret Countess of Richmond, mother of Henry VII, and in 1503 was appointed the first Lady Margaret professor of divinity at Cambridge. He was consecrated to the see of Rochester in 1504. Acting for his patroness, he took the chief part in the foundation of Christ's and St. John's Colleges. Fisher was antagonistic to Wolsey, and opposed in Convocation his request for a subsidy in aid of the war in Flanders. He was a great patron of learning, and it was through his influence that Erasmus was induced to visit Cambridge; and the latter especially attributed it to Fisher's powerful protection that the study of Greek was allowed to continue without active molestation of the kind that it had to encounter at Oxford. Fisher wrote three treatises against Luther and offered resistance to the scheme of church reform brought before the House of Commons in 1529. In 1534 he was fined for denying the validity of the divorce of Queen Katherine. He was committed to the Tower for refusing to swear to the Act of Succession,

ROCHFORD]

deprived of his see, attainted, and beheaded in 1535 for refusing to acknowledge the king as supreme head of the Church in England.

*Hen. VIII*, II, iv.

ROCHFORD, Viscount; a title of Sir Thomas Bullen. See Bullen (1).

*Hen. VIII*, I, iv, 93.

ROGER (1), Bolingbroke. See Bolingbroke (2).

*II Hen. VI*, I, ii, 76.

ROGER (2), Earl of March. See Mortimer (2).

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 37.

ROGER (3), Mortimer. See Mortimer (2).

*III Hen. VI*, I, i, 106.

ROSS, William de; seventh Baron Ross of Hamlake, Yorks, summoned to parliament from 1394 to 1413. Henry IV rewarded his services by creating him Lord Treasurer of England. He continued high in that monarch's favour until his death in 1414. Ross married Margaret, the daughter of Sir John Arundel.

*Rich. II*, II, i, ii, 14, iii; III, i.

ROUSSI, a French earl slain at the battle of Agincourt.

*Hen. V*, III, v, 44; IV, viii, 104.

RUTLAND (1). See Aumerle.

*Rich. II*, v, ii, 43, iii, 96.

RUTLAND (2), the second son of Richard Plantagenet, Duke of York. He was ruthlessly slain by Clifford at the battle of Wakefield, being then but a boy of 12 years old.

*III Hen. VI*, I, iv; II, i, 63, ii, 98f., iv, 3f., vi, 48f.

*Rich. III*, I, ii, 158, iii, 178; IV, iv, 45f.

ST. ASAPH, Bishop of. Henry Standish, when young, became a Franciscan friar, and ultimately warden of the monastery of that order, Greyfriars, London. He became a court preacher to Henry VIII. Having maintained that the

clergy ought to be liable to punishment by the secular courts, he was summoned before convocation, but escaped all punishment owing to his favour with the king. He opposed both Colet and Erasmus but tried in vain to prevent the king from deserting the Romish faith. Standish was consecrated to the see of St. Asaph by Archbishop Warham in 1518. During the divorce proceedings he acted as one of the counsel for Queen Katherine, but, though he spoke strongly against it at the time, he later assisted at the coronation of Anne Bullen. He was one of the bishops who took part in the consecration of Cranmer as metropolitan of the Church of England in succession to Warham and renounced the Roman jurisdiction in 1535, dying in extreme old age a month later.

*Hen. VIII, II, iv.*

SALISBURY (1), Earl of. This was William Longsword, third earl, a natural son of Henry II by an unknown mother, though later tradition identifies her with Rosamond Clifford. His half-brother, Richard I, bestowed upon him the hand of the great heiress Ela, daughter of William de Evereux, Earl of Salisbury, to which title he succeeded on the death of his father-in-law. Early in John's reign he was appointed Constable of Dover, Warden of the Cinque Ports, and at a later period, Warden of the Welsh Marches. During the period of John's excommunication he was reckoned as one of the king's evil counsellors who were ready to do anything he wished. In 1215 Salisbury attacked the great fleet that Philip of France had gathered at Damme for the invasion of England, captured 300 vessels laden with arms and provisions, and destroyed 100 more, thus removing that danger. He stood among the king's friends at Runnymede in 1215, though his name appears as one of those who counselled the grant of the charter. He remained faithful to the king until the middle of the next year when, thinking that John's cause was hopeless, he joined Lewis of France and surrendered Salisbury Castle to him. After the death of John, Salisbury was sent to Dover by Lewis to try and persuade Hubert de Burgh to surrender that castle. But he was strongly reprovved by that valiant soldier for acting against his own nephew, the young King Henry III. Shortly afterwards he returned to his native allegiance and was present at a council of Henry's supporters in 1217, fighting also in the royal army at Lincoln. Salisbury

## SALISBURY]

afterwards served with distinction in the Holy Land. Sir Walter Scott introduces him as one of the companions of Richard Cœur de Lion during his crusade. On his return home, Salisbury actively supported Hubert de Burgh in the work of administration and in 1225 he helped to secure Gascony against the attacks of Lewis VIII. But on his return voyage he was shipwrecked and, though he reached England in safety, after three months he succumbed to the hardships he had endured. The story that he was poisoned by Hubert is false. Salisbury was buried in the then unfinished cathedral of Canterbury in 1226, two of the foundation stones of which had been laid by Pandulph on behalf of the earl and his countess.

“Salisbury was a wise and valiant man, not, indeed, to be ranked with patriotic statesmen, such as William the Earl-Marshal and Hubert de Burgh, but far superior to most of the nobles of his day, and sincerely attached to the interests of the royal house from which he came, faithful as long as it was possible to his brother John, and a good servant to his young nephew Henry. He seems to have been hot-tempered, but, though concerned during the war between John and the barons in some cruel ravages, was religious and has the good word of the monastic chroniclers” (Hunt). After his death, his wife took the veil, and in 1238 became abbess of a nunnery that she had built at Lacock, Wiltshire.

*John*, I, i; III, i; IV, ii, iii; V, ii, iv, vii.

**SALISBURY (2), Earl of.** This was John Montacute, born c. 1350, son of Sir John de Montacute, the brother of William, second earl. While serving in France in 1369 he was knighted at Bourdeille by the Earl of Cambridge, and two years later went on a crusade to Prussia. Montacute held a command in Ireland during the visit of Richard II in 1394. For some years he was known as one of the most prominent supporters of the Lollards, kept a Lollard priest as his chaplain, and attended their meetings, for which he was rebuked by the king. He advocated the king's marriage with Isabella of France, and succeeded his uncle as third Earl of Salisbury in 1397. The part that he played in advocating the king's marriage and the peace with France secured him Richard's confidence, but with the people at large, and especially with the Londoners, he was distinctly unpopular. He supported the king in his arrest of

Gloucester and Warwick, while in 1398 he became one of the commissioners for discharging the functions of Parliament. Salisbury accompanied Richard II to Ireland and, on the landing of Bolingbroke, returned with his royal master to Conway. But the troops that he had collected, and those brought over by the king, all deserted, and he is said to have advised Richard to flee to Bordeaux. He accompanied the king to Flint, where he was arrested after the royal surrender. Lord Morley accused Salisbury of complicity in Gloucester's death, and challenged him to single combat. The Londoners clamoured for his execution, but before his trial he was released on the intercession of Henry's sister, Elizabeth Countess of Huntingdon. Salisbury now took part in the conspiracy formed by the abbot of Westminster. When their plan failed, the conspirators retreated to Reading. From thence Salisbury rode to Sonning to visit queen Isabella. But failing to raise the people, they retreated to Cirencester, where Salisbury was seized and executed by the mob, his head being sent to London. He married Maud, daughter of Sir Adam Francis, sheriff of Herts.

"Salisbury's Lollardism and his attachment to Richard II account for the bitterness with which the English clerical chroniclers speak of him. He was brave, courteous, and loyal, a munificent patron of the poets, and a poet himself, though none of his verses are now extant. It is evident that he loved French culture and manners, and his French sympathies made him one of Richard's most trusted counsellors during the latter part of that king's reign, led him to abet the king's attempt to establish an absolute sovereignty, and exposed him to the hatred of his own countrymen" (Hunt).

*Rich. II*, II, iv ; III, iii ; v, vi, 8.

**SALISBURY** (3), fourth Earl of. This was Thomas Montacute, eldest son of the above, who was born in 1388. He received part of his father's lands which had been forfeited by his treason, and increased his possessions by marriage with Eleanor Holland, daughter of the second Earl of Kent. But he was not advanced to the dignity held by his father until 1421. In 1414 he was appointed a joint commissioner to treat with France concerning the rights of Henry V. He was also one of the peers appointed to try the Earl of Cambridge and the other conspirators, and afterwards accompanied Henry V.



to France, under whom he became one of the greatest captains in the French war. He was present at Agincourt, where Shakespeare represents him as bidding farewell to Exeter, Gloucester, and Westmorland, and informing the king that the French are about to charge. After distinguishing himself in subsequent engagements, he was appointed Lieutenant-General of Normandy, and created Earl of Perche in 1419. He continued to serve under the Duke of Bedford, and completed the subjugation of Maine and Champagne in 1425. When he returned home and took his seat in the council in 1427, he supported the Duke of Gloucester in his preparations to send an expedition to Holland, but the scheme was stopped by Bedford. Salisbury now returned to France where, after many other successes, he commenced the siege of Orleans in 1428. While he was surveying the city from a window of the fortification of Tourelles, which he had taken from the defenders, a stone ball from a cannon shattered the framework of the window, destroyed one of Salisbury's eyes, besides inflicting other severe wounds in his head. As he lay dying he exhorted the English captains by no means to give up the siege. His body was conveyed to England and buried with much pomp at Bisham Priory, Berkshire.

"Salisbury was the most famous and skilful captain on the English side; well skilled in war, and especially, it would seem from the record of his sieges, in the use of artillery. His support of Gloucester was the result of his anger at a personal grievance; but this, combined with his apparently headstrong determination to besiege Orleans, seems to suggest that he was less great as a politician than as a commander. Courteous, liberal, and brave, he was beloved by his followers, and was, it seems generally popular with his countrymen. Though French writers generally charge him with cruelty, he seems not to have acted otherwise than in accordance with the then usages of war, or other leaders on both sides. His death was held to be an event of supreme importance in the course of the war, the French regarding it as a divine punishment on their most puissant and cruel enemy, the English as a mark of God's anger, and the presage of many calamities" (Hunt).

*Hen. V*, iv, iii.

*I Hen. VI*, i, i, 159, ii, 15f. *iv*, iv, 17ff.; *ii*, i, 85, ii, 4.

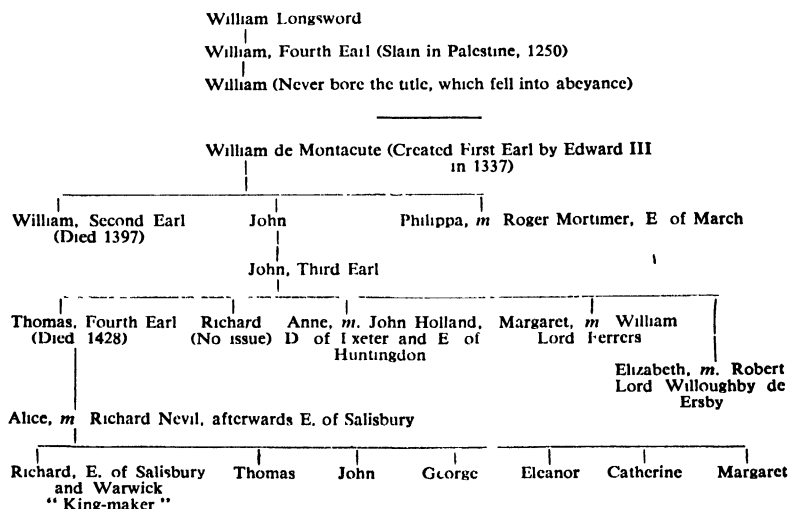
**SALISBURY (4) Earl of.** This was Richard Nevil, born 1400, eldest son of Ralph, first Earl of Westmorland, by his second wife, Joan Beaufort, daughter of John of Gaunt. He married Alice Montacute, only daughter and heiress of the valiant Earl Salisbury above, and had that title revived in his favour in 1442. In *II Hen. VI*, up to the fifth act, he is rightly represented as attached to Henry VI, who had bestowed on him many honours and rewards. He was Warden of the West Marches towards Scotland, and in 1429 arranged a truce with the Scots for five years, though he failed in his negotiations for the hand of King James's daughter for the English monarch. In 1431 he joined Henry VI in France, probably returning with him in the next year. He accompanied the Duke of York, who had married his sister Cicely Nevil, when he succeeded Bedford as Regent in France but, returning in the next year, Salisbury became a member of the Privy Council. When in London he lived at the "Harbour", a Nevil residence in Dowgate. Salisbury was connected with the court party through the Beauforts, and with the opposition through York, and this may explain his undecided position for some time. In 1447 he helped to arrest Humphrey Duke of Gloucester. He persuaded York to lay down his arms at Dartford in 1452, but the retention of Somerset in power and the rebukes administered to him owing to the turbulent behaviour of his sons must have irritated him. He supported York's claim to the protectorship on Henry becoming insane in 1453, and became chancellor. On Henry's recovery, Salisbury was dismissed from office along with his kinsman, and from that date he seems to have allied himself with the Yorkists, being one of the chief commanders on that side at the first battle of St. Albans. He gained a signal victory for the Yorkists at Bloreheath in Staffordshire in 1459 over Lord Audley. Afterwards, he effected a junction with York at Ludlow, with whom, when defeated at Ludford, he fled to France and was attainted. Tait says that when he landed with Warwick in 1460 he was left in charge of London, laying siege to the royalist garrison in the Tower, while Warwick and March met the Lancastrians at Northampton; while French says that he greatly contributed to the defeat of the king's forces in that battle. He went to meet Henry, who had been captured during the battle. His attainder was now reversed and he became chamberlain of England. But fortune changed.

## SANDS]

York was slain at Wakefield in 1460, and Salisbury was wounded and taken prisoner, being afterwards beheaded at Pontefract. Of his sons, Richard was the famous Warwick, the "Kingmaker". Sir Thomas Nevil, slain at Wakefield, is referred to in *III Hen. VI*, II, iii. John Nevil was the Marquis of Montague in *III Hen. VI*. George is alluded to as "fell Warwick's brother" in *III Hen. VI*; and of his daughters, Eleanor married Thomas Lord Stanley in *Rich. III*. Catherine married the Lord Hastings in *Rich. III*. Margaret married John de Vere, Earl of Oxford, in *III Hen. VI*.

*II Hen. VI*, I, i, iii, 77, iv, 83; II, ii; III, i, ii, iii;  
v, i, iii.

### HOUSE OF SALISBURY



**SANDS, Lord.** In some editions this character is wrongly called "Sir Walter Sands" in *Hen. VIII*, II, i. Theobald correctly proposed "Sir William Sands". This nobleman was descended from a distinguished family who were sheriffs of Hampshire in the time of Richard II. Sir William Sands, or Sandys, had greatly distinguished himself during the French wars of Henry VII and Henry VIII. He took a leading part, Shakespeare implies rather an unwilling part, in the preparation for, and in the festivities at, the Field of the Cloth of

Gold. In 1523 he was created, by Henry VIII, Baron Sandys of the Vine, near Basingstoke. George Cavendish, in his account of the masque given by Wolsey at York Place, shows that this character, and not the Earl of Worcester, was the Lord Chamberlain at this time, as he succeeded Worcester in 1526. Sands was present at the coronation of Anne Bullen, and both she and Henry visited him at his home in 1535 but, when the time came, he conducted Anne from Greenwich to to the Tower and took part in her trial. Sands went with the tide in religious matters, though there are not wanting signs that he remained of the old way of thinking. In later years he retired from court, and died at Calais in 1540.

*Hen. VIII*, I, iii, iv; II, i.

SANTRAILLES. See Ponton de Santrailles.

*I Hen. VI*, I, iv, 28.

SAUNDER SIMCOX an impostor and his wife.

Grafton, quoting Sir Thomas More, gives the story of a blind man and his wife who came to St. Albans in the time of Henry VI. He begged for five or six days, and then professed to be cured. His story was that he came from Berwick, where he had dreamed that he would be cured if he came to St. Alban's shrine; but he remained uncured until the arrival of the king. Humphrey Duke of Gloucester placed him in the stocks as a vagabond, and this fact is recorded on the wall near the duke's tomb. The dry account of the old chronicler has been expanded by the dramatist in a humorous scene.

*II Hen. VI*, II, i.

SAY, LORD. This nobleman was James Fiennes, whose grandfather had married Joan, heiress of Geoffrey, second Baron Say. James was one of Henry V's captains during the French wars, and for his services received several grants of lands. He became Sheriff of Kent in 1437; Constable of Dover and Warden of the Cinque Ports in 1447. In the latter year he was advanced to the dignity of baron, with the title Lord Say and Sele, becoming also Lord Chamberlain to the king, and a member of the council. As an adherent of the Duke of Suffolk and a member of the court party; he was

## SCALES]

charged with extortion and with being partly responsible for the surrender of Anjou and Maine. In 1449 he was created Lord Treasurer, but Parliament compelled Henry to dismiss him, though the king did not commit him to prison as he had promised. On the news of Stafford's defeat by Cade, Henry sent Lord Say to the Tower, but not until some of the lords had threatened to join the rebels. In 1450 he was handed over to the rebels by Lord Scales. Cade took him to the Guildhall, and thence hurried him off to execution at the Standard in the Cheap.

"Lord Say is claimed with pride as an ancestor by Gibbon, who dignifies him with the title of 'a patron and martyr of learning'. This mistaken idea is found in Shakespeare's *II Hen. VI*, iv, vii, where Cade accuses Lord Say of erecting a grammar school, causing printing to be used, and building a paper mill. This is an anachronism" (Bayne).

*II Hen. VI*, iv, ii, 170f., iv, vii.

SCALES (1), LORD. Thomas, seventh Baron Scales, born c. 1399, was the son of Robert, fifth Lord Scales, and succeeded his brother Robert in 1420. He was much occupied in the French wars of Henry V, and continued to serve with Talbot and Fastolfe in many victorious fields, but shared their defeat at Patay, where he was taken prisoner. After being ransomed he continued to serve under the Duke of Bedford, and after his death under the Duke of Somerset. He probably continued fighting in France until the English possessions were lost, when he returned home and warmly supported Henry VI against York. In 1450 he raised a force of soldiers for service against Jack Cade, among them being his old comrade Matthew Gough, and both commanded in the fight on London Bridge. Being a staunch Lancastrian, ten years later he was commissioned to hold London for the king. He threw himself into the Tower, which he vigorously defended against the Yorkists under Salisbury, till compelled to surrender for want of food. While seeking sanctuary at Westminster he was recognized by some boatmen and, being hated by the Londoners, he was murdered by them and his body cast ashore at Southwark. Scales was a man of violent passions; a soldier whose whole life was passed in war. His family seat was at Middleton, a few miles from Lynn Regis in Norfolk. French says that he built Middleton Castle. He is called "Governor

of the Tower " in many editions, but he did not hold the post of Constable of the Tower, though left in command on Henry VI's retirement to Kenilworth.

I *Hen. VI*, i, i, 146.

II *Hen. VI*, iv, v.

III *Hen. VI*, iv, i, 52.

SCALES (2), LORD. This was a title of Anthony Woodville, Earl Rivers, who had married Elizabeth, daughter of the above, and in her right succeeded to her father's title.

See *sub* Woodville (2).

*Rich. III*, ii, i, 67.

SCOTLAND, King of;

(1) DUNCAN. See *sub* Duncan.

*Macb.*, i, ii, 28.

(2) MACBETH. See *sub* Macbeth.

*Macb.*, iii, i.

(3) MALCOLM. See *sub* Malcolm.

*Macb.*, v, viii, 59.

(4) DAVID II, only son of Robert Bruce by his second wife, Elizabeth de Burgh, was born in 1324. In accordance with the terms of the Treaty of Northampton, he married Joanna, the daughter of Edward II of England, and succeeded to the throne in 1329. Owing to the victory of Halidon Hill, won by Edward III and Edward Baliol, David was sent to France in 1334, where he remained for seven years. In 1346 he invaded England in the interests of France, but was defeated and taken prisoner at Neville's Cross. He was detained in honourable confinement for eleven years when, by the treaty of Berwick, he was released on promise of the payment of a ransom of 100,000 marks. As Scotland was too poor to pay this huge sum, David suggested appointing Lionel, the son of Edward III, his successor. But this led to an insurrection of the nobles, and the Scottish parliament rejected the proposal in 1364. David died in 1371 and was succeeded by his nephew, Robert III. David was a weak and incapable ruler, without a spark of his father's patriotic spirit.

"He was not 47 years old, yet his reign had lasted 41"

## SCOTLAND (KINGS)]

years—a reign as inglorious as it was long, but still of great moment to Scotland, since, ‘from a war of conquest and patriotic resistance, it became a mere episode in the larger contest which it had stirred between England and France’.”

*Hen. V*, I, ii, 161.

(5) JAMES II, only surviving son of James I and his wife, Joan Beaufort, was born in 1430, and succeeded to the throne at the age of six. His minority was marked by fierce hostility between the Douglasses and the Crichtons; civil war broke out and lasted till 1446. Three years later James took the government into his own hands. Six years later the king invited Douglas to Stirling, where he stabbed him with his own hand. Civil war again broke out, but this ended in victory for the crown. During the Wars of the Roses, James showed his sympathy with the Lancastrian party and invaded the north of England after the defeat of Henry VI at Northampton. While conducting the siege of Roxburgh, James was killed by the bursting of a cannon in 1460. “James was a vigorous and popular ruler. He greatly improved the administration of justice, reformed the coinage, and passed several measures for the protection of the poor.”

*I Hen. VI*, iv, i, 158.

SCROOP OR SCROPE (1), Sir Stephen; was the third son of Richard, first Baron Scrope of Bolton, and brother to Richard II's favourite, the Earl of Wiltshire. As with the other Scropes, French has reversed the genealogies and states that the son of the above was the Lord Scrope of Henry V. Sir Stephen had been a distinguished soldier from his youth, serving in France and Flanders. He married Milicent, daughter and co-heiress of Robert, third Lord Tiptoft, becoming in her right Lord of Bentley, near Doncaster, and of Castle Combe, Wiltshire. He was strongly attached to Richard II and was one of the few who remained faithful to him until his surrender at Flint. Scrope was taken into favour by Henry IV, who appointed him, on account of his martial experiences, Keeper of Roxburgh Castle, and in 1401 Deputy-Lieutenant of Ireland under his young son, Thomas of Lancaster. He defeated the Irish at Callan in 1407, and died of the plague at Castle Dermot in 1408. His widow married Sir John Fastolfe in 1409. He left a son, Stephen, and a daughter, Elizabeth.

*Rich. II*, III, ii, iii.

SCROOP or SCROPE (2), Archbishop of York. This was Richard, born 1350, the fourth son of Henry, first Baron Scrope of Masham, and godson of Richard, first Baron Scrope of Bolton. He graduated in law at Cambridge, and was presented to the living of Ainderly Steeple, near Northallerton, by his godfather in 1367. After being successively Dean of Chichester and Bishop of Lichfield, he was translated to York in 1398 on the express desire of Richard II, thereby ignoring the choice of the chapter. Nevertheless, he acquiesced in the revolution of 1399, was a member of the commission that received Richard's renunciation of the crown, and joined the Archbishop of Canterbury in enthroning the new king. But his allegiance was shaken by the disloyalty of the Percies, with whom he had close family ties. In 1405 he took up arms at York along with Lords Bardolph and Mowbray, issuing a manifesto declaring that he only sought a better and more just government. He was joined by many of the clergy of the province and their people, while the citizens of York rose in a body. Scrope was soon at the head of 8,000 men. Having joined Lord Mowbray they marched to Skipton Moor, where they met the royal forces under Westmorland. Being inferior in numbers the earl suggested a conference, and to this Scrope agreed, taking the reluctant Mowbray with him. At this conference Scrope laid down a copy of his manifesto. Westmorland, having agreed that the demands were reasonable, and had his full approval, induced him to dismiss his forces. No sooner was this accomplished than the archbishop and Mowbray were arrested and sent to Pontefract. On the arrival of the king they were taken to Bishopthorpe, some three miles south of the city where, after a hasty and irregular trial, they were condemned and executed, Scrope's remains being subsequently buried in York Minster. He was long looked upon by the Yorkshiremen as a martyr for the cause of liberty. This was "the first instance of capital punishment inflicted on a bishop" (Hume).

In consequence of an ambiguous expression in the will of Richard, first Baron Scrope of Bolton, the archbishop has often been considered his son and thus brother to the Earl of Wiltshire, executed at Bristol. Shakespeare falls into this mistake in *I Hen. IV*, i, iii, 268, and even Tait in the *Dict. Nat. Biog.*, refers to Richard, first Baron Scrope, as his uncle. French, however, entirely and emphatically reverse



## SCROPE]

the genealogies. It will be seen, however, from the table below, that they were second cousins and in *I Hen. IV*, iv, iv, 3, Shakespeare rightly makes him refer to Wiltshire as his "cousin Scroop".

*I Hen. IV*, I, iii, 268; III, ii, 119; IV, iv, 3; V, v, 37.

*II Hen. IV*, I, i, 89, iii; II, i, 187, iii, 42f.; IV, i, 41, ii, 2, iv, 84.

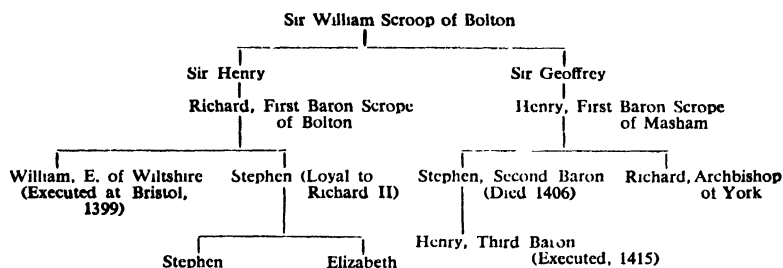
SCROPE (3). See Wiltshire (1).

*I Hen. IV*, I, iii, 271; IV, iv.

SCROPE (4), LORD. This was Henry, third baron Scrope of Masham, born c. 1376, the eldest son of Stephen, second baron. On the suppression of Thomas Mowbray's rebellion in 1405, he and his father must have carefully dissociated themselves from Mowbray's fellow rebel, the archbishop. Scrope enjoyed the confidence and friendship of the young Prince of Wales, a modern writer affirming that they sometimes shared the same bed, and this may help to explain Henry's words of burning indignation as set forth by Shakespeare. He succeeded his father in 1406 and three years later was employed, along with Henry Beaufort, on an embassy to France, while in the next year he was appointed treasurer. On the accession of Henry V, Scrope was superseded at the treasury by the Earl of Arundel but was again employed as an ambassador both to Denmark and to France. While in the latter country he allowed himself to be corrupted by the promise of an immense bribe and took part in the Earl of Cambridge's conspiracy. This action seems strangely inconsistent with his character as well as with his past career and he himself pleaded that he had become an accessory in order to betray the conspiracy. He may have been induced to join by his connection with Cambridge, whose step-mother, Joan Holland, he had married as his second wife, while possibly he had resented his deprivation of the Treasury two years previously. After a hasty trial, he was condemned, attainted, and beheaded in 1415, Henry showing a sense of Scrope's ingratitude by refusing to reduce the sentence, as in the case of his fellow-conspirators, to simple beheading. His head was sent to York to be placed on one of the bars and his lands declared forfeited.

*Hen. V*, II, Pro. 24, ii.

## HOUSE OF SCROOP OR SCROPE



## SECRETARIES to Wolsey :

- (1). Dr. Richard Pace. See Pace.
- (2). William Burbank, afterwards archdeacon of Carlisle.  
*Hen. VIII*, I, i.

**SEELY, Sir Bennet.** The name of this person is variously given. By some writers he is called Sir John Scheveley and by others (Hume and Rymer) Sir Benedict Seeley. Many historians agree that the name was John. Sir Richard Brown states that he was Sir John Shelley, ancestor of the family of that name who became baronets, and of whom Sir Philip Charles Shelley, taking the name of Sidney, was created Lord de L'Isle and Dudley.

*Rich. II*, v, vi, 14.

**SEYMOUR, LORD,** present with the Duke of York at Berkeley Castle, was Richard de St. Maur, fifth baron Seymour. He was summoned to Parliament from 1380 to 1400. "He might properly be introduced on the stage in the representation of the play." (French).

*Rich II*, II, iii, 55.

**SHAW, Dr. ;** called John by More and Holinshed, and Ralph by Hall and Fabyan, was the brother of Sir Edmund Shaw, Lord Mayor of London. He may without doubt be identified with Ralph Shaw, prebendary of St. Paul's, who was esteemed a man of learning and ability. He had been a chaplain to Edward IV and was employed by the protector to preach a sermon at St. Paul's Cross in 1483, when he not only impugned the validity of Edward's marriage with Elizabeth Woodville but also, according to More, asserted that both Edward IV and his brother Clarence were bastards.

## SHERIFF]

He took for his text, "Bastard slips shall not thrive". This passage was no doubt borrowed from the apocryphal book, the Wisdom of Solomon, iv, 3, "the multiplying brood of the ungodly shall not thrive," which in the Douay Bible reads, "bastard slips shall not take root." Shakespeare makes Buckingham use much of the language in favour of Gloucester which was employed by Shaw in his sermon. Fabyan states that he "lived in little prosperity afterwards" and died in 1484.

*Rich. III, III, v, 103.*

SHERIFF (1), of Northampton. This official was Sir Simon de Pateshall who was Sheriff of Northants for the last four years of Richard I's reign and during the first four of that of King John. One of the witnesses to two charters granted to the city of London in his first year, dated July 17th, 1199, is "Simon de Pateshall", no doubt this sheriff, who was also a justice of the king's court. He joined the baronial party and was in Northampton with Simon de Montfort the younger when it was besieged by the king in 1264. He died at Easter, 1274.

*John, I, i.*

SHERIFF (2), of Yorkshire, The; who defeated Northumberland deserves honourable mention, though his name is not recorded by the poet. He was Sir Thomas de Rokeby, a soldier, who represented Yorkshire in the parliament of 1406 and was sheriff of the county, 1407-08 and again, 1411-12. When Henry Percy, first Earl of Northumberland, crossed the border in 1408, Rokeby held the passage of the Nidd against him, near Knaresborough. Northumberland turned aside and took up a position at Bramham Moor where Rokeby attacked and routed him. For this service he was rewarded with Northumberland's manor of Spofforth. Rokeby served in France during 1417 and died in the next year.

*II Hen. IV, iv, iv, 99.*

SHERIFF (3), of London. The Sheriffs of London, 1441-42, were John Sutton and William Wetyngdale. One of these would supervise the public penance of Eleanor Cobham, Duchess of Gloucester.

*II Hen. VI, ii, iv.*

SHERIFF (4), of Wiltshire; who led Buckingham forth to execution, was Henry Long of Wrexall, Wiltshire. He was sheriff of the county for the third time in 1483 and died in 1490.

*Rich. III*, v, i.

SHIRLEY, Sir Hugh; was Master of the Hawks to Henry IV. He was the son of Sir Thomas Shirley by his wife Isabel, sister of the last Lord Basset of Drayton.

*I Hen. IV*, v, iv, 41.

SHORE, Jane; was the only child of Thomas Warnstead, a mercer of good reputation in Cheapside, London. She married William Shore, a goldsmith of Lombard Street. She became the mistress of Edward IV about 1470, gaining great influence over him by her beauty and wit. According to More, "she never abused to any man's hurt, but to many a man's comfort and relief; where the king took displeasure she would mitigate and appease his mind; where men were out of favour, she would bring them in his grace." On the death of Edward, she became mistress of Thomas Grey, first Marquis of Dorset. Richard III accused "Shore's wife", among others, of sorcery when Hastings was condemned to death. Jane was imprisoned in the Tower and her goods, which were of great value, were seized; her husband, it is believed, going abroad at this time. To complete her ruin Richard brought her before the Bishop of London's court as a harlot and she was compelled to do penance publicly in 1483, after which she was imprisoned in Ludgate. After her release she sank into deep poverty, dying in 1526 or 1527. More evidently knew her in her later days. A tradition states that she strewed flowers at Henry VII's funeral.

*Rich III*, I, i, 73ff.; III, i, 185, iv, 73; v, 31f.

SHREWSBURY, Earl of. See Talbot (2).

*I Hen. VI*, III, iv, 26; iv, vii, 61.

SIMPCOX. See Saunder Simpcox.

*II Hen. VI*, II, i.

SIWARD (1), son of Beorn, Earl of Northumberland, was of Danish descent and probably came to England with Canute. He married Aelfbold, daughter of Ealdred, Earl of Bernicia. After slaying his wife's uncle in 1041, he succeeded him in his

## SIWARD]

earldom and thus extended his territory from the Humber to the Tweed, being appointed Earl of Huntingdon soon afterwards. Siward took an active part in military enterprises under Hardicanute. In 1051 he went to the help of Edward the Confessor and drove Godwin and his sons into exile when they threatened to rebel. From his great military reputation as well as his relationship he was well fitted to restore his nephew Malcolm to the Scottish throne—Malcolm's mother was a sister of Siward. According to Holinshed, Duncan had married a daughter of Siward.

In 1054 Siward invaded Scotland with 10,000 men but, as a matter of fact, only succeeded in establishing Malcolm on the throne of Cumbria, and retired to York, where he died in the next year. This stern old warrior "refused to die in bed like a cow when his last illness came upon him, but called for his mail-coat and helmet, and so, axe in hand, met death." He was of almost gigantic stature and, though he seems to have been both violent and unscrupulous, was, on the whole, a just as well as a strenuous ruler.

*Macb.*, iv, iii, 134; v, ii, 2f., iv, vi, vii, viii.

SIWARD (2), young; whose real name was Osborn, eldest son of the above, accompanied his father on his invasion of Scotland. Having challenged Macbeth, he was slain in single combat by that monarch. The unflinching manner in which his father is represented to have learned his fate enshrines a well-known anecdote.

*Macb.*, III, vi, 81; v, ii, 11, iv, vii, viii, 39f.

SOMERSET (1), John Beaufort, third Earl and afterwards first Duke of Somerset, the second son of John Beaufort, first Earl, was born in 1403. He succeeded his father on the death of his elder brother, Henry, in 1419 and in the next year, being then but seventeen years old, he served under Henry V in France. He was taken prisoner in 1421 when the king's brother, Clarence, rashly advanced against the dauphin in Anjou and was killed. Beaufort was speedily ransomed and continued to fight in France during the reign of Henry VI. He was created Duke of Somerset in 1443 and appointed captain-general in Aquitaine and Normandy. But he returned home in disgust on the appointment of the Duke of

York as Regent instead of himself. He died in the next year, some say by his own hand, being unable to endure the disgrace of banishment from court which his quarrel with the government had brought upon him. Beaufort left an only child, Margaret, who married Edmund Tudor, becoming by him the mother of Henry VII. John Beaufort and his wife Margaret are buried under a rich monument at Wimborne Minster, Dorset.

I *Hen. VI*, II, iv, v, 46f.; III, i, iv; IV, i, iii, 9ff.,  
iv, 15f.

SOMERSET (2), Duke of. This was Edmund Beaufort, younger brother of the above and nephew of Cardinal Beaufort. In early life he excelled his brother in military exploits, held command in France in 1431, recaptured Harfleur in 1440, and relieved Calais in 1442, in which year he received the earldom of Dorset. He succeeded his brother as Earl of Somerset in 1444 and as second Duke in 1448. But though he gained in political power his military success deserted him. He was appointed to supersede the Duke of York as regent in France and during the period of his rule most of the English ascendancy in France was lost. He surrendered Rouen and six other strongholds, besides paying a huge sum in money, for "the deliverance of his person, wife, children, and goods," in 1449, being powerless to resist or to cut his way through the French army that had invested the town. On his return to England he was impeached along with Suffolk, Henry's chief minister, but the king raised another force and sent Somerset again to France where, after a three weeks siege, he capitulated at Caen with 3,000 men. Despite popular opposition, Henry retained him as chief minister on his return to England. Somerset hoped to secure his position and strengthen himself against the attacks of York by the reconquest of Gascony, which he now invaded. But the defeat and death of the veteran Talbot at Chatillon in 1453 put an end to his hopes. Henry became insane and York, now protector, committed Somerset to the Tower. But the recovery of the king saved him from further proceedings. He was restored to power and appointed captain of Calais. Failing to get his enemy tried for treason, York took up arms and attacked Somerset at St. Albans in 1455. Somerset was slain, his being

## SOMERSET]

the first noble blood shed in the Wars of the Roses. His wife was Alianor, second daughter of Richard Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, 29, iii, iv, 69; II, ii, 71; III, i;

IV, ix; V, i, ii.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, 18; V, i, 73, vii, 5.

SOMERSET (3), third Duke of. This was Henry Beaufort, son of Edmund, second duke, born in 1436 and succeeded to the dukedom in 1455. He was regarded as the hope of the Lancastrian party. Early in 1458 he took part in the council at London which tried to make a political reconciliation, but the truce was hollow. Margaret still continued to intrigue against York and secured the appointment of Somerset as captain of Calais in 1459 in place of his enemy the Earl of Warwick. Somerset, however, was refused admission by Warwick's adherents and, after making himself master of Guisnes, was defeated by them at Neullay. He returned to England, where he helped in the defeat of the Yorkists at Wakefield in 1460 and fought also in the second battle of St. Albans. After the Yorkist victory at Towton, Somerset escaped from the field and was sent by Margaret as ambassador to Charles VII of France. Somerset was attainted in 1461 and surrendered Bamborough Castle to Sir Ralph Percy in 1462, afterwards submitting to Edward IV. The new king treated him with favour and restored him to his dignities but in 1464, after escaping from the castle in Wales where he had been kept in honourable confinement, he joined Margaret at Hexham. But the Lancastrians were defeated. Somerset was taken prisoner and executed on the field; his dignities were again declared forfeited and never restored. As he was unmarried he was succeeded by his younger brother, Edmund (see below). His death is alluded to in the two Somersets and three Somersets mentioned by Richard Duke of Gloucester, as laying down their lives for the House of Lancaster.

III *Hen. VI*, IV, i, ii, iii, vi; V, i, iii, 15, iv, v, vii, 5.

SOMERSET (4), styled fourth duke of. This was Edmund Beaufort, younger brother of the above, who was styled fourth duke but as his brother's attainder was never reversed, the title consequently remained forfeited. Edmund was born in

1438 and, after the defeat of the Lancastrians in 1461, was brought up in France along with his younger brother, John. He returned to England when Edward IV was driven from the throne by Warwick's defection and commanded the Lancastrian archers at Barnet. After this defeat he joined Queen Margaret, commanding the van of her army at Tewkesbury in 1471 where he was taken prisoner and afterwards beheaded by order of Edward IV. As his brother John had been killed during the battle and both died unmarried, "the House of Beaufort and all the honours to which they were entitled became extinct." French says, "Somerset was always faithful to the Lancastrian cause and is quite out of place in iv, i, where he appears at the court of Edward IV." But it is much more likely that Shakespeare here indicates his elder brother, Somerset (3), who at that time, 1464, enjoyed Edward's favour.

III *Hen. VI*, iv, i, ii, iii, vi; v, i, iii, 15, iv, v, vii, 5.

SOMERVILLE, Sir John, probably belonged to an ancient family of Aston-Somerville, Gloucestershire. In early editions no Christian name is assigned to this character in the play. It is French's impression that "Somerville" was Sir Thomas, who died 1500, and was a descendant of Robert, sheriff of Gloucestershire in 1401, who was the son of a Sir John Somerville. It may be remarked that if Somerville brought up his retainers from Aston-Somerville which is four miles south of Evesham, he would probably pass very near to Stratford-on-Avon; cross the Roman Fosse Way to Southam, thus avoiding the town of Warwick; and reach Coventry before the Duke of Clarence, who, in his belief, was following to the assistance of his noble father-in-law.

III *Hen. VI*, v, i.

SOUTHWELL, John; a priest, canon of St. Stephen's, Westminster, was arrested as one of the abettors of Eleanor Cobham, but died in the Tower, thus escaping execution.

II *Hen. VI*, i, iv.

SPAIN, King of. This was Alphonso VIII (also called IX) King of Castile. He was the son of Sancho, the eldest son of Alphonso VII, who had been appointed by his father King of Castile, while his brother Fernando received Leon. Sancho



SPENCER]

died the year after his father and was succeeded by his son, then an infant 18 months old. When barely 15, Alphonso came forward to do a man's work and to restore order in his kingdom. He married Leonora, or Eleanor, the daughter of Henry II of England. Though defeated at Alarcos by the fanatical religious order of the Almohades, he stemmed the tide of their conquest. He reorganized his kingdom, granted many charters to rising towns, and helped in the formation of the great monastic orders of Calatrava, Santiago, and Alcantara. These supplied the crown with a strong force of well-trained and well-disciplined troops. In 1212 the king of Castile reaped the reward of his long years of patience. The Almohades threatened an invasion in force and Alphonso organized a crusade against them. He was joined by Peter II of Arragon, Sancho of Navarre, and a strong contingent of Templars from Portugal. He met the Moslems at Navas de Tolosa, where the Almohades received the final overthrow which laid Mohammedan Spain at the feet of the Christians. Alphonso was the father of the Lady Blanche of Spain who married Louis VIII of France. He died in 1214.

*John*, II, i, 423.

SPENCER. This is the general reading where the Globe Edition has "Oxford". The person intended was Thomas le Despenser, born 1373, who married Constance, daughter of Edmund of Langley, Duke of York, who had been his guardian from the time he was two years old. In 1397 he upheld Richard II against Gloucester, Arundel, and Warwick and as a reward was created Earl of Gloucester. He commanded the rearguard of the king's army on his last fatal expedition to Ireland and though, on his surrender at Flint, Despenser was one of those for whose safety he stipulated, like everyone else the earl deserted him and was one of the commissioners who pronounced the sentence of deposition in 1399. Despenser was now tried for his share in the death of Thomas of Woodstock, Duke of Gloucester, and degraded from his earldom. Spencer joined in the conspiracy of Rutland, Kent, and Huntingdon against Henry IV. The townsmen of Cirencester set fire to the house in which Spencer was lodging but he escaped to his castle at Cardiff, whence he fled by ship to Bristol, where he was taken and executed.

*Rich. II*, v, vi, 8.

**STAFFORD (1).** This was Edmund, fifth Earl of Stafford, third son of Hugh Stafford, second Earl. He married Anne, daughter and heiress of Thomas of Brotherton, youngest son of Edward III. His grandfather, Ralph, had held high command at Crécy and Poitiers and was created Earl of Stafford by Edward III. Edmund, who is called "the Lord Stafford", was mistaken for King Henry IV and slain at Shrewsbury in 1403.

*I Hen. IV, v, iii, 7ff.*

*II Hen IV, i, i, 18.*

**STAFFORD (2),** Earl of. See Buckingham (1).

*II Hen. VI, i, iv, 55.*

**STAFFORD (3),** Sir Humphrey.

The Staffords were descended from one of William the Conqueror's favourite captains. That king built the castle at Stafford, and entrusted it to Robert, the son of his standard-bearer at Hastings. Sir Humphrey was the eldest son of Sir Humphrey Stafford of Grafton, and was sheriff of the county of Gloucester in the second year of Henry VI, by whom he was knighted and made Governor of Calais. On his return to England he was slain by the rebels under Jack Cade. He married Eleanor, the daughter of Sir Thomas Aylesbury of Blatherwick, and their son, also called Humphrey, fought for Richard III at Bosworth, being attainted and beheaded by Henry VII after the battle. Sir Humphrey and his wife were buried in the chancel of Bromsgrove parish church, Worcestershire.

*II Hen. VI, iv, ii, iii, iv, 34.*

**STAFFORD (4),** Sir William; brother of the above, also slain by Cade and his rebels.

*II Hen. VI, iv, ii, iii, iv, 34.*

**STAFFORD (5).** This was Humphrey, the eldest surviving son of Humphrey, first Duke of Buckingham. He was "gretly hurt" (Paston Letters) in the first battle of St. Albans, and died not long after. By his wife, Margaret Beaufort, daughter of the second Duke of Somerset, he left a son, Henry, who became second Duke of Buckingham.

*III Hen.<sup>6</sup> VI, i, i, 7ff.*

## STAFFORD]

**STAFFORD (6), LORD.** This was Sir Humphrey, born 1439, who was the only son of William Stafford of Southwyck, and cousin of the valiant Staffords slain in Cade's rebellion, to whose estates he succeeded. He early adopted the Yorkist cause; fought for Edward IV at Towton, and was knighted by him on the field. Further honours were bestowed upon him, and he was created Lord Stafford in 1464, and Earl of Devon in 1469. In the same year he was sent with 7,000 archers to oppose Robin of Redesdale. But, having quarrelled with William Herbert, first Earl of Pembroke, Stafford retired with his troops, and Pembroke was defeated. Enraged by his defection, Edward IV gave orders for his immediate arrest and attainder. Stafford was taken in Somerset and executed at Bridgwater in 1469. He was buried in Glastonbury Abbey. In the play Stafford, like Pembroke, is a silent spectator, and might well be omitted, but for being addressed by Edward IV. The order attributed to him, in reality, had reference to the insurrection under Robin of Redesdale.

*III Hen. VI, iv, i.*

**STAFFORD (7).** See Buckingham (3). This was a title inherited from Edmund, fifth Earl of Stafford.

*Hen. VIII, i, 200.*

**STANLEY (1), Sir John.** French says that Sir John, to whom was committed the custody of the Duchess of Gloucester, was the third son of Sir Thomas, created first Baron Stanley by Henry VI in 1456: but in this he is in error. Shakespeare here follows Hall or Grafton. Holinshed has "Sir Thomas Stanlie" which, moreover, is correct. Tait rightly points out that Eleanor Cobham was confided to the care of the father of the Sir John indicated by French. Thomas Stanley, who succeeded his father, the Manx legislator, as Governor of the Isle of Man, was Lieutenant-Governor of Ireland from 1431 to 1437; Lord Chamberlain and Privy Councillor in 1455. He was created first Baron Stanley in 1456, and died in 1458 or 1459.

*" II Hen. VI, ii, iii, 13, iv.*

**STANLEY (2), Sir William;** second son of Thomas, first baron Stanley, and brother of Thomas, first earl of Derby, was born in 1485. He made his first public appearance at Bloreheath in 1459 and was attainted in the next parliament along with other Yorkists. As he did not fall into the hands of the govern-

ment we may assume that he escaped abroad. But the accession of Edward IV brought him his reward and he was appointed Chamberlain of Chester. After the Lancastrian defeat at Hexham in 1465, the king bestowed upon him the castle and lordship of Skipton and other lands in Craven, forfeited by Lord Clifford who fell on the Lancastrian side at Towton. The only scene in *III Hen. VI* wherein he figures agrees with the narrative of some chroniclers, by whom it is said that Sir William Stanley and Sir Thomas Borough (Shakespeare gives Lord Hastings) rescued Edward IV from Middleham Castle. King's Lynn would be a convenient port for Edward to take ship en route for Flanders. Hume, however, represents Edward's escape to have been effected through the advice of Lord Hastings when Warwick's brother, Montague, surprised their quarters near Nottingham. This answers to *iv, iii*, where Edward is seized by the king-maker and sent to Middleham; a story which the historian treats as a fiction.

Richard III did his best to retain Stanley's support, making him Justiciar of N. Wales and granting him estates in Derbyshire. When Henry, Earl of Richmond, landed in 1485 Stanley came to an understanding with him while, two days before the battle of Bosworth, Sir William and his brother, Lord Stanley, had an interview with Richmond at Atherstone. Sir William was denounced to Richard by his nephew, Lord Strange. He was now proclaimed a traitor and is mentioned by the poet among the persons of "great fame and worth" who had joined the invader. The opportune arrival of Stanley at Bosworth with his 3,000 tall men of Cheshire turned the tide of battle against the king. Well might Henry (after his accession) reward Sir William with many honours. But, joining the conspiracy of Perkin Warbeck, Stanley was accused of high treason and beheaded on Tower Hill in 1495; his vast estates and valuable plate being seized by the avaricious king.

*III Hen. VI, iv, v.*

*Rich. III, iv, v, 10.*

STANLEY (8), Sir Thomas; first Earl of Derby; was born about 1435 and succeeded his father as second baron Stanley in 1549. He married Eleanor Neville, sister of Warwick the king-maker. He fought for Henry VI at Northampton but afterwards was made chief justice of Chester and Flint by Edward IV. After Warwick's invasion in 1470, Stanley

## STANLEY]

besieged Hornby Castle on behalf of the Lancastrians but, on the failure of Warwick's rebellion, was pardoned by Edward IV and made Steward of his household. He accompanied Gloucester on his invasion of Scotland and shortly afterwards married Margaret Beaufort, Countess of Richmond, as his second wife. After Edward's death, Stanley remained loyal to his son and narrowly escaped death from a blow with a sword when Hastings was arrested. Stanley escaped with a short imprisonment and acquiesced in Richard's usurpation, bearing the mace at his coronation. He narrowly escaped complicity in Buckingham's abortive rebellion and undertook to put a stop to his wife's intrigues, "keeping her in some secret place at home." Not long before Richmond's landing "the wily fox," as Hall calls him, asked and obtained leave to return to Lancashire. King Richard suspected nothing at first but, on the landing of Richmond he summoned Lord Stanley and his brother to serve against the invader. George Stanley made an unsuccessful attempt to escape from court but, when he was detained, confessed that both he and his uncle were in league with Richmond. His life was spared upon his pledging his father's fidelity to the king. Lord Stanley now marched with 5,000 men and took up a position between the two armies. Though he had a secret interview with Richmond at Atherstone the night previous he took no part in the battle. After the day had been well nigh won by the desperate valour of the intrepid Richard, Sir William Stanley turned the tide in Richmond's favour. Lord Stanley, however, found Richard's crown and set it upon his stepson's head after the battle was won. Stanley was duly rewarded and in 1485 was created Earl of Derby. He enlarged Knowsley House on the occasion of the visit of the king and queen in 1495. Derby died in 1504 and was buried in Burscough Priory. His portrait at Knowsley shows a long thin face with a full beard.

In the play, Shakespeare who, like other writers, was not particular in applying correct terms of relationship, makes Richmond speak of Stanley as his "noble father-in-law," whereas he was his stepfather. Edward IV became his father-in-law when he married that king's eldest daughter, Elizabeth of York.

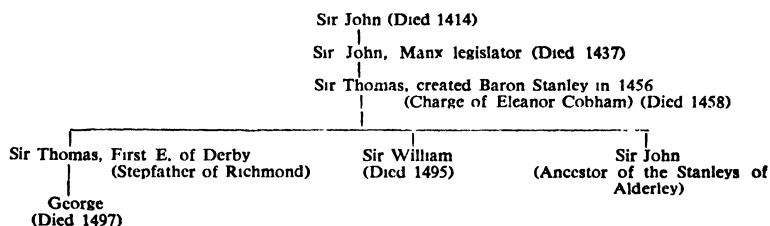
For note on the variation, "Derby"; "Stanley"; see *sub* Derby.

*Rich. III.* III, i, 167, ii, iv, 84; IV, i, ii, iv; v, ii, 5, iii, 84.

STANLEY (4), George; alluded to in the play as "tender George"; was the eldest son of Lord Derby. See Stanley (8). He married Joan, only child of Knockin in the march of Wales and in her right was summoned to the House of Lords under that title in 1482. He was left in Richard III's hands as a hostage for his father's fidelity. Only the necessity for immediate preparation for battle saved him from that king's peremptory order for his execution when his father refused to bring his forces into action at Bosworth. After the accession of Henry VII, George distinguished himself at the battle of Stoke. He died in 1497 at Derby House, St. Paul's Wharf, and was buried with his mother, Eleanor Neville, Derby's first wife, at Garlickhithe. His son, Thomas, became second Earl of Derby.

*Rich. III*, IV, iv, 49f., v, 3f.; v, iii, 95f., v, 9.

#### HOUSE OF STANLEY



STEPHEN (1), Langton. See Langton.  
*John*, III, i, 143.

STEPHEN (2), Scroop. See Scroop (1).  
*Rich. II*, III, iii, 28.

STOKESLEY, John; was born in 1475 at Colleyweston, Northamptonshire. He was appointed chaplain and almoner to Henry VIII in 1509 and dean of the Chapel Royal, Windsor, in 1524. In 1530 he tried to win over the Italian universities to favour Henry's divorce from Katherine and was the joint author, with Tunstall, of a book in favour of it. He was with Cranmer at Dunstable when the sentence of divorce was pronounced and in 1538 he christened the Princess Elizabeth at the Greyfriars Church, Greenwich. He was appointed bishop

## SUFFOLK]

of London in 1530 and concurred in the anti-papal measures of the king. But he opposed the translation of the Bible into English and also all doctrinal changes, though he accepted the royal supremacy with a proviso safeguarding "the laws of the Church of Christ". He resisted Cranmer's visitation of his diocese and incurred Cromwell's hostility. Stokesley died in 1539 and was buried in St. Paul's cathedral.

*Hen. VIII*, iv, i, 101.

SUFFOLK (1), third Earl of. This was Michael de la Pole or Poole, born 1394, the eldest son of Michael, second earl. He served with his father at the siege of Harfleur and succeeded to the earldom on his father's death of dysentery during the course of the siege. Suffolk continued with Henry V on the march to Agincourt in 1415 where he distinguished himself by his bravery and was killed during the course of the battle. He is described as "distinguished among all the courtiers for his bravery, courage, and activity," and Shakespeare gives a touching account of his death in company with the Duke of York. Drayton makes special mention of Suffolk in his ballad of Agincourt. His body was brought home to England and buried at Ewelme, Oxford.

*Hen. V*, iv, iii, vi, 10f.

SUFFOLK (2), fourth Earl and first Duke of; was William de la Pole, brother of the above. He was born in 1396 and served in the French campaign of 1415; being invalided home after the siege of Harfleur and succeeding his brother at the age of nineteen. He continued to serve in Henry V's French wars and after his death fought under the Duke of Bedford, holding high command at Verneuil. In 1428 Suffolk served under Salisbury in the campaign which led upon the siege of Orleans and, on the death of Salisbury, succeeded to the chief command of the English forces. But the appearance of Joan of Arc completely altered the position of affairs; the siege was raised, and Suffolk retreated to Jargeau where he was forced to surrender. According to one story he yielded his sword to Guillaume Renaud after he had knighted him with it; according to another story he would yield only to Joan as the bravest woman on earth. He ransomed himself in 1430 and again took part in the war, his last act being to take part in

the siege of Compiègne. Immediately after the coronation of Henry VI in Paris, Suffolk returned to England where he occupied himself with home politics. He was admitted a member of the council of regency in 1431, became an advocate of peace with France, and after his marriage with the widowed Countess of Salisbury inclined to the side of the Beauforts. Suffolk now came forward as the chief opponent of Humphrey Duke of Gloucester who, since Bedford's death in 1435, had led the war party. He defeated Gloucester's proposal to unite the young king to a daughter of the Count of Armagnac and arranged for his marriage with Margaret of Anjou, escorted her to England in 1446 and two years later brought the peace negotiations to a successful conclusion. With the aid of Margaret he spared no pains to overthrow Gloucester who was arrested at the parliament at Bury St. Edmunds in 1447 and died four days later, no doubt from natural causes accelerated by the shock of his imprisonment, though for some time Suffolk was suspected of foul play. The death of Cardinal Beaufort six weeks later left Suffolk supreme in the State. But the death of Gloucester had brought Richard Duke of York nearer in the succession to the throne. Suffolk deprived him of his command in France and sent him into banishment as Lieutenant of Ireland, thereby incurring his implacable enmity. Suffolk was created Duke in 1448, though in the play the title is conferred by the king somewhat prematurely in II *Hen. VI*, I, i. Meanwhile, he had become very unpopular owing to his cession of Anjou and Maine at the time of Margaret's marriage, and was finally discredited by the renewal of hostilities and further English losses in France. He was accused by the Commons in 1450 of having sold the realm to the French, and was committed to the Tower. In order to save him, the king banished him for five years. But his vessel was intercepted off Dover by a ship called *Nicholas of the Tower*, and he was beheaded at sea, his body being flung upon the beach, whence it was removed at the king's command for burial at Wingfield. The Queen's criminal passion for Suffolk is a dramatic incident, not a historical fact (II *Hen. VI*, v, ii). Suffolk was really older than King René, her father, while his wife accompanied him to France for the marriage by proxy at Tours, and remained Margaret's friend after his death. The word 'lover' in old English was equivalent to our modern 'friend'. Suffolk married Alice,



## SUFFOLK]

widow of the Earl of Salisbury, and their son John married Elizabeth Plantagenet, daughter of the Duke of York, and their son John Earl of Lincoln was declared heir to the crown by Richard III.

I *Hen. VI*, v, iii, v.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, 95f., iii, iv, 35f.; II, i, ii, 70, iii, iv, 51; III, i, ii; IV, i, iv, 22f.

SUFFOLK (3), Duke of. This was Charles, the son of Sir William Brandon, who fell at Bosworth. He was brought up with Henry VIII, with whom he was a great favourite and, like him, excelled in all knightly and manly accomplishments. He was deemed the handsomest man of the age, and at a tournament held in Paris on the occasion of the marriage of Mary, sister of Henry VIII, to Louis XII of France, Brandon carried off all the prizes. He was created Viscount Lisle in 1513 by right of his ward and wife, Elizabeth, daughter and sole heiress of John Grey, Viscount Lisle, and Duke of Suffolk in 1514. He went on an embassy to Francis I on his accession to the throne of France, and in the following year secretly married Mary, now the widow of Louis XII, the validity of the marriage being secured by a papal bull. For a time, he and his wife lived in retirement, but he was soon restored to the royal favour and accompanied the king to the Field of the Cloth of Gold. He supported Henry in his efforts to obtain a divorce from Katherine, and did not scruple to insinuate that it was his benefactor, Wolsey, who stood in the way of the gratification of the king's wishes. After the adjournment of the legatine court of England, Suffolk, according to the graphic account in Hall, "gave a great clap on the table with his hand and said; 'By the mass, now I see that the old saw is true, that there was never legate nor cardinal that did good in England.' " Cavendish gives us Wolsey's rejoinder that, but for himself, Suffolk would not then have had a head left upon his shoulders. He was present at the christening of the Princess Elizabeth. Later he was one of the judges who tried the accomplices of Catherine Howard in 1541, and conveyed that unhappy queen to the Tower of London prior to her execution. Suffolk died at Guildford in 1545, and was buried at Windsor at the king's expense.

*Hen. VIII*, III, ii; IV, i; v, i, iii, v.

**SURREY (1), Duke of.** This was Thomas Holland, eldest son of Thomas, second Earl of Kent, by Alice, daughter of Richard Fitzalan, Earl of Arundel. Surrey was active in the arrest and execution of Thomas Fitzalan, Earl of Arundel, who was his mother's brother, and shared in the confiscated estates of the Earl of Warwick. Holland succeeded his father as Earl of Kent in 1397, and in the same year was created Duke of Surrey on the same day that his uncle, John Holland, was created Duke of Exeter. Early in the next year he was created Earl Marshal of England during the king's pleasure in order that he might officiate at the forthcoming duel between Hereford and Norfolk. The latter was hereditary Earl Marshal and after his banishment the office was granted to Surrey for life. In the next month he was created the King's Lieutenant in Ireland, but returned with the king, accompanying him to meet Henry of Lancaster in order to attempt a reconciliation between them. But Surrey was placed in close confinement at Chester, the reason probably being that he had accepted a grant of some of John of Gaunt's lands. He defended Aumerle against Fitzwater when he was charged with treason. In 1399 Surrey was arrested by order of the council and, though he pleaded his tender age, he was deprived of his dukedom. At the beginning of 1400 Kent, as we must now call him, joined with his uncle, John, now reduced to the status of Earl of Huntingdon, in open conspiracy to seize Henry IV at Windsor, but they were betrayed by Rutland. Though Kent valiantly kept the bridge at Maidenhead for three days, he was forced to retire, and escaped with his friends to Cirencester where he was captured and beheaded by the populace, his head being set up on London Bridge. Kent was only in his 25th year at the time of his death. Froissart is loud in his praise of Surrey's valour, and states that he was led into the conspiracy against Henry IV by his uncle John.

*Rich. II.*, i, iii; iv, i.

**SURREY (2), Earl of.** Doubtless the poet intended Surrey, who does not utter a word, for Thomas Fitzalan, eleventh Earl of Arundel and Surrey. The earldom of Surrey as a separate dignity is unknown until it was so created by Richard III in favour of the gallant Thomas, son of the "Jockey of Norfolk". Thomas Fitzalan was born in 1381, being only 16 years of age when his father, Richard Fitzalan, was executed.

## SURREY]

on a charge of treason against Richard II. After a term of imprisonment he managed to escape and join his uncle, the deposed Archbishop Arundel, at Utrecht. With him he accompanied Henry of Lancaster to England in 1399, on whose accession he was knighted and restored to his title and estates. In 1400 he defeated and captured Exeter and other insurgent nobles. His great possessions in North Wales were endangered by the revolt of Owen Glendower, and for the next few years he was engaged in warfare against the rebels. He took the field against the northern rebels in 1405, and procured the execution of Archbishop Scrope and Lord Mowbray. He joined the party of the Beauforts and the Prince of Wales, accompanying the latter on his Welsh expeditions. In 1411 he was appointed one of the commanders in the expedition sent by the prince to the help of John the Fearless, Duke of Burgundy, against the Armagnacs. On the accession of Henry V, Fitzalan was appointed Lord Treasurer and Warden of the Cinque Ports. He joined the king on his great invasion of France, took a leading part in the siege of Harfleur, but was compelled to return home and died of dysentery in 1415, leaving no issue.

“Earl Thomas was in character hot, impulsive, and brave. He was a good soldier, and faithful to his friends; but he showed a vindictive thirst for revenge on the enemies of his house, and a recklessness which subordinated personal to political aims. The earldom of Surrey fell into abeyance on his death” (Tout).

II *Hen. IV.* III, i.

SURREY (3), Earl of; John Howard. See Norfolk (3).

*Rich. III.* v, iii.

SURREY (4), Earl of; was Thomas Howard, the eldest son of the Duke of Norfolk in *Henry VIII.* As is the case with the father, Shakespeare has rolled two Surreys into one, the real holder of the title after the date of Act II, Scene i being but a lad of thirteen. Surrey commanded the van at Flodden under his father, and afterwards served in the wars in France. He became Lord High Admiral of England, and Lord Lieutenant of Ireland. In politics he joined with his father in opposing Wolsey, and accuses him of securing the Irish appointment for him to prevent his helping his father-in-law, the Duke of Buckingham, whose daughter, Elizabeth Stafford, then but

a girl of fifteen, he had married. He was entirely on the king's side on the divorce question, and watched with growing satisfaction for the course of events to bring about Wolsey's fall. Aided by the Duke of Norfolk, Surrey did all in his power to increase the king's anger against him, enjoying the triumph of taking the Great Seal from him. The Howards were Wolsey's implacable enemies, and would be content with nothing short of his entire ruin. Surrey devised the plan of banishing Wolsey to his diocese of York, and did not rest until he had gathered the fresh evidence which led to the cardinal's recall to London and his death on the journey. Surrey was chief adviser to his niece, Anne Bullen, but presided at her trial and arranged for her execution. He was sent with the Earl of Shrewsbury to suppress the Pilgrimage of Grace. The rebels were induced to disband by the terms offered, after which Surrey pursued a course of merciless punishment. On his return to court, Howard headed the opposition to Cromwell; allied himself with Gardiner and the prelates of the old learning; and in 1540 had the satisfaction of arresting Cromwell in the council chamber. This threw the chief power into his own hands, and he made good his position by securing the king's marriage to another niece, Katherine Howard. But on her disgrace, Surrey again fell back into the position of a military commander. His son, Henry Howard was the great soldier, poet, and scholar of his age. Surrey became third Duke of Norfolk on the death of his father in 1524. He narrowly escaped the fate of his son, who was beheaded in 1547, but Henry, who intended the same fate for him, died the day before the sentence should have been carried out. Norfolk remained a prisoner in the Tower during the whole of Edward VI's reign, but was released by Mary and restored to his honours, having in 1553 the satisfaction of sentencing to death an old opponent, the Duke of Northumberland. The old man was appointed Lieutenant-General of the queen's army for the suppression of Wyatt's rebellion, but his forces were scattered owing to his own rashness, and he retired to his house at Kenninghall, Norfolk, where he died in 1554, and was buried in Framlingham Church.

*Hen. VIII*, II, i, 43; III, ii; IV, i.

**SURVEYOR TO THE DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM.** This faithless servant of a noble master was Charles Knevet, the second son

## SWENO]

of Sir William Knevet of Bokenham, Norfolk, who left him by will the manors of Hamerton and Wymake. He had been dismissed from his office of steward to the duke's estates, as alluded to by Queen Katherine. Such an appointment was often held by persons of good family, and in this instance, the "Surveyor" was allied by family ties to the duke. Grafton says, "cousin", and this relationship is established by the pedigree of the family.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, 115f., ii, 172; II, i, 19.

SWENO. This was Sweyn, called Forkbeard, King of England and Denmark. He was baptized as a child along with his father in accordance with the terms of the peace with the emperor Otto the Great in 965. His youth is shrouded with obscurity, though he is said to have headed the heathenizing party of the Danes, and to have rebelled against his father, who fell in battle against his son in 986. Sweyn was now driven out of Denmark, and became a viking. (During this time he made descents on Scotland.) In 994 he invaded England, but was repulsed in an attack on London, being afterwards bribed to depart. After being thrice ransomed from his enemies, Sweyn married the widow of Eric of Sweden, about 1000, and subsequently became king of Denmark. In 1002 Æthelred the Unready caused the massacre of all the Danes in England on St. Brice's Day, and among them Sweyn's sister, Gauhild, her husband and son are said to have perished. The Danes invaded England in the following year and, after attacks first in the west, and then in the east, sailed back to Norway. From this time onward, the country was inflicted with Danish invasions. In 1013 Sweyn sailed up the Humber and the Trent to Gainsborough, whence he wasted the country with fire and sword. By the end of the year the country had submitted and he was accepted as king. He died at Gainsborough early in the next year, and was succeeded by his son, Canute.

*Macbeth*, I, ii, 59.

TALBOT (1), Gilbert; one of the names which Henry V prophesied should become "familiar as household words"; was Gilbert, elder brother of the first Earl of Shrewsbury. He was born in 1388, and commanded with some success against Glendower; was made Justice of Chester and K.G. Under Henry V Talbot became Captain-General of the Marches of

Normandy after sharing the victory of Agincourt. He died before Rouen in 1419, leaving an only daughter, Ankaret. On her death two years later, her uncle, John (see below), succeeded to the family estates.

*Hen. V*, iv, iii, 54.

TALBOT (2), John; first Earl of Shrewsbury, the second son of Richard, fourth Baron Talbot of Goodrich Castle, in the March of Wales, by his wife, Ankaret, sole heiress of Lord Strange of Blackmere, was born at Blackmere, near Whitchurch, about 1388. He married before 1404 his mother's step-daughter, Maud Neville. In 1407 he became Constable of Montgomery Castle, and two years later assisted his elder brother to capture Harlech Castle. He was imprisoned by Henry V on suspicion of Lollard tendencies, owing to his being a friend and companion-in-arms of Sir John Oldcastle. But in the next year he was released and made Lieutenant of Ireland. On the outbreak of the French war in 1419, he left his younger brother Richard as deputy, and was present at the sieges of Melun and Meaux. He fought at Verneuil, and on the death of the Earl of March in 1425, again became Royal Lieutenant in Ireland, where he surprised and subdued a number of Irish chiefs. Talbot accompanied the Duke of Bedford to France in 1427, where his career was a series of brilliant successes until he was defeated and taken prisoner by the great French heroine, Joan of Arc, at Patay in 1429. He was detained a captive for four years until he was exchanged for the famous French leader, Lord Ponton de Santrilles, the very same knight who had taken him prisoner at Patay, and who had himself been captured in 1431. Talbot at once joined the Duke of Burgundy in his triumphant campaign in the north-west, performing many brilliant services in France, including the reconquest of Pays de Caux, the capture of Ivry, and the recapture of Harfleur. He was made Constable of France, and created Earl of Salop in 1442, although placed much earlier in the play (iii, iv) in 1431. Next year he took part in the home-bringing of Queen Margaret, and was for the third time sent to govern Ireland, being created Earl of Waterford, Lord of Dungarvan, and Steward of Ireland in 1446. Two years later he was sent to assist Somerset in Normandy, and on the capitulation of Rouen was handed over as a hostage for the surrender of Harfleur. In 1452 he was sent

out as Lieutenant of Aquitaine, and in a short time took Bordeaux and the whole Bordelais. But he was defeated and slain, when more than 80 years old, with his son, "valiant John", at Castillon in 1458, long after Joan of Arc had suffered her cruel fate, although in the play her death is placed after that of the Talbots. This great soldier's name was used by the French women to quieten their unruly children, and this was alluded to in the play by the Countess of Auvergne when, fancying that Talbot was in her power, she taunted him with the meanness of his stature (II, iii). Shrewsbury was a sort of Hotspur, owing his reputation more to dash and daring, than to any true military genius. "The last general of the school of Edward III who fought abroad was overthrown significantly enough by artillery, the new arm which the French had recently developed. Shrewsbury's courageous perseverance and ubiquitous activity throughout an unusually protracted military career, and the forlorn attempt of the valiant old warrior to stem the disasters of his country, made a deep impression upon both nations" (Tait). He was buried in the parish church of Whitchurch, where his effigy remains. Several portraits show a strongly-marked face with an aquiline nose and a commanding eye. Shrewsbury married as his second wife Margaret Beauchamp, eldest daughter of the fifth Earl of Warwick, in 1438. He was succeeded as second earl by his son John by his first wife, while his son John by his second wife fell with him at Castillon.

Of his titles, that of Earl of *Shrewsbury* was the best known. Though the title was taken from the county, not the city, Talbot and his successors always called themselves after the latter. Earl of *Washford*, for Wexford, one of the Irish titles to which he succeeded on the death of his niece Ankaret in 1421, the title being inherited through his ancestress Joan de Valence, sister of Aymer de Valence, last Earl of Pembroke of that line. Earl of *Valence*, as *Washford*. *Waterford*, Earl of; an Irish title conferred upon him in 1446 when he was sent to govern that country for the third time. Lord Talbot of *Goodrig* for Goodrich; inherited from his father, Richard Talbot of Goodrich Castle, in the March of Wales. Lord *Strange of Blackmere*, which he inherited through his mother, sole heiress in 1388 of Lord Strange of Blackmere, close to Whitchurch in Shropshire, and in whose right and title he had been summoned to parliament during his father's lifetime.

*Lord Verdun* or *Verdon of Alton*; this title came to him through his ancestress Joan, wife of Thomas Furnival, who was the eldest daughter of Theodore de Verdon, last baron of that name who died in 1816. Alton or Arelton Castle in Staffordshire was the principal residence of the de Verdon family, where they possessed large estates, and near which Bertram de Verdon founded the Cistercian Abbey of Croxden in 1176. *Lord Cromwell* of Wingfield in Derbyshire, where he had a manor. *Lord Furnival of Sheffield* came to him through his marriage with Maud, only child of Thomas Neville by his first wife, Joan Furnival, in whose right he held the barony of Furnivall. Maud also brought her husband the great fee of Hallamshire, with its centre at Sheffield, and in her right he was summoned to parliament from 1409 to 1421 as Lord Furnival or Lord Talbot of Hallamshire.

I have not been able to trace any definite information as to why he was called Lord Cromwell of Wingfield, Lord Talbot of Urchinfield, and thrice victorious lord of Faulconbridge.

I *Hen. VI*, i, i, 106ff., ii, 14, iv, v; ii, i, ii, iii;  
 iii, ii, iii, iv; iv, i, ii, iii, 5ff., iv, v, vi, vii;  
 v, ii, 16.

TALBOT (3), John. This young soldier, whom his father proudly calls "Valiant John", was the son of the above by his second wife. In 1448 he was created Baron, and in 1452 Viscount L'Isle, his mother being eldest daughter of Richard Beauchamp (Warwick in I *Hen. VI*) by Elizabeth, only child of Thomas, fifth Lord Berkeley, and Viscount L'Isle. The admirable scene wherein the elder Talbot implores his son to quit the field is from Hall. As the death of young Talbot occurred at Castillon in 1453, 22 years after the execution of Joan of Arc, it was impossible for them to meet in single combat as stated in iv, vii.

I *Hen. VI*, iv, v, vi, vii.

TALBOT (4), Sir Gilbert; was the third son of John Talbot, second Earl of Shrewsbury, by Elizabeth, daughter of James Butler, fourth Earl of Ormonde. He joined Richmond at Newport with the whole power of the young Earl of Shrewsbury, his nephew, then a youth of seventeen, who had succeeded to the peerage on the death of his father in 1478, "then being in ward", Gilbert was thus an important

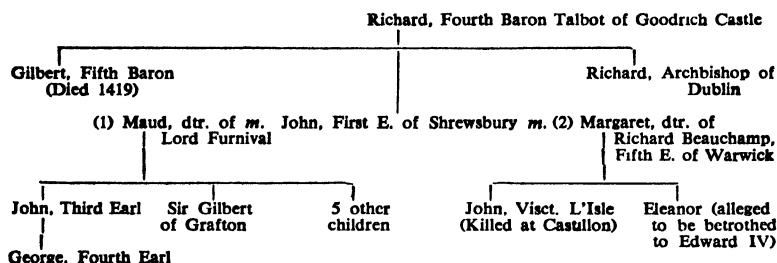


## TALBOT]

adherent of Richmond, of "great fame and worth", and was rewarded for his services at Bosworth, where he commanded the right wing, with fair lands at Grafton in Worcestershire which had belonged to Sir Humphrey Stafford, who had fought for Richard III and was attainted. Talbot was made a Knight of the Garter, appointed Governor of Calais, and sent by Henry VII on a mission to Rome. He died in 1517, and was buried at Whitchurch, where he had founded a chantry.

*Rich. III*, iv, v, 10.

### HOUSE OF TALBOT



THOMAS (1), Mowbray. See Norfolk (1).

*Rich. II*, i, i, 110, ii, 16.

THOMAS (2), Duke of Clarence. See Clarence (2).

*II Hen. IV*, iv, iv, 16ff.

THOMAS (8), Grey. See Grey (1).

*Hen. V*, ii, Chorus 25.

THOMAS (4), Erpingham. See Erpingham.

*Hen. V*, iv, i, 28.

THOMAS (5), Gargrave. See Gargrave.

*I Hen. VI*, i, iv.

THOMAS (6), Horner. See Horner.

*II Hen. VI*, i, iii.

THOMAS (7), of Woodstock. See Gloucester (1)†

*Rich. II*, i, ii, 16.

*II Hen. VI*, ii, ii, 16.

THOMAS (8), Vaughan. See Vaughan.  
*Rich. III*, II, iv, 48.

THOMAS (9), Lovel. See Lovel (2).  
*Hen. VIII*, I, ii, iii; v, i.  
*Rich. III*, IV, iv, 520.

THOMAS (10) Rice ap. See Rice ap Thomas.  
*Rich. III*, IV, v, 12.

THOMAS (11), Earl of Surrey. See Surrey (3).  
*Rich. III*, v, iii, 69.

THOMAS (12), Bullen. See Bullen (1).  
*Hen. VIII*, I, iv, 92.

THOMAS (13), More. See More.  
*Hen. VIII*, III, ii, 895.

THOMAS (14), Cromwell. See Cromwell.  
*Hen. VIII*, IV, i, 108.

TRESSEL, probably a misprint for Trussel, an eminent and ancient family in Warwickshire, of which county Sir William Trussel was sheriff in the 16th year of Edward IV. He is probably the same knight who signed the indenture to aid Lord Hastings against his enemies. He, or his brother Edmund, may be the person intended in this play as attending on Lady Anne.

*Rich. III*, I, ii.

TUTOR TO RUTLAND, The; was a priest named Sir Robert Aspall, chaplain and tutor to young Rutland, the second son of York (4), then twelve years of age. Seeing that, at the battle of Wakefield, flight was best, he took Rutland away secretly, but he was overtaken by Clifford and the child was ruthlessly slain. The Aspalls of Norfolk were a well-connected family.

III *Hen. VI*, I, iii. •

TYRREL, Sir James; who arranged for the murder of the princes in the Tower, was the eldest son of William Tyrrel of Gipping, Suffolk, and claimed descent from Walter Tyrrel, the reputed slayer of William Rufus. Sir James was a strong Yorkist and, after the battle of Tewkesbury, was knighted for his services. He served as member of parliament for Corn-

## UMFRAVILLE]

wall in 1477. The poet's account of Tyrrel's share in the death of the princes is taken from Hall, and he derived it from Sir Thomas More who says, "He was a brave handsome man who deserved a better master and would have merited the esteem of all men had his virtues been as great as his valour." He is said to have wavered in his allegiance to Richard III towards the end of his reign, but of this there is no proof, and just before Bosworth he was clearly in the king's confidence for he was sent as lieutenant to the castle of Guisnes in France. Henry VII took him into favour, or at all events employed him, and he received a general pardon in 1486. But he was concerned in the flight of the Duke of Suffolk and was arrested and thrown into the Tower. Here he is said to have confessed to the murder of the princes and was beheaded as a traitor on Tower Hill in 1502 being interred in the church of the Augustin friars.

*Rich III, iv, ii, iii.*

UMFRAVILLE, Sir John; is mentioned as sending tidings of the battle of Shrewsbury to the Earl of Northumberland. There was a connection between the two families for Robert Umfraville, only son of the earl's second countess by her first husband, had married Margaret, the daughter of Henry Lord Percy.

*II Hen. IV, i, i, 84.*

URSWICK, Sir Christopher; diplomatist and churchman, was born in 1448 at Furness Abbey, where his father and mother were respectively lay brother and sister. He was educated at Cambridge where he took his LL.D. and in 1482 became confessor to Lady Margaret Beaufort. His abilities as a statesman were evinced by his successful endeavour to promote the union between Henry of Richmond and Elizabeth of York. He was appointed Henry's chaplain and confessor, landed with him at Milford Haven, and was present with him at Bosworth, after which he was liberally rewarded for his many services. He became master of King's Hall, Cambridge, and was much employed by Henry VII in foreign embassies. In 1488 he became dean of York, in 1495 dean of Windsor, and in 1502 rector of Hackney. But he refused the bishopric of Norwich vacated in 1498 by the death of James Goldwell. Urswick became a Fellow of the Collegiate Church

of Manchester in 1505 but his later years were spent in retirement at Hackney where he died in 1522 at the age of 74. He was buried in the church of St. Augustine, Hackney, where a brass plate on his tomb recorded his eleven embassies. He is said to have become a friend of Erasmus in 1483.

*Rich. III.*, iv, v.

VAUDEMONT, Earl. A French nobleman who was killed at Agincourt.

*Hen. V.*, iii, v, 43; iv, viii, 105.

VAUGHAN, Sir Thomas; belonging to a very fierce and hardy clan of Welsh marchmen, was probably the youngest illegitimate son of Sir Roger Vaughan of Tretower, Co. Brecon, and must be carefully distinguished from the Thomas Vaughan of the true line of Heract, killed at Banbury in 1469, and the Sir Thomas Vaughan who distinguished himself at Bosworth. Neither of the last two is mentioned by Shakespeare. The name of Sir Thomas Vaughan is found with those of the Duke of York and his sons when they were proclaimed traitors by Henry VI during his short resumption of power on his recovery from insanity in 1460. Vaughan was a great Yorkist warrior and is reported to have fought 18 battles for Edward IV. That king's trust in him is shown by his appointment in 1471 as chamberlain and counsellor to the young Prince Edward. He was knighted in 1475; was at Ludlow with the boy-king on his accession; and proceeded with him on his way to London. At Stony Stratford, the Protector arrested him along with Grey and Rivers, and hurried him off to Pontefract where, after a hurried trial before the Earl of Northumberland, he was executed in 1483, his only crime being his loyalty to the late king's son and successor. His body was buried in the chapel of St. John the Baptist, Westminster Abbey, where there is an effigy of him engraved on brass.

*Rich. III.*, i, iii, 383; ii, iv, 43; iii, ii, 67, iii;

iv, iv, 69; v, i, 5, iii, 142. •

VAUX (1), Sir William; of Harrowden in Northamptonshire, was descended from an old Norman family. He was a zealous Lancastrian and was attainted by Edward IV's first parliament in 1461, his estates being confiscated. He returned to England from Normandy with Queen Margaret in 1471 and

VAUX]

was slain at the disastrous defeat of Tewkesbury in that year. Dugdale says, "William Vaux in the time of those great and sharp contests between the Houses of York and Lancaster lost all for his adherence to King Henry VI; but at length Henry Earl of Richmond obtaining the crown, Nicholas his son had restitution thereof."

*II Hen. VI, III, ii.*

VAUX (2), Sir Nicholas; soldier and courtier, was the son and heir of the above. He became a page to Margaret, Countess of Richmond and was restored to his father's estates by Henry VII who knighted him for his conduct at the battle of Stoke. Vaux enclosed much common land in Buckinghamshire and Northamptonshire and also married Anne Green who was a great territorial heiress. Wolsey suspected him of complicity in the intended treason of Buckingham (3), but no proceedings were taken against him. Henry VIII appointed him governor of Guisnes near Calais and created him Lord Vaux of Harrowden in 1523, in which year he died. "He was a jolly gentleman, both for camps and courts; a great reveller, good as well in a march as in a masque" (Fuller).

*Hen. VIII, II, i.*

VERE, Aubrey; was the eldest son of John de Vere, twelfth Earl of Oxford, by his wife Elizabeth Howard, cousin of John Howard, Duke of Norfolk. Like his father he was a staunch Lancastrian and both were attainted on the accession of Edward IV on a charge of arranging for a Lancastrian landing on the east coast. (One account states that Aubrey betrayed his father.) Both were condemned to death and executed on Tower Hill in 1462. Aubrey married Anne Stafford, daughter of the first Duke of Buckingham, but left no issue. For his brother John see Oxford (1).

*III Hen. VI, III, iii, 102.*

VERNON (1), Sir Richard; the very ancient family of Vernon held the lordship of Shipbrook and fourteen other manors in Cheshire before Domesday Survey. Richard de Vernon came to England with the Conqueror and settled at Shipbrook. The family acquired Haddon Hall by marriage with the heiress of the Aveñels in the time of Henry III. The character in this

play was the second son of Sir Richard Vernon and became Baron Shipbrook. He had considerable influence in the north and, joining the confederacy against Henry IV, was one of the principal leaders at Shrewsbury, where he was taken and beheaded a few days after the battle.

I *Hen. IV*, iv, i, iii, iv, 24; v, ii, v, 14.

VERNON (2), Sir Richard; was speaker of the House of Commons in the Leicester parliament and became knight of the shire for Derby in 1438. He married his cousin Benedicta, by whom he had a son, William, who became Treasurer of Calais and Constable of England for life. Sir Richard built the chapel of Haddon Hall of which the east window is a memorial to himself and his wife. There is a splendid effigy of him in armour in the church, one of the finest examples of its kind. He died in 1452.

I *Hen. VI*, ii, iv.

WALES, Prince of:

(1) Black Prince, *q.v.*

*Rich. II*, ii, i, 172.

*Hen. V*, ii, iv, 56; iv, vii, 97.

II *Hen. VI*, ii, ii, 11.

(2) Henry V, *q.v.*

I *Hen. IV*, i, iii, 280; ii, iv, 11ff.; iii, ii, 1; iv, i, 95f.,

iv, 29; v, i, 86f., ii, 46, iv, 12ff.

II *Hen. IV*, ii, i, 146, ii, 131; iv, v, 54.

*Rich. III*, i, iii, 199.

(3) Edward, son of Henry VI. See Edward (6).

*Rich. III*, i, iii, 199.

WALTER (1), Blunt. See Blunt (2).

I *Hen. IV*, i, i, 63f.; iv, iii, 82ff.; v, iii, 82f.

WALTER (2), Whitmore, *q.v.*

II *Hen. VI*, iv, i.

WALTER (3), Herbert, *q.v.*

• *Rich. III*, iv, v, 9. , ,

WALTER (4), Lord Ferrers. See Ferrers.

*Rich. III*, v, v, 13.

## WARWICK]

WARWICK (1), Earl of; Shakespeare makes a mistake as to the identity of this character when, in *II Hen. IV*, III, i, 66, he refers to him as "cousin Nevil". The title at this time was borne by Richard Beauchamp, born 1381, descended from one of the Conqueror's companions, Hugh de Beauchamp, to whom he made large grants of lands. Richard Beauchamp's youngest daughter, Anne, married Richard Nevil, the "King-maker," who became Earl of Warwick, hence the poet's mistake in the surname. Beauchamp succeeded his father as Earl of Warwick in 1401. He was a great warrior and in 1403 behaved with great valour whilst serving against Glendower whom he almost captured after taking his standard and putting his forces to flight. He fought against the Percies at Shrewsbury in 1405. In 1408 he set out on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, displaying great chivalry at various tournaments on the way. At the coronation of Henry V in 1413 Warwick was lord high steward while early in the next year he was instrumental in suppressing the Lollard rising. He accompanied the king on his invasion of France but, after the capture of Harfleur, he was sent home along with Clarence in charge of a number of prisoners and a quantity of the spoils of war. He returned to France where he held important commands and arranged the truce preparatory to the treaty of Troyes. So great had been the king's confidence in Warwick that on his death, he bequeathed to him the care of the education of his infant son Henry VI, and his wishes were complied with by the council a few years later. Warwick now resided in England for several years and became a member of the council during the king's minority. He bore the little king to church for his coronation in 1429. Next year he was again in France where he took a notable prisoner, Ponton de Santrailles, beside Beauvais in 1431. In 1437 Warwick was appointed Lieutenant of France and Normandy, being discharged by the council from the care of the king's person. He now remained in France until his death at Rouen in 1439, hastened no doubt by the grave anxieties of his position. His body was brought home and buried at Warwick beneath a magnificent tomb and effigy which still remain. The most notable of his deeds of chivalry were collated a generation later by John Rous and the manuscript containing them is preserved in the Cottonian Library. Fuller says of Richard Beauchamp, "His deeds of

charity, according to the devotion of those days, were little inferior to the achievements of his valour."

I cannot understand why Rolfe quotes with approval in the notes of his edition of *I Hen. VI*, I, i, the statement of Verplanck that, "The author has carelessly brought on his scene two distinct historical personages bearing the same title, and in the same play, without distinguishing between them by some explanation." He makes the Warwick of the earlier portions the above Richard Beauchamp, and the Warwick of the latter part, Richard Nevil. But in the time analysis of the play Rolfe himself dates the closing scenes of Part I at the end of 1444, yet in the same note he quotes with approval, what is certainly historical fact, that Nevil succeeded to the earldom in 1449, i.e. five years after the closing date of that part of the play. Moreover the closing scenes of Part I include the execution of Joan of Arc and this occurred in 1481 when it is certain that Richard Beauchamp was in France as stated in the sketch of his life. All the references to Warwick in *I Henry VI* are, therefore, entered under this character.

*II Hen. IV*, III, i; IV, v; v, ii.

*Hen. V*, IV, iii, 54, vii, viii; v, ii.

*I Hen. VI*, I, i; II, iv; III, iv; v, iv.

**WARWICK (2)**, Earl of ; the King-maker. This powerful nobleman was called by Sir E. L. Bulwer Lytton "the last of the Barons," in the historical romance of that title—"a man who stood colossal amidst the iron images of the age, the greatest and last of the old Norman chivalry; kinglier in the pride, in state, in possessions, and in renown than the king himself, Richard Neville, Earl of Salisbury and Warwick." He was the eldest son of Richard Nevil, Earl of Salisbury and was born in 1428. In 1449 he succeeded to the vast estates of the earldom of Warwick in right of his wife Anne, the only daughter and heiress of Richard Beauchamp. When Richard of York claimed the regency, Warwick supported him, distinguishing himself at the first battle of St. Albans in 1455. He took part in the "love-day" procession in 1458 when a reconciliation of the contending parties was attempted. Warwick became a popular hero in England owing to his successful attack on the Spanish fleet off Calais, when he captured five great carracks, while his exploits in the channel made him the



idol of the sea-faring population of the south coasts who had suffered greatly from the attacks of French pirates. He was with York at Ludlow in 1459 but returned to Calais, of which he was captain, in time to close the gates against Somerset who had been appointed to supersede him by Queen Margaret. In 1460 he landed at Sandwich and proceeded to London which was friendly towards him, Lord Scales and Lord Hungerford shutting themselves up in the Tower. Leaving his father to besiege them, Warwick marched to Northampton where he gained an easy victory. He brought Henry VI as a captive to London, after which matters were compromised by declaring York heir-presumptive. This arrangement came to nothing as the Lancastrians rallied at Wakefield where York and Salisbury, the latter being Warwick's father, were killed. Warwick's control of Henry VI passed out of his hands when that monarch was recaptured by Margaret at the second battle of St. Albans in 1461. But Warwick escaped and joined the young Duke of York who had been victorious at Mortimer's Cross, and assisted in making him king as Edward IV. With the new monarch he followed the Lancastrians and assisted in their defeat at Towton. Warwick was confirmed in all his offices by Edward IV and was the real ruler of England during the first three years of the reign, securing his ascendancy at home and his recognition abroad. While Warwick was abroad negotiating a marriage between the king and Bona of Savoy, sister-in-law of the French king, Edward offended him by his marriage with Elizabeth Woodville in 1464. The preferment heaped upon the Woodvilles and an insult by the amorous Edward IV to one of Warwick's own family further alienated him and the great earl withdrew from court. Hall says of this incident, "the certainty was not for both their honours openly known." Shakespeare in *III Hen. VI*, III, iii, 188, represents the lady to be one of his nieces, but as they were both quite children it is supposed that the lady was one of his own daughters and Lytton suggests (as Isabel was the "wife of Clarence) that it was his younger daughter, Anne, then in the flower of her youth. Warwick proceeded to Calais whence he returned just after the victory of Northampton, captured Edward IV near Coventry, and imprisoned him in Middleham Castle. But the king escaped from the custody of Archbishop Nevil of York and, levying forces, defeated Warwick at Stamford in 1470 whence the earl

escaped to Harfleur. Louis XI and Warwick now settled on a plan for driving their common enemy, Edward IV, from his throne and for restoring Henry VI. After great difficulty, a reconciliation was effected between Warwick and Margaret, whose young son Edward was betrothed to Anne, the king-maker's younger daughter, while her father swore to be faithful to the Lancastrian dynasty. An invasion of England followed. Edward fled to Flanders and King Henry was removed from the Tower and re-installed at Westminster, parliament declaring Warwick and Clarence joint protectors of the realm. Margaret, however, still delayed her coming. In 1471 Edward, helped by his brother-in-law, the Duke of Burgundy, landed in Yorkshire whither Warwick advanced to meet him. Owing to the defection of Clarence, the king-maker was defeated and slain at Barnet. His body, after being publicly exposed in St. Paul's for two days, was buried at Bisham Abbey. Warwick had some of the qualities that make a great ruler of men but he was neither a great constitutional statesman nor a great general. He devoted himself to the acquisition of power for himself and his family and, being singularly energetic, his genuine diplomatic talent, favoured by opportunity, enabled him to grasp and utilize almost royal power.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, iii, iv, 88; II, ii; III, i, ii, iii; IV, i, 91; v, i, ii, iii.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, 37f.; II, i, ii, iii, iv, v, 65, vi; III, i, 29ff, iii; IV, i, 5ff., ii, iii, iv, 4ff., v, 28, vi, vii, 82f., viii; v, i, ii, iv, 18, vii, 10.

*Rich. III*, I, i, 158, iii, 185, iv, 49; II, i, 110; IV, i, 86.

WARWICK (8), young daughter of; see Anne (2).

*Rich. III*, I, i, 158.

WATERTON, Sir Robert; was Master of the House to Henry IV and Sheriff of Lincoln. He was second in command to the Earl of Westmoreland in the expedition against the Percies. Waterton stood high in favour with Henry IV and Henry V and members of the family frequently held the office of sheriff in various counties.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 284.

## WESTMINSTER]

**WESTMINSTER, Abbot of.** The abbot Nicholas died in 1386 and he was succeeded by William de Colchester who spent 60 years in this monastery over which he now ruled for 34 years. He accompanied Richard II to Ireland in 1399 but after their return and the accession of Henry of Lancaster, the abbot was one of the commissioners sent to the Tower to receive Richard's resignation of the crown. No doubt he had previously been reconciled to the new king and it was afterwards given out that the Abbot of Westminster had had a vision of the fall of the unfortunate Richard. Whatever his private feelings Abbot Colchester certainly acquiesced quietly in the change of dynasty and the chronicler's account of his share in a conspiracy to restore Richard early in 1400, and his subsequent death of palsy brought on by fear, is quite unfounded. As a matter of fact not only did the abbot live 20 years longer but one of the conspirators, the Bishop of Carlisle, who had once been a Westminster monk was placed under his care. The death of Carlisle after his pardon, rather from the terror he had suffered than from sickness, probably gave rise to the false anecdote about the abbot which Shakespeare adopts as true in *Rich. II*, v, vi, 19. The long rule of William de Colchester came to an end on October 1, 1420, and he was buried in the chapel of St. John the Baptist where the W. de C. on the pillow may still be seen. Henry V's opinion of the Abbot of Westminster is shown by his sending him with an escort of sixty horsemen to represent the English Church at the Council of Constance in 1414.

In a long note, French argues that the abbot of the play was not William de Colchester but his successor, Richard Harweden, and quotes a long note from Dart in support of his assertion; but most commentators accept the above identification.

*Rich. II*, iv, i; v, vi, 19.

**WESTMORELAND (1), first Earl of.** This was Ralph sixth baron Neville of Raby, son of John, fifth baron, by his wife, Maud, daughter of Henry, Lord Percy. He was born in 1364 and first saw service in the French expedition of 1380 under Thomas of Woodstock who knighted him. In 1381 he presided, along with his cousin Henry Percy, the famous Hotspur, over a duel between a Scot and an Englishman. He succeeded his father as Baron Nevil of Raby, in 1388 being then 24 years

of age, being confirmed in the office of Warden of the West Marches, and from that time onward was engaged in peace negotiations with Scotland. He was closely connected with Richard II by the marriage of his son John with Elizabeth, daughter of that king's stepbrother, John Holland, Earl of Kent. Nevil himself took for his second wife Joan Beaufort, daughter of John of Gaunt. In 1397 he was created Earl of Westmoreland. But when Richard drove his brother-in-law, Henry Bolingbroke, out of the kingdom and refused him the Lancaster estates on the death of John of Gaunt, Westmoreland took sides against the king and was one of the first to join the invader when he landed at Ravenspur. Westmoreland joined with his relative Northumberland in receiving in the Tower Richard II's renunciation of the crown and on the next day was appointed Earl Marshal of England for life. He assisted at Henry IV's coronation. In 1403 his relatives, the Percies, revolted and Westmoreland found an opportunity of weakening this great rival house in the north. After Hotspur's defeat at Shrewsbury, King Henry wrote to Westmoreland commanding him to intercept the Earl of Northumberland who was marching south and this he did, driving the old earl back to Warkworth. He now sent an urgent message to Henry to come north as the Percies had spread reports of his death. The king, on his arrival, re-appointed him Warden of the West March, while Hotspur's vacant post of Warden of the East March was bestowed upon the king's second son, John, a lad of 14, who was placed under the protection of Westmoreland. He was spared the long and difficult task of reducing the Percy castles by the surrender of Northumberland early in the next year. In the revolt of 1405, Westmoreland threw himself between the rebels under Northumberland and those under Archbishop Scrope, intercepting the latter at Skipton Moor. Finding himself weaker in numbers, he arranged a conference with Scrope and Mowbray; expressed himself as satisfied with their demands; and persuaded the archbishop to dismiss his followers. As soon as they were dispersed Westmoreland arrested Scrope and Mowbray, conveyed them to Pontefract and handed them over to the king, after which he returned to his employment as Warden of the Marches. Shortly after the accession of Henry V, Westmoreland resigned his office of Earl Marshal to his son-in-law, John Mowbray, second Duke of Norfolk, in whose family it was hereditary.

## WESTMORELAND]

“ Thanks to Shakespeare, Westmoreland is best known as the cautious old statesman who is alleged to have resisted the interested incitements of Archbishop Chichele to the clergy to war with France in the parliament at Leicester in April 1414, and was chidden by Henry for expressing a despondent wish the night before Agincourt that they had there

‘ But one ten thousand of those men in England  
That do no work to-day.’

But neither episode has any good historical warrant. They are first met with in Hall, from whom Shakespeare got them through Holinshed. Chichele was not yet archbishop at the time of the Leicester parliament; the question of war was certainly not discussed there, and the speeches ascribed to Chichele and Westmoreland are obviously of later composition. Westmoreland, in urging the superior advantage of war upon Scotland, if war there must be, is made to quote from the Scottish historian, John Major, who was not born until 1469. The famous ejaculation before Agincourt was not made by Westmoreland, for he did not go to France with the king. He was left behind to guard the Scottish Marches, and assist the regent Bedford as a member of his council. . . . The attitude imputed to Westmoreland in these anecdotes is, however, sufficiently in keeping with his advancing age and absorption in the relations of England to Scotland, and may just possibly preserve a genuine tradition of opposition on his part to the French war ” (Tout). Westmoreland was one of the executors of Henry V’s will; died in 1425 at what, in those days, was the advanced age of 62, and was buried in the choir of the church of Staindorp, at the gates of Raby. He had 23 children by his two wives, and he devoted himself to found the fortunes of his sons by rich marriages.

I *Hen. IV.* I, i; III, ii, 170, iii, 220; IV, i, 88, iv, 80;

v, i, ii, 29f., iv, v.

II *Hen. IV.* I, i, 18f., ii, 268, iii, 82; IV, i, ii, iii, iv;

v, ii.

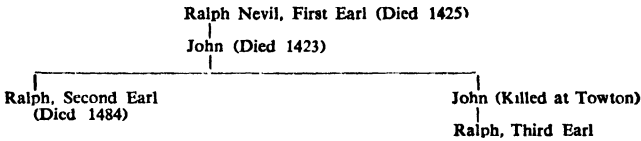
*Hen. V.* I, ii; II, ii; IV, iii; v, ii.

WESTMORELAND (2), second Earl of. This was the grandson of the above, whom he succeeded in 1425. His father, John Nevil, eldest son of the first earl by his first wife, had died during the great earl’s lifetime in 1423. The second earl was Ralph, eldest son of John by Elizabeth Holland, daughter of

Thomas, second Earl of Kent. He married Elizabeth Percy, widow of John Clifford, the daughter of Hotspur. He left active Lancastrian partisanship to his younger brothers, and died in 1484. He was succeeded by his nephew Ralph as third earl, the son of his brother John, who was slain at Towton.

III *Hen. VI*, i, i.

# HOUSE OF WESTMORELAND



WHITMORE, Walter. Mrs. Lenox says, "Shakespeare probably borrowed his story from the same tale that furnished him with the loves of Suffolk and the Queen." Mr. Courtenay remarks, "the truth is that Shakespeare's version and that of more authentic history are equally mysterious."

He is not identified by French, though the Whitmores of Cheshire were an ancient family, and in the play (iv, i, 40) Walt Whitmore claims to be a gentleman. The account of Suffolk's capture and death is from Hall.

II *Hen. VI*, iv, i.

WILLIAM (1), Glansdale, *q.v.*

I *Hen. VI*, i, iv.

WILLIAM (2), Lucy. See Lucy (1).

I *Hen. VI*, iv, iv.

WILLIAM (3), of Hatfield, second son of Edward III, died in infancy.

II *Hen. VI*, ii, ii, 12.

WILLIAM (4), of Windsor, seventh son of Edward III, died in infancy.

II *Hen. VI*, ii, ii, 17.

WILLIAM (5), Stanley. See Stanley (2).

III *Hen. VI*, iv, 7.

*Rich. III.*, iv, v, 10.

WILLIAM]

WILLIAM (6), Hastings, *q.v.*

*Rich. III.*, III, i, 162, iv, 28.

WILLIAM (7), Brandon. See Brandon (1).

*Rich. III.*, v, iii, v, 14.

WILLIAM (8), Bloomer, *q.v.*

*Hen. VIII.*, I, ii, 189.

WILLOUGHBY, LORD; William de; was the fifth Baron Willoughby de Ersby, a member of parliament under Richard II and Henry IV. He died in 1409. His ancestor had been a Norman knight, rewarded by the Conqueror with the lordship of Willoughby, Co. Lincoln.

*Rich. II.*, II, i, ii, 54, iii; III, i.

WILTSHIRE (1), Earl of. This was Richard II's chief favourite, and is mentioned in the play, though not brought upon the scene. He was the eldest son of Richard, first Baron Scrope of Bolton, by Blanche, sister of Michael de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk. As with all the Scropes, French reverses the genealogy and makes him the younger son of Henry, first Baron Scrope of Masham. (See Table *sub* Scropes.) Scrope served with John of Gaunt in his dash upon Harfleur in 1369, and four years later served under the same leader in Guienne. He then passed into Italy and served under Charles Duke of Durazzo who was blockading Venice in 1379. In 1388 Scrope became Seneschal of Gascony, which office he retained for the next nine years. He became Vice-Chamberlain of Richard II's household in 1393, and in the same year bought the Isle of Man with its crown from the childless William Montacute, second Earl of Salisbury. Scrope negotiated the French marriage in 1396 which contributed so greatly to Richard's unpopularity. He assisted the king against Gloucester, Arundel, and Warwick in 1388, being rewarded with the earldom of Wiltshire and several important grants of land, including Barnard Castle, Durham. He became Treasurer of England and, on the death of John of Gaunt, was granted some of the absent Hereford's lands. Before starting for Ireland, Richard appointed Wiltshire to assist the regent, York. On the landing of Bolingbroke, York sent Wiltshire along with Bushy, Bagot,

and Green to guard the young queen at Wallingford. But Henry's rapid march, and the defection of York's troops compelled these four to retreat to Bristol where, after a hasty trial, they were executed and their heads sent to London. The fact that part of the inheritance wrongly withheld from him was in Wiltshire's possession must have given Henry a personal grudge against him. There is no doubt that, in the popular mind, Wiltshire and his three associates were specially identified with Richard's later tyranny and, according to Walsingham, the human race hardly contained one more infamous and cruel. He was charged with farming the royal escheats and of planning the destruction of many magnates in order to swell his profits, but it is doubtful whether he was quite so black as he was painted.

*Rich. II*, II, i, 215f., ii, 136; III, ii, 122, iv, 58.

WILTSHIRE (2), Earl of. This was James Butler, eldest son of James, fourth Earl of Ormonde. He was born in 1420; knighted by Henry VI at a very early age; and accompanied Richard Duke of York to France on his appointment as Regent of that kingdom. Butler was a zealous Lancastrian and on that account, in the lifetime of his father, was created Earl of Wiltshire in the English peerage in 1449. He became Lord Deputy of Ireland, 1450; succeeded to the Ormonde peerage, 1452; and was appointed Viceroy of Ireland in the next year. In 1455 he was appointed Lord High Treasurer of England, and fought at the first battle of St. Albans where he was wounded by Montague. He fought also at Wakefield, Mortimer's Cross, and Towton, after the last of which he was taken prisoner and beheaded at Newcastle in 1461. In the first parliament of Edward IV he was attainted and his estates forfeited. As he left no issue, the earldom of Wiltshire lapsed, while his brother John succeeded to the Irish dignity.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, 14.

WINCHESTER (1), Bishop of. This was Henry Beaufort, second illegitimate son of John of Gaunt and Catherine Swynford. He took his name from Beaufort Castle in Anjou, where he was born in 1470. In I *Hen. VI*, III, i, he is taunted by Gloucester on account of his bar sinister, for, though legitimized in 1396 by Act of Parliament, this could not change a natural taint of blood, though it might admit to many



honours. After a course of rapid preferment, he became a member of the King's Council in 1408 and Bishop of Winchester in 1404. During the reign of Henry IV, Beaufort is said to have been the tutor of the Prince of Wales, over whom he exercised great influence. Thus, in a great measure, he came into conflict with Archbishop Arundel, who chiefly guided that King's actions. On the accession of Henry V in 1418, Beaufort became Chancellor, and four years later attended the Council of Constance. But the king refused to allow him to accept the cardinalate when he was nominated thereto by Pope Martin V. On the death of the king, Winchester was nominated a guardian of the infant Henry VI, and a member of the Council of Regency. The rivalry between the bishop and Gloucester, the late king's youngest brother, now broke into open opposition. "During the long and bitter quarrel which ensued between the uncle and nephew, Beaufort's wise and loyal policy stands in strong contrast to the wild schemes by which Gloucester, as protector in the absence of his brother Bedford, sought his own aggrandizement at home and abroad. . . . His administration was unpopular in London, where the citizens were attached to the Duke of Gloucester. . . . In 1425 the duke persuaded the mayor to keep London Bridge against the bishop, and so prevent him from entering the city. The men of the bishop and of the duke well nigh came to blows. All the shops in London were shut, the citizens crowded down to the bridge to uphold their mayor, and had it not been for the interference of the archbishop and the Duke of Coimbra, a dangerous riot would have taken place" (Hunt). Shakespeare represents the riot as taking place between their respective followers, and the mayor as insisting on their dispersion. Bedford now returned from France and patched up peace between the disputants. Gloucester charged the chancellor with refusing to admit him to the Tower, with purposing to slay him at London Bridge, and with designing to seize the person of the king. After peace had been restored, Beaufort resigned the chancellorship. "The pope now, 1426, nominated him cardinal of St. Eusebius, and appointed him legate in Germany, Hungary, and Bohemia, where he assisted in the suppression of the Hussites. On his return to England, Gloucester refused to recognize his legatine commission as contrary to the customs of the kingdom, and unsuccessfully attempted to deprive him

of his bishopric on the ground that a cardinal could not hold an English see. During Beaufort's absence, Gloucester again attempted to deprive him of his see under the statute of *praemunire*, but he returned boldly and faced the duke, demanding in parliament to hear what accusations were brought against him, and so defeated the attempt. The death of Bedford made the cardinal the foremost representative of the Lancastrian House, and Gloucester tried to thwart him by allying himself to the hostile interests of the House of York. Beaufort now began to labour for peace with France and attempted to arrange terms in 1439 and 1440, though unsuccessfully. But this did not prevent him from encouraging the efforts to prosecute the war with vigour, and he lent large sums of money for the equipment of expeditions under his nephew, the Duke of Somerset. In the marriage of the king with Margaret of Anjou in 1445, the cardinal must have believed that he saw the promise of that peace for which he had sought so earnestly. In the mysterious death of the Duke of Gloucester in 1447 Beaufort certainly could have had no part, for he would not thereby have opened the way for the ambitious schemes of the House of York. A few weeks later the great cardinal died. But the scene (*III Hen. VI*, III, iii) in which Shakespeare displays "the black despair" of his death has no historical basis, though Hall records some words of complaint and repentance which, he says, Dr. John Baker, the cardinal's chaplain, told him that his master uttered on his death-bed. He was buried in Winchester cathedral, the building of which he had completed. Beaufort was haughty, ambitious, impetuous and, heaping up riches by his judicious speculations, he has frequently been charged with avarice. But he was unwearied in the business of the state, farsighted and patriotic in his councils, while the events that so quickly followed his death are a proof of the wisdom of his policy for the truest interests of the king and his country.

*I Hen. VI*, I, i, iii; II, iv, 118; III, i, iv; IV, i; V, i, iv.

*II Hen. VI*, I, i, 56f.

WINCHESTER (2), Bishop of. See Gardiner.

*Hen. VIII*, III, ii, 281; IV, i; V, i, iii, 58f.

WINDSOR, William of. See William (4).

*II Hen. VI*, II, ii, 17.

WOLSEY, Thomas; the most important churchman since the time of Thomas à Becket, was said to be the son of Robert Wolsey, a butcher of Ipswich, where Thomas was born in 1471. He was educated at Magdalen College, where he obtained his degree when barely fifteen, being known as the "Boy Bachelor". Becoming a master in the school adjoining his college, he numbered among his pupils the sons of the Marquis of Dorset who, in 1500, appointed him to the living of Lymington, in Somersetshire. In the next year Wolsey became domestic chaplain and secretary to Henry Deane, Archbishop of Canterbury. Six years later he became chaplain to Henry VII, and in 1509 Dean of Lincoln. While Wolsey's tact and energy were a strong recommendation of him to a keen judge of men like Henry VII, his wit, gay humour, and varied personal accomplishments made him the indispensable companion to that monarch's successor, and his upward progress under Henry VIII was rapid and brilliant. He became Bishop of Lincoln in 1514, and Archbishop of York in the same year. In the following year he was created Cardinal of St. Cecilia and *legatus à latere* by Pope Leo X, while his wealth was further increased by the grant of the temporalities of the see of Bath and Wells, the abbey of St. Albans, and successively the sees of Winchester and Durham; while in the same year he was appointed Lord Chancellor. Wolsey thus became supreme in Church and State, and for several years directed the foreign policy of the country, lending the English support to France and Germany alternately. He attempted to purge the church of some of the more crying abuses, suppressing several of the smaller monasteries and applying their revenues to the foundation of Cardinal College (now Christ Church) at Oxford and of a new grammar school at Ipswich. It was his zeal to raise the moral and spiritual status of the Church that led him, with the king's consent, to hazard a breach of the statute of *praemunire* by accepting the appointment of papal legate. Experience had speedily taught him that the authority of an ordinary English prelate was quite insufficient to act with any effect against the monasteries. Wolsey lived in a princely style, and thereby excited the jealousy and enmity of the old nobility. His great ambition was to become pope of Rome. By the indecision that he exhibited in the matter of the king's divorce, he not only lost the king's confidence, but excited against himself the disappointed fury of Anne Bullen, whom

he disliked as a "spleeny Lutheran". His enemies, who were many and powerful, were not slow to take advantage of his misfortunes, and to revive the popular indignation against him on account of his oppressive taxation and his arbitrary system of government. His fall was fully as sudden and conspicuous as his rise to power. In 1529 he was deprived of the Great Seal and prosecuted under the statute of *praemunire*. His property was declared forfeited to the king and, stripped of his honours, he was allowed to retire first to Esher House, and subsequently to his diocese of York. Though he received several kind messages from the king, he was arrested at Cawood in 1580 on a charge of high treason based on false information supplied by his Italian physician, Dr. Augustine. While on his way to London to stand his trial, he died at Leicester Abbey on November 29, 1580, and was buried in the lady-chapel of that abbey.

The Venetian ambassador wrote, "He is the person who rules both the king and the kingdom. He is very handsome, learned, extremely eloquent, of vast ability, and indefatigable. He alone transacts all the business that occupies all the magistrates, offices, and councils of Venice. He has the reputation of being extremely just. He favours the people exceedingly, and especially the poor, hearing their suits and making the lawyers plead *gratis* for them."

"Many envied him, and the old nobility hated him, but he was with all his faults, the ablest statesman of his time, and without his rare diplomatic and organizing skill, the young king's reign would have been shorn of its greatest glories" (Tout).

Shakespeare has adopted the expressions of the great cardinal's biographer, George Cavendish, to the letter, and in the poet's hands the "king-cardinal" is one of the grandest characters in dramatic poetry.

It is not historically true that Wolsey ruined himself by accidentally giving the king an inventory of his own private wealth; but, as Steevens observes, "Shakespeare has not injudiciously represented the fall of that great man as owing to an incident which he had once improved to the destruction of another."

Thomas Ruthall, Bishop of Durham, who died in 1528, and to whose office Wolsey succeeded, had been appointed by the king to write a survey of the realm. By mistake, he gave into

## WOODSTOCK]

Wolsey's hands a book, similarly bound, containing an inventory of his own immense private possessions. Wolsey was not slow to suggest to the king that he should enrich himself thereby, and this Henry did. The story is fully told by Holinshed.

*Hen. VIII*, I, i, ii, iv; II, ii, iv; III, i, ii; IV, ii, 6.

WOODSTOCK, Thomas of. See Gloucester (1).

*Rich. II*, I, ii, 1.

II *Hen. VI*, II, ii, 16.

WOODVILLE (1), Lieutenant of the Tower. This was Richard Woodville of the Mote, near Maidstone in Kent, and after the death of his elder brother Thomas, of Grafton in Northampton. He was Governor of Northampton Castle in the seventh year of Henry IV. Afterwards he became one of the esquires of the body, and a trusted servant of Henry V. Subsequently he became chamberlain to the Duke of Bedford, under whom he served in the French wars. In the third year he was appointed "Constable" of the Tower, being thus of higher rank than "Lieutenant" as styled in the play. (In 1424 Robert Scott was Lieutenant.) Woodville probably settled at Grafton, where he died about 1441. French identifies him with his son, afterwards Lord Rivers, and there is some difficulty in distinguishing the one from the other.

I *Hen. VI*, I, iii.

WOODVILLE (2), Anthony, afterwards Earl Rivers. See Rivers.

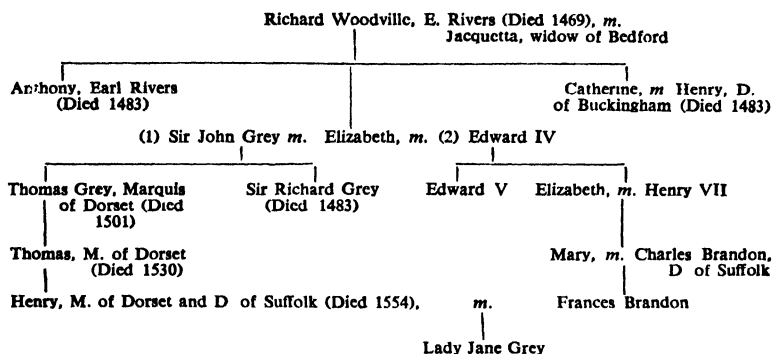
A line occurs in some early copies of *Richard III*, II, i, 66, which is very properly omitted in modern editions. The Duke of Gloucester, desiring "true peace" of his supposed enemies says:

"Of you Lord Rivers, and Lord Grey of you  
Of you Lord Woodville, and Lord Scales of you."

But the last two names belong to the Lord Rivers of the preceding line, Woodville being his family name, while he inherited the latter title from his wife, the heiress of Lord Scales.

*Rich. III*, I, i, 67.

## GENEALOGY OF THE GREYS AND WOODVILLES



**WORCESTER, Earl of.** This was Thomas Percy, born 1344, the younger brother of Northumberland (1). He was distinguished in war and in embassies during the reign of Edward III. He served in the French campaigns of 1369–73; accompanied Geoffrey Chaucer, the poet, on a mission to Flanders in 1377; and took part in Buckingham's French expedition of 1380. On his return in the next year he took part in suppressing Jack Straw's rebellion in Essex. Later he was named joint Warden of the Eastern Scottish Marches, being subsequently appointed Admiral of the Fleet. In 1386 he took part in John of Gaunt's Spanish expedition. On his return, Percy was appointed steward of Richard II's household, and in 1397 he was created Earl of Worcester. He accompanied the king on his last expedition to Ireland. On their return to England after the landing of Bolingbroke, Worcester broke his staff of office in the hall of Conway Castle, dismissed the royal household, and joined the invader. He is stated to have opposed the assumption of the crown by Henry, of whom he was a warm supporter, but was present in the parliament that approved of Richard's deposition, and took part in Henry's coronation. After four years of loyal service to the new king, Worcester became his bitter enemy, and seems to have had some grudge against the new queen, Joan of Navarre, whom he escorted from Brittany when she came over to be married. He removed his treasure from London in 1408 and joined his nephew, Hotspur, in open rebellion. According to the common account, followed by Shakespeare in *I Hen. IV*, v, i, ii, Henry

## YORK]

showed a readiness to compromise with the rebels, but Worcester made peace impossible by misrepresenting the king's proposals. He was taken prisoner at Shrewsbury, and beheaded after the battle.

"In his younger days, at all events, Percy was a brave and gallant soldier. The writer of the *Annales Henrici Quarti* says that no one would ever have suspected him of treason, for notwithstanding English perfidy, he was always trusted, and the kings of France and Spain accepted his word as better than a bond. Yet he played the traitor both to Richard and to Henry. Family affection may account for his first act of treason, but the second is not possible of being explained so simply. The Monk of St. Denys speaks of Worcester's uneasy conscience at the memory of his share in Richard's fall. Worcester may also have felt that his family was too powerful to be tolerated permanently by the new king. Shakespeare suggests both views in *I Hen. IV* (I, iii, and V, i, ii), in which play Worcester appears as the cool, wary intriguer, perhaps as a foil to his nephew, Hotspur" (Kingsford).

*Rich. II*, II, ii, 58, iii, 22.

*I Hen. IV*, I, i, 96, iii; II, iv, 392; III, i; IV, i, iii, iv, 25; V, i, ii, v.

*II Hen. IV*, I, i, 125.

**YORK (1), House of.** This was the famous English baronial house sprung from Edmund of Langley, fifth son of Edward III, and first Duke of York. The house also claimed the throne in the female line from Lionel of Clarence, third son of Edward III. Lionel's daughter Philippa married Edmund Mortimer, and Richard of York was descended from both lines and claimed the prior right over John of Gaunt and the Lancastrians in right of female descent.

*I Hen. VI*, II, v, 41; III, i, 165, 171.

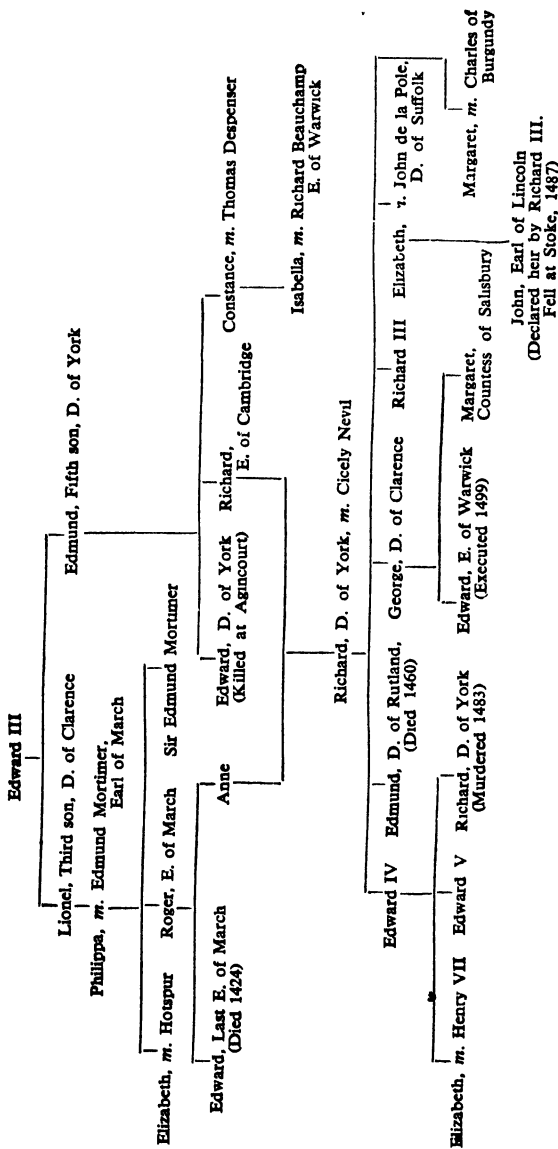
*II Hen. VI*, IV, i, 94.

*III Hen. VI*, I, i, 65, iii, 80; II, v, 66, vi, 16;

III, ii, 6, iii, 108.

**YORK (2), first Duke of.** This was Edmund of Langley—so called from being born at King's Langley, Herts, in 1341—the fifth son of Edward III. He accompanied his father to

# HOUSE OF YORK





the French wars which immediately preceded the peace of Bretigny, and in 1362 was created Earl of Cambridge. Five years later he joined the Black Prince in Aquitaine, whence he accompanied him on his expedition to Spain, and in 1372 he married Isabel, second daughter of Pedro the Cruel of Castile. On the accession of his nephew as Richard II, Edmund became one of the Council of Regency. In 1380 he commanded an expedition to aid Ferdinand of Portugal, whose daughter Beatrice was married to Edmund's young son Edward, but returned home without accomplishing anything. He took part in the king's expedition to Scotland in 1385, and in the same year was created Duke of York. In the troubles of his nephew's reign, Edmund, who cared little for state affairs, only played a small part. He was content to follow the lead of his brother, John of Gaunt, or in his absence, that of Thomas of Gloucester. After the death of both these York came into greater prominence, being appointed regent for the third time on Richard's departure for Ireland in 1399. Personally, no doubt, he was loyal to his nephew, but it was his lack of vigour which made the success of Bolingbroke so easy. Edmund, indeed, prepared to oppose him but, finding little support, he went over to his side and accompanied him on his march to Bristol. Afterwards York came forward as a statesman and suggested that Richard should be induced to resign the crown formally, previous to the next meeting of parliament. After the coronation of Henry IV, York retired from court, and the only other incident of interest in his life was his discovery of his son Rutland's implication in the plot of 1400 which is portrayed in such a masterly way by Shakespeare.

"Edmund was the least remarkable of his father's sons. He was an easy-going man of pleasure, who had no care to be a 'lord of great worldly riches'. He was a kindly man and 'lived of his own' without oppression. In appearance he was 'as fayre a person as a man might see anywhere'" (Hardyng).

*Rich. II.*, I, ii, 62; II, i, ii, iii; III, i, ii, 89f., iii, iv, 70f.:

v, ii, iii, vi.

*I Hen. IV.*, I, iii, 245.

*II Hen. VI.*, II, ii, 15.

*I Hen. VI.*, II, v, 85.

YORK (3), Duchess of. This must have been the second wife of the above, Joan Holland, third daughter of Thomas Earl of Kent, as York's first wife died in 1394 before the date of the opening of the play. She married York in 1395 and survived him. Afterwards she married, successively, Lord Willoughby (*Rich. II.*), Lord Scroop (*Hen. V.*), and Sir Henry Bomflete. She died in 1434. York's son, Aumerle, for whose life she pleads so eloquently (of his father in vain, but of the king successfully), was really the son of his first wife, though Shakespeare makes this duchess speak and act as though he were her own son born.

*Rich. II.*, v, ii, iii.

YORK (4), second Duke of; Edward of Langley. See Aumerle.

*Hen. V.*, iv, iii, vi, 11.

YORK (5), third Duke of. This was Richard, the only son of Richard Earl of Cambridge and Anne Mortimer. He was the paternal grandson of Edmund, fifth son of Edward III, and maternal great-great-grandson of Lionel, third son of Edward III. Richard was born in 1411, and succeeded to the dukedom of York when his uncle, Edward of Langley, fell at Agincourt in 1415. On his mother's side he also succeeded to the lands of Edmund de Mortimer, fifth and last Earl of March of that house. He was knighted by the young King Henry VI in 1428, and ten years later married Cicely, daughter of Ralph Nevil, first Earl of Westmoreland. After twice being the king's lieutenant in France, he was appointed Lieutenant of Ireland in 1447, where he remained for the next three years. Being discontented with the home government, he landed at Beaumaris in 1450 and forced his way into the king's presence at the head of 4,000 men, compelling the weak monarch to grant him a place in the council. For the next two years he was involved in a contest with Somerset, who tried to poison the king's mind with tales that York was a traitor. During Henry's first period of insanity, York was appointed protector and Somerset sent to the Tower, despite the protests of Margaret. On the king's recovery in 1455, York's protectorate was revoked and Somerset was released and restored to power. York, assisted by Salisbury and Warwick, took up arms and gained a victory over the royal forces at St. Albans. He was

## YORK]

proclaimed protector for the second time in 1455 on Henry's second lapse into insanity, but was again discharged from office on the king's recovery early in 1456. Being steadily opposed by the queen and the young Duke of Somerset, the old feud was revived. In 1458 York was compelled to seek refuge in Wales, while in the next year he was attainted as a traitor at Coventry. He returned to England in 1460, and in that year openly claimed the crown at Westminster. Parliament decided that Henry VI should reign for the end of his days with York as protector, and that York should succeed him. But Queen Margaret refused to acquiesce in this decision, as it shut out her son Edward, and took up arms, besieging the duke in his castle of Sandal, near Wakefield. He refused to wait for the reinforcements that his son Edward Earl of March was bringing, and sallied forth against the queen. York was defeated and slain at Wakefield in 1460, his head being crowned with paper and placed upon the walls of the city of York, along with that of the Earl of Salisbury. Of his sons, Edward succeeded as Edward IV, Richard as Richard III; the second son, Edmund, was slain with his father at Wakefield, while the third son, George, was the unfortunate Duke of Clarence. York's youngest daughter, Margaret, married Charles the Bold of Burgundy.

I *Hen. VI*, II, iv, 119; III, i, 172, iv, 30; IV, i, iii, iv, 2ff., vii, 33.

II *Hen. VI*, I, i, iii; II, ii, iii, iv, 53; III, i; IV, ii, 162, ix, 31f; v, i, ii, iii.

III *Hen. VI*, I, i, ii, iv; II, i, 46f., ii, 19ff., iv, 2f., vi, 7f.

YORK (6), Duke of. See Edward IV.

III *Hen. VI*, II, i, 192; IV, iii, 34, vii, 21; v, i, 28, ii, 6, v, 17.

YORK (7), Duke of; Richard, second son of Edward IV and Elizabeth Woodville, was born at Shrewsbury in 1472, and created Duke of York the same year. Before he was three and a half years old he was betrothed to Anne, the daughter and heiress of John Mowbray, fourth Duke of Norfolk, who died in 1476. In the next year young Richard was created Duke of Norfolk and Earl Marshal, while in 1478 the marriage was celebrated in St. Stephen's Chapel, Westminster, both

being in their sixth year. After his father's death, the queen took him with his sisters into the sanctuary at Westminster. But he was given up by the persuasion of Cardinal Bouchier and lodged in the Tower with his brother, Edward V, from which he never came forth alive. Ten days later Richard usurped the throne, and within two months the little duke was murdered. For a time rumours that he was alive were current, and for a while he was successfully impersonated by Perkin Warbeck. The beautiful lines in Tyrrel's description of the "gentle babes" in their last slumber: "A book of prayers on their pillow lay," is finely echoed by Thomas Heywood in his drama, *Edward IV*, written in 1599, only two years after Shakespeare's play. In this Heywood makes the elder prince say to his brother, "Then let us to our prayers and go to bed". His title was conferred upon John Howard in 1483 by Richard III, so that it is evident that he was dead at this time.

*Rich. III*, II, iv; III, i; IV, iv, 65.

YORK (8), Archbishop of. See Scrope (2).

I *Hen. IV*, I, iii, 269f.; II, iii, 22f.; III, ii, 119; IV, iv.

II *Hen. IV*, I, i, 189; IV, i, ii.

YORK (9), Archbishop of; Thomas Rotherham. According to some writers the real name of this prelate was Scott, but being born in 1423 at Rotherham, Yorkshire, where he afterwards founded a college, he took that name. Bennett, however, says that he was the son of Sir John Rotherham and Alice, his wife, while French says he was the son of Sir Thomas Rotherham, a lance at Agincourt. He was educated at King's College, Cambridge; became prebendary of Lincoln in 1462; of Salisbury in 1465; and, through the influence of the queen, Keeper of the Privy Seal to Edward IV in 1467. He rapidly gained the king's confidence, was promoted to the see of Rochester in 1468, and was employed on several foreign embassies. He became Bishop of Lincoln in 1471, Chancellor in 1474, and Archbishop of York in 1480, in which year also he became cardinal of St. Cecilia. Lord Campbell speaks of him as "the greatest equity lawyer of his age". On the accession of Richard III he was deprived of the chancellorship and temporarily imprisoned for supporting Elizabeth Woodville and her sons. After the coronation of the usurper,

## YORK]

Rotherham was released, but took no share in the reception of that monarch, and withdrew almost entirely from public affairs, spending his time in ecclesiastical building and endowment; but particularly at Lincoln College, Oxford, of which he has been styled the second founder. He died at Cawood Castle, Yorks, in 1500 at the age of 76, and was buried in York Minster.

*Rich. III, II, iv.*

YORK (10), Duchess of. This was Cicely Nevil, "the rose of Raby", daughter of Ralph Nevil, first Earl of Westmoreland by his second wife, Joan Beaufort, daughter of John of Gaunt. In 1438 she married Richard Plantagenet, Duke of York, becoming by him the mother of two kings, Edward IV and Richard III. The duchess had a throne room in her baronial residence, Fotheringay Castle, where she held receptions with the state of a queen, a title she had once had reasonable hope of enjoying when her husband was declared heir to Henry VI. This great lady survived all her sons and daughters except Margaret Duchess of Burgundy, and though, at the time of Richard's usurpation in 1483, she had not reached the age of 80, which she ascribes to herself in the play, she must have reached an advanced age when, twelve years later, she died at Berkhamstead in 1495. She was buried beside her husband at Fotheringay. Walpole says she was a "princess of spotless character", thus refuting the cruel slur of Richard III who, as indicated in the play, tried to prove that he alone was a legitimate son of the Duke of York.

*Rich. III, II, ii, iv; IV, I, iv.*

YORK (11), Archbishop of. See Wolsey.

*Hen. VIII, I, i, 50.*

YORK (12), Archbishop of (George Nevil). See Bishop (5).

